

RUSKIN | PROCTOR | HUNT | OLIVER | RICHARDSON | RICHARDSON | WALSH | WESTON | WILLETT

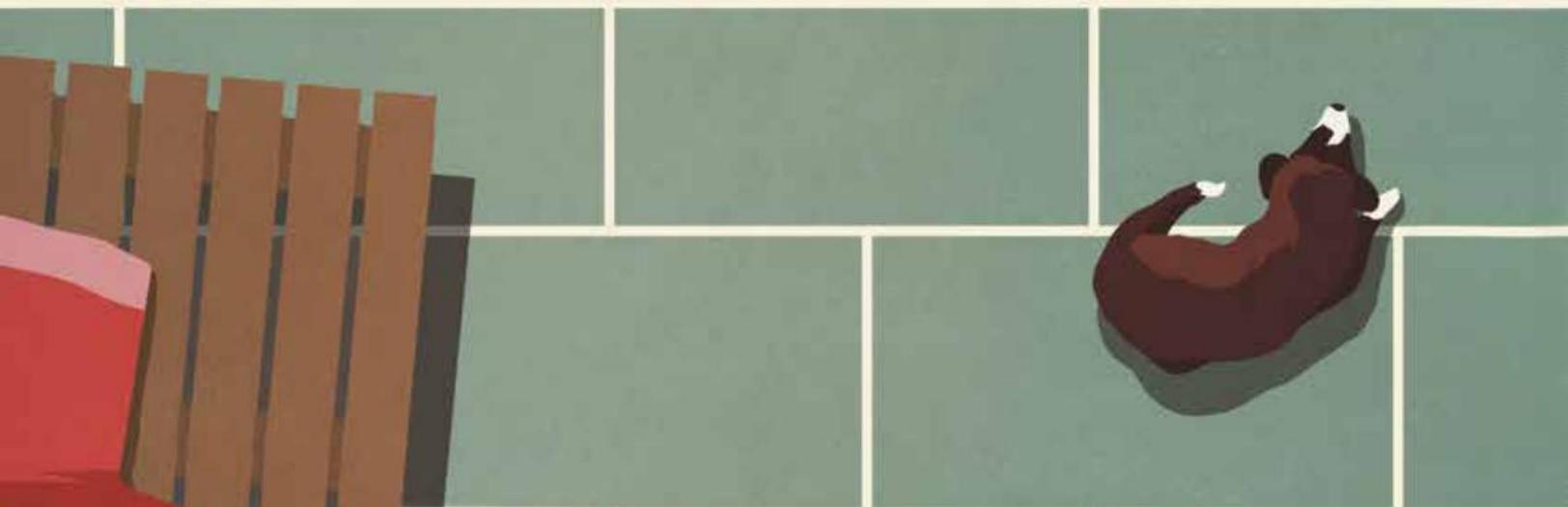
JACARANDA

# HEALTH & PHYSICAL EDUCATION

7+8

SECOND EDITION

AUSTRALIAN  
CURRICULUM  
v9.0



learn on

[www.jacplus.com.au](http://www.jacplus.com.au)

**jacaranda**  
A Wiley Brand



JACARANDA  
HEALTH & PHYSICAL  
EDUCATION

7+8

SECOND EDITION

RON RUSKIN

KIM PROCTOR

JADE HUNT

JENNA OLIVER

STEPHANIE RICHARDSON

WADE RICHARDSON

KIRSTY WALSH

KIM WESTON

KYM WILLETT

REVIEWED BY

Courtney Rubie, Wiradjuri woman



**jacaranda**  
A Wiley Brand

Second edition published 2023 by  
John Wiley & Sons Australia, Ltd  
Level 4, 600 Bourke Street, Melbourne, Vic 3000

First edition published 2015

Typeset in 10.5/13 pt TimesLTStd

© R. Ruskin, K. Proctor 2023

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted.

ISBN: 978-1-394-15165-3

#### **Reproduction and communication for educational purposes**

The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this work, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that the educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL).

#### **Reproduction and communication for other purposes**

Except as permitted under the Act (for example, a fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review), no part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All inquiries should be made to the publisher.

#### **Trademarks**

Jacaranda, the JacPLUS logo, the learnON, assessON and studyON logos, Wiley and the Wiley logo, and any related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States, Australia and in other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Front cover images: © Malte Mueller/fStop/Getty Images

Illustrated by various artists, diacriTech and Wiley Composition Services

Typeset in India by diacriTech

The publishers of this series acknowledge and pay their respects to Aboriginal Peoples and Torres Strait Islander Peoples as the traditional custodians of the land on which this resource was produced.

This suite of resources may include references to (including names, images, footage or voices of) people of Aboriginal and/or Torres Strait Islander heritage who are deceased. These images and references have been included to help Australian students from all cultural backgrounds develop a better understanding of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Peoples' history, culture and lived experience.

It is strongly recommended that teachers examine resources on topics related to Aboriginal and/or Torres Strait Islander Cultures and Peoples to assess their suitability for their own specific class and school context. It is also recommended that teachers know and follow the guidelines laid down by the relevant educational authorities and local Elders or community advisors regarding content about all First Nations Peoples.

All activities in this resource have been written with the safety of both teacher and student in mind. Some, however, involve physical activity or the use of equipment or tools. **All due care should be taken when performing such activities.** To the maximum extent permitted by law, the author and publisher disclaim all responsibility and liability for any injury or loss that may be sustained when completing activities described in this resource.

The publisher acknowledges ongoing discussions related to gender-based population data. At the time of publishing, there was insufficient data available to allow for the meaningful analysis of trends and patterns to broaden our discussion of demographics beyond male and female gender identification.



A catalogue record for this book is available from the National Library of Australia

# Contents

---

About the authors.....	v
About this resource.....	vii
Acknowledgements.....	xiv
Understanding cognitive verbs.....	1

---

## **PART 1** PERSONAL, SOCIAL AND COMMUNITY HEALTH **2**

---

<b>1 Identity and diversity</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>1.1</b> Overview.....	5
<b>1.2</b> My identity.....	6
<b>1.3</b> Developing a positive identity.....	11
<b>1.4</b> Valuing and appreciating diversity.....	20
<b>1.5</b> Developing empathy.....	25
<b>1.6</b> Celebrating diversity.....	30
<b>1.7</b> Review.....	37
<b>2 Developing respectful relationships</b> .....	<b>40</b>
<b>2.1</b> Overview.....	41
<b>2.2</b> Relationships and emotions.....	42
<b>2.3</b> Communicating our emotions in relationships.....	50
<b>2.4</b> Respectful relationships.....	57
<b>2.5</b> Equality in relationships.....	66
<b>2.6</b> Consent and being empowered.....	76
<b>2.7</b> Review.....	88
<b>3 Adolescence – changes and strategies</b> .....	<b>92</b>
<b>3.1</b> Overview.....	93
<b>3.2</b> Physical changes.....	94
<b>3.3</b> Social and emotional changes.....	106
<b>3.4</b> Intimate relationships.....	115
<b>3.5</b> Accessing health information and services.....	127
<b>3.6</b> Rites of passage for adolescents.....	134
<b>3.7</b> Review.....	140
<b>4 Protective behaviours and seeking help</b> .....	<b>144</b>
<b>4.1</b> Overview.....	145
<b>4.2</b> Mental health: how can we support ourselves and others?.....	146
<b>4.3</b> Healthy decisions: drugs.....	154
<b>4.4</b> Drugs and your health: stimulants.....	158
<b>4.5</b> Drugs and your health: depressants.....	162
<b>4.6</b> Drugs and your health: hallucinogens.....	167
<b>4.7</b> How can we keep our relationships healthy?.....	172
<b>4.8</b> How can we stay safe online?.....	176
<b>4.9</b> Help-seeking scenarios.....	181
<b>4.10</b> Review.....	187
<b>5 Influences on health, safety and wellbeing</b> .....	<b>190</b>
<b>5.1</b> Overview.....	191
<b>5.2</b> Influences on the health of young people.....	192

<b>5.3</b> Health campaigns targeting First Nations Australian young people .....	197
<b>5.4</b> Accessing health information .....	201
<b>5.5</b> Making informed decisions .....	205
<b>5.6</b> Nutrition and the media .....	209
<b>5.7</b> Review .....	214

## **6 Promoting health, safety and wellbeing** **218**

<b>6.1</b> Overview .....	219
<b>6.2</b> Healthy decisions — physical activity .....	220
<b>6.3</b> Healthy decisions — nutrition .....	225
<b>6.4</b> Healthy behaviours — mind-body-spirit connection .....	236
<b>6.5</b> Preventing harm and promoting health — road, sun and water safety .....	242
<b>6.6</b> Review .....	249

## **PART 2 MOVEMENT AND PHYSICAL ACTIVITY** **252**

### **7 Understanding movement** **254**

<b>7.1</b> Overview .....	255
<b>7.2</b> Techniques affecting performance .....	256
<b>7.3</b> Projectile motion .....	263
<b>7.4</b> Movement sequences .....	267
<b>7.5</b> Developing strategic awareness .....	273
<b>7.6</b> Review .....	277

### **8 Solving movement challenges** **280**

<b>8.1</b> Overview .....	281
<b>8.2</b> Using feedback .....	282
<b>8.3</b> Manipulating movement concepts and strategies .....	289
<b>8.4</b> Transferring movement strategies .....	296
<b>8.5</b> Decision making .....	300
<b>8.6</b> Review .....	307

### **9 Leadership, collaboration and teamwork** **310**

<b>9.1</b> Overview .....	311
<b>9.2</b> Roles and responsibilities .....	312
<b>9.3</b> Teamwork .....	317
<b>9.4</b> Leadership .....	322
<b>9.5</b> Inclusive participation .....	328
<b>9.6</b> Assessing movement performance .....	332
<b>9.7</b> Review .....	339

### **10 Health benefits of physical activity** **342**

<b>10.1</b> Overview .....	343
<b>10.2</b> What is physical activity? .....	344
<b>10.3</b> Physical activity and exercise guidelines for all Australians .....	348
<b>10.4</b> The benefits of physical activity .....	353
<b>10.5</b> Influences on physical activity .....	358
<b>10.6</b> Planning and designing physical activity plans .....	365
<b>10.7</b> Review .....	372

Glossary .....	376
Index .....	381

# About the authors

---

**Ron Ruskin** is an established and respected PDHPE teacher and has had several active roles and qualifications in sports coaching and examining. He was formerly the Head Teacher of PDHPE at Northmead High School, but is now retired. Ron maintains a particular interest in basketball, touch football and golf, and in aquatics (as a former examiner for the Royal Lifesaving Society — Australia). He has also been a Senior Marker of the HSC for the NSW Board of Studies and has worked on the HSC advice line. Ron is a contributing author to the *Jacaranda Outcomes* and *Jacaranda Active Outcomes* series for senior and junior high-school students in New South Wales.

**Kim Proctor** was a Director, School Services with the NSW Department of Education. She has worked in a diverse range of roles within education, including as a PDHPE head teacher, PDHPE consultant, coordinator for Student Health in New South Wales, and a leader of curriculum in secondary schools. Kim has vast experience in working in and with schools to develop and implement quality teaching programs in PDHPE and school-wide policies that support student health and wellbeing. She has specific experience in sexual health education, anti-discrimination education, strengths-based teaching practices and community health issues. She is the co-author of a number of PDHPE textbooks.

**Jade Hunt** has fourteen years' experience as a Personal Development, Health and Physical Education teacher in secondary schools in New South Wales. For the past decade, she has been the Head of PDHPE at Amity College. In addition to her wealth of classroom experience, Jade is also a current HSC Senior Marker. With a passion for pedagogy, she has written a number of units of work and workbooks spanning a broad range of PDHPE topics. Moreover, Jade is a sought-after author of HSC PDHPE trial papers that are utilised by numerous schools throughout NSW, further cementing her reputation as an accomplished education professional.

**Jenna Oliver** is an experienced Health and Physical Education teacher who has over ten years' experience teaching at government and independent schools in Victoria. Jenna loves teaching both junior and senior HPE classes and has a reputation as an outstanding VCE HHD teacher. Jenna is passionate about developing students' health literacy and giving students the knowledge and skills they need to have agency in embracing healthy and active lives.

**Stephanie Richardson** has thirteen years' experience as a Health and Physical Education teacher in New South Wales and is currently teaching at Dubbo College Senior Campus. Previously involved in the writing of *Jacaranda Active Outcomes*, Stephanie enjoys the challenge of creating engaging content for students and teachers.

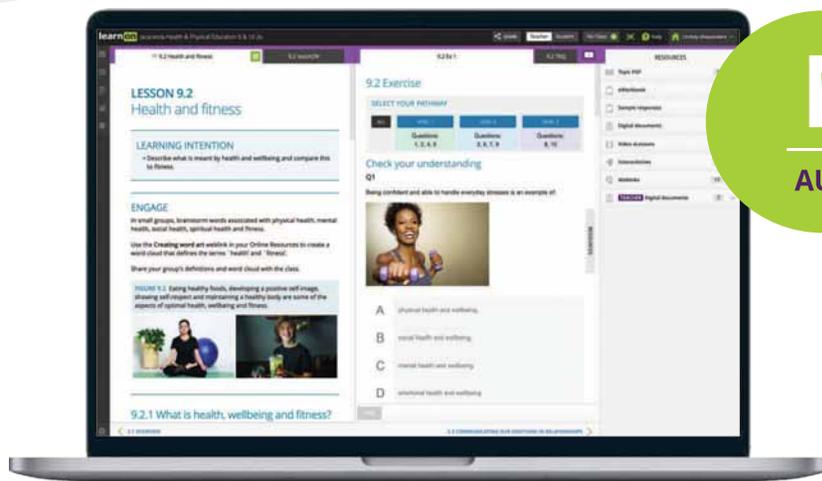
**Wade Richardson** has thirteen years' experience as a PDHPE teacher in primary and secondary schools in New South Wales. Currently the Head of PDHPE at Macquarie Anglican Grammar, he has written teacher resources for *Jacaranda Active Outcomes*, has written Preliminary and HSC exams for the PDHPE Teachers' Association, and is an experienced HSC marker for PDHPE.

**Kirsty Walsh** has fifteen years' experience as a Health and Physical Education teacher in secondary schools in Victoria and South Australia. Currently the Head of Health and PE at Ballarat Clarendon College, she is a recognised VCE PE expert, having been a VCAA examiner across PE and H&HD for eight years. Kirsty has presented for the Australian Council for Health, Physical Education and Recreation (ACHPER) on a broad range of HPE topics, from middle school through to senior PE, and co-authored the *Jacaranda Live It Up* series for the VCE PE course.

**Kim Weston** has taught Health and Human Development in government and independent secondary schools in Victoria since the inception of the subject. She has been active in curriculum development through the writing of texts, study guides and sample exams, and presentation of student revision sessions for a range of organisations. Formerly the Head of Home Economics and Hospitality at Methodist Ladies College, she was recognised as an exemplary teacher with extensive experience in Health curriculum and assessment procedures. Kim is currently working as a curriculum consultant and author.

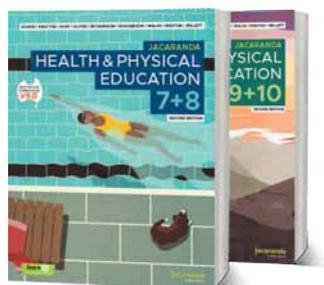
**Kym Willett** has over twenty-five years' experience as a Health and Physical Education teacher in secondary schools in Victoria, New South Wales and Western Australia. Kym teaches both junior and senior courses. She has held a range of roles including PDHPE curriculum consultant, working with schools to develop quality teaching programs, and lead VCE assessor, and has delivered many professional development programs to both students and teachers. Kym has also worked extensively with pre-service teachers, enthusiastically coaching the next generation of HPE teachers.

# About this resource



## NEW FOR

AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM V9.0



## JACARANDA

# HEALTH & PE 7+8 AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM

SECOND EDITION

## Developed by teachers for students

Tried, tested and trusted. Every lesson in the new *Jacaranda Health and PE* series contains a strengths-based and practical approach to support teachers and help students lead healthy and active lives.

Because both *what* and *how* students learn matter



### Learning is personal

Whether students need a challenge or a helping hand, you'll find what you need to create engaging lessons.

Whether in class or at home, students can access carefully scaffolded lessons, with engaging practical activities and interactive content. Automatically marked, differentiated question sets are all supported by detailed sample responses — so students can get unstuck and progress!



### Learning is effortful

Learning happens when students push themselves. With learnON, Australia's most powerful online learning platform, students can challenge themselves, build confidence and ultimately achieve success.



### Learning is rewarding

Through real-time results data, students can track and monitor their own progress and easily identify areas of strength and weakness.

And for teachers, Learning Analytics provide valuable insights to support student growth and drive informed intervention strategies.

# Learn online with Australia's most

Everything you need for each of your lessons in one simple view

- Trusted, curriculum-aligned theory
- Engaging, rich multimedia
- All the teaching-support resources you need
- Deep insights into progress
- Immediate feedback for students
- Create custom assignments in just a few clicks.

Practical teaching advice and ideas for each lesson provided in teachON

Reading content and rich media including embedded videos and interactivities

The screenshot displays the learnON interface for 'Jacaranda Health & Physical Education 9 & 10 2e'. The main content area is titled 'LESSON 5.2 Social, cultural and economic factors that influence health and help-seeking'. Below the title, there is a 'LEARNING INTENTION' section with a bullet point: 'Identify how the social conditions in which you are born, live and work may influence your health and help-seeking.' The next section is '5.2.1 Health and community', which includes a paragraph: 'A number of factors can affect the health of people in the community. In this lesson, you will explore how the circumstances that people live in affect their health. You will look at why community health programs are so important and discover whether the communities you are a part of are healthy or not.' Below this is an 'ENGAGE' section with the text: 'What happens to life expectancy as education level falls? Discuss how education level might contribute to disease and death.' An 'Interactivity' section titled 'Education levels and life expectancy' features a bar chart. The chart shows life expectancy in years for men and women, categorized by education level: Low (blue), Medium (pink), and High (green). The y-axis ranges from 0 to 65 years. For men, life expectancy is approximately 52 years for Low, 58 for Medium, and 60 for High. For women, it is approximately 58 for Low, 62 for Medium, and 64 for High. The interface also shows a sidebar with '5.2 Exercise' and 'Check your Q1' sections, and a 'SAVE' button at the bottom right.

Sex	Low	Medium	High
Men	52	58	60
Women	58	62	64

# powerful learning tool, learnON

The image shows a screenshot of the learnON software interface on a laptop. The interface is divided into several sections. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'SHARE', 'Teacher', 'Student', 'No Class', 'Help', and a user profile 'Lindsey Abeyasekera'. Below this, the main content area is titled '5.2 Ex 1' and '5.2 TBQ'. A 'RESOURCES' sidebar is visible on the right, listing various resource types and their counts. Callout boxes with green lines point to specific features in the interface:

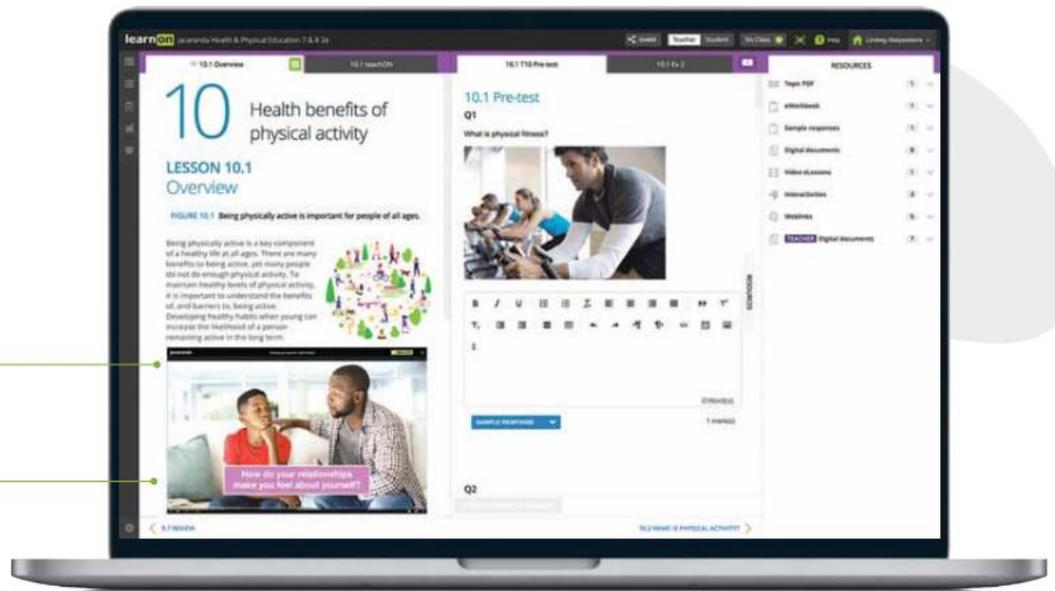
- Differentiated question sets (pointing to the 'LEVEL 1', 'LEVEL 2', 'LEVEL 3' tabs)
- Teacher and student views (pointing to the 'Teacher' and 'Student' buttons)
- Textbook questions (pointing to the '5.2 TBQ' tab)
- eWorkbook (pointing to the 'eWorkbook' resource in the sidebar)
- Sample responses (pointing to the 'Sample responses' resource in the sidebar)
- Digital documents (pointing to the 'Digital documents' resource in the sidebar)
- Video eLessons (pointing to the 'Video eLessons' resource in the sidebar)
- Interactivities (pointing to the 'Interactivities' resource in the sidebar)
- Weblinks (pointing to the 'Weblinks' resource in the sidebar)
- Extra teaching-support resources (pointing to the 'TEACHER Digital documents' resource in the sidebar)
- Interactive questions with immediate feedback (pointing to the main content area)

# Get the most from your online resources

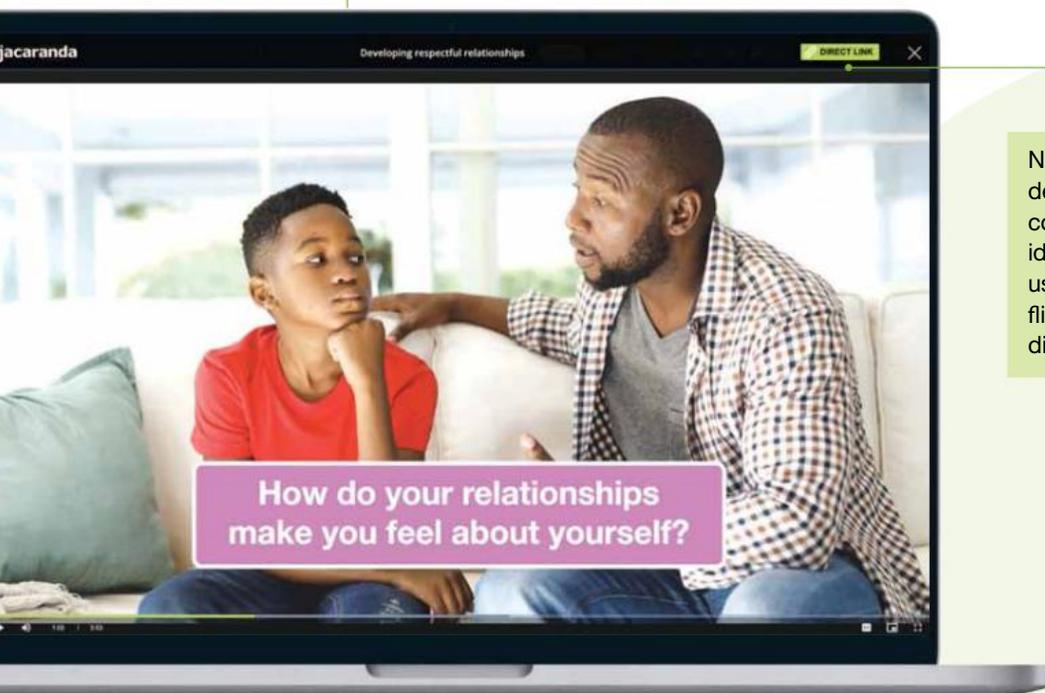
Online, these new editions are the complete package

Trusted Jacaranda theory, plus tools to support teaching and make learning more engaging, personalised and visible.

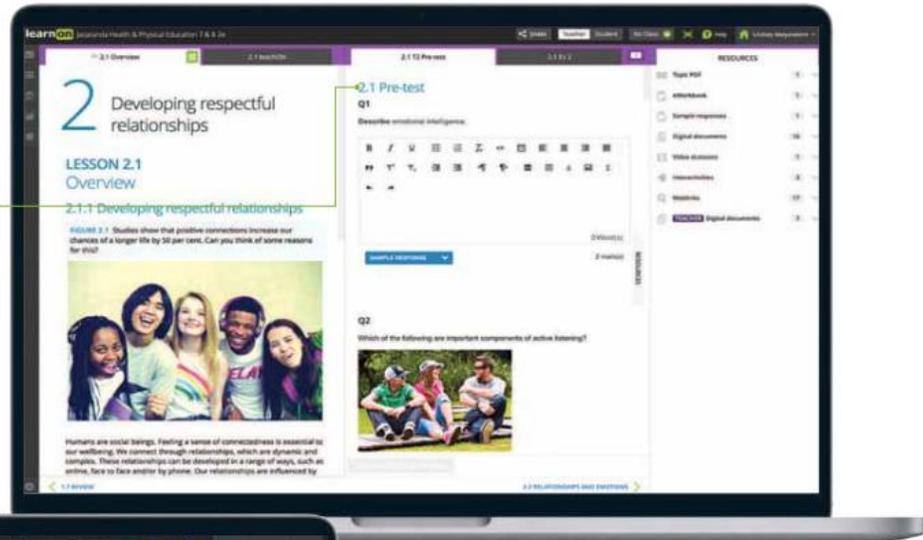
Embedded interactivities and videos enable students to explore concepts and learn deeply by 'doing'.



New videos for every topic are designed to help students learn concepts by introducing the key ideas and are flexible enough to be used for pre- and post-learning, flipped classrooms, class discussions, remediation and more.

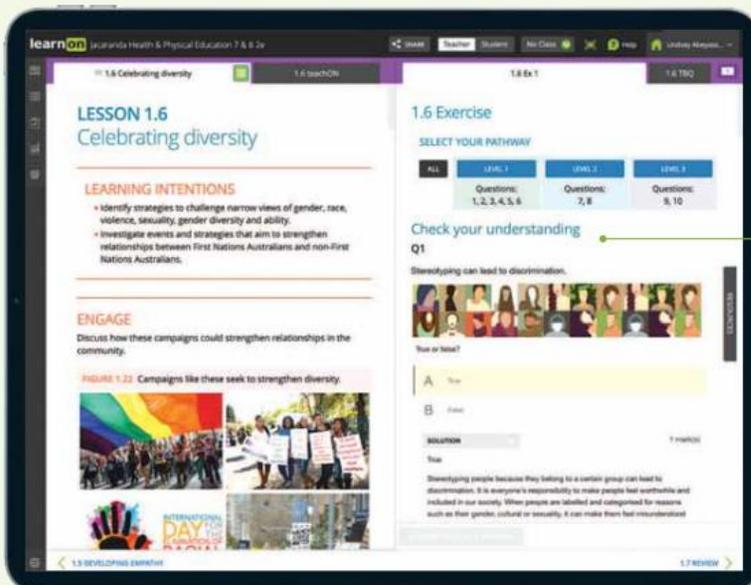
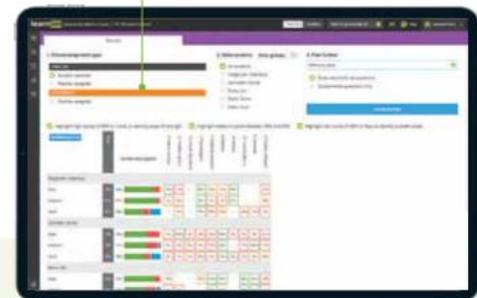
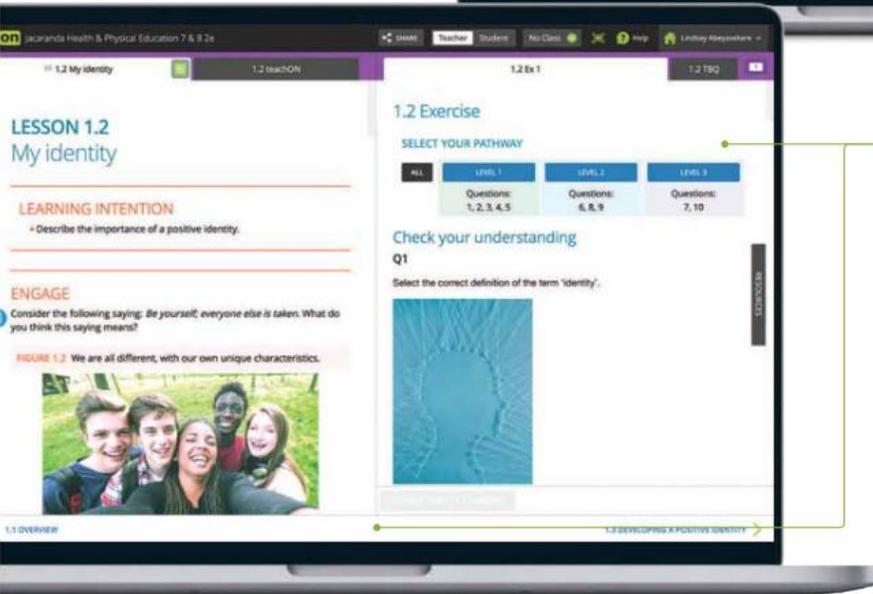


Pre-test and post-tests help test skill acquisition.



Three differentiated question sets, with immediate feedback in every lesson, enable students to challenge themselves at their own level.

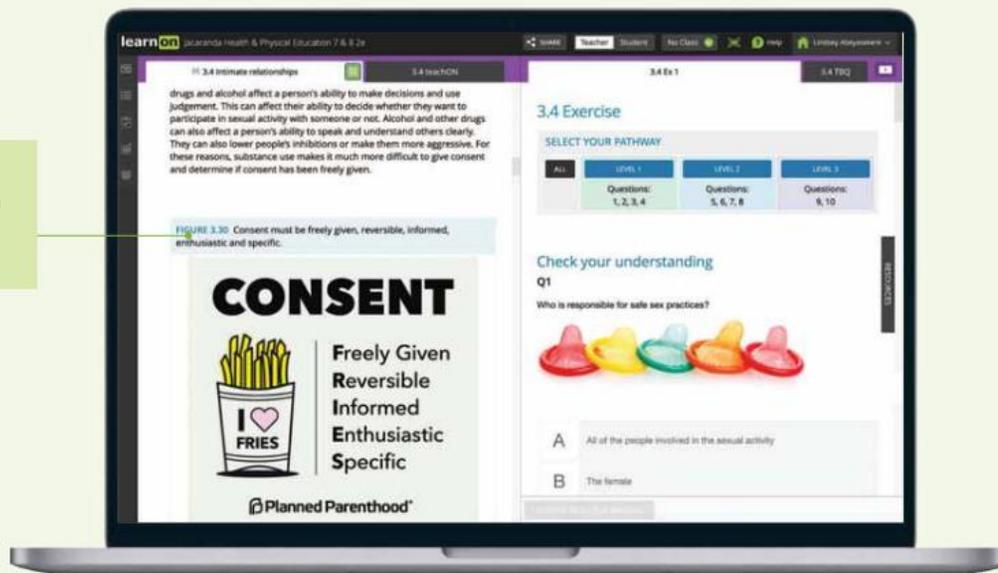
Instant reports give students visibility into progress and performance.



Every question has immediate, feedback to help students overcome misconceptions as they occur and get unstuck as they study independently – in class and at home.

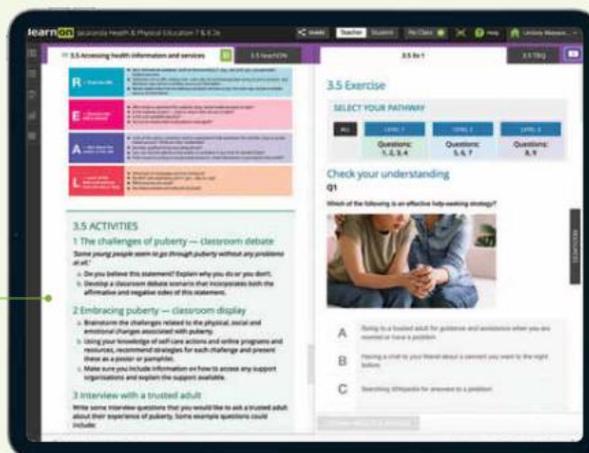
# Consent and respectful relationships

Reliable and practical content and activities on consent and respectful relationships.

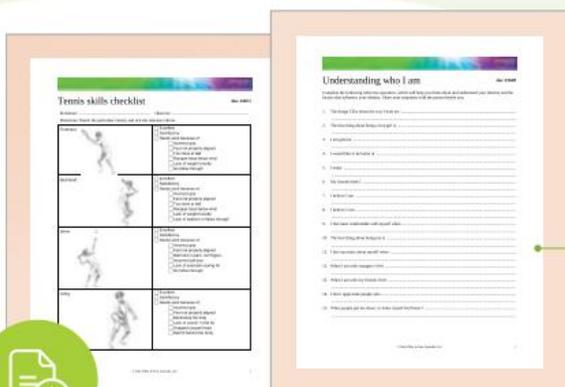


# A wide variety of activities

Includes a range of practical activities in every lesson including group work and practicals.

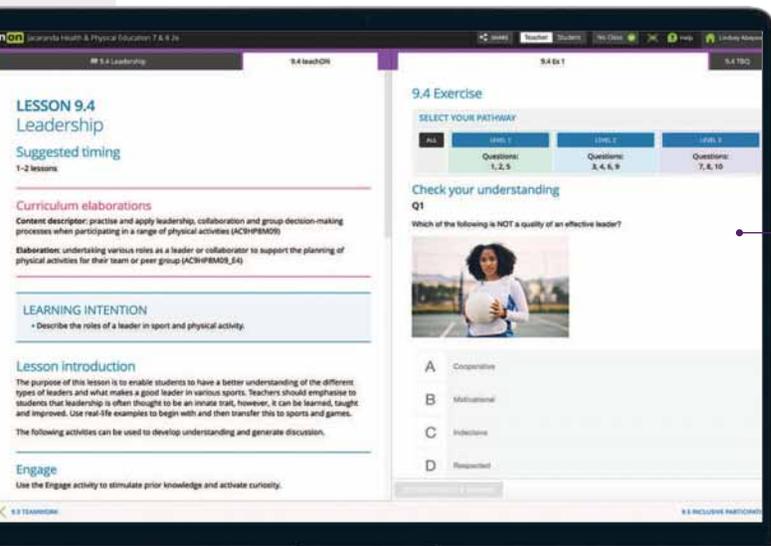


# eWorkbook



The eWorkbook enables teachers and students to download additional activities to support deeper learning.

# A wealth of teacher resources

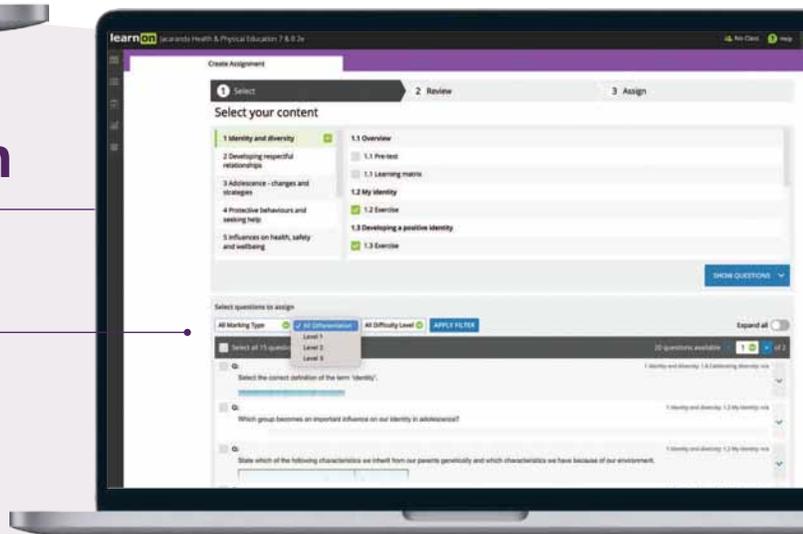


## Enhanced teaching-support resources for every lesson, including:

- work programs and curriculum grids
- practical teaching advice
- quarantined topic tests (with solutions)

# Customise and assign

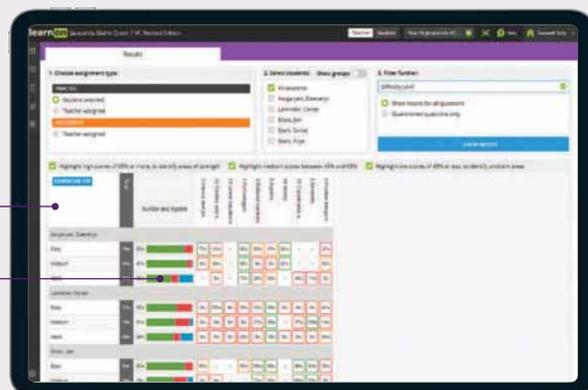
An inbuilt testmaker enables you to create custom assignments and tests from the complete bank of thousands of questions for immediate, spaced and mixed practice.



# Reports and results

Data analytics and instant reports provide data-driven insights into progress and performance within each lesson and across the entire course.

Show students (and their parents or carers) their own assessment data in fine detail. You can filter their results to identify areas of strength and weakness.



# Acknowledgements

---

The authors and publisher would like to thank the following copyright holders, organisations and individuals for their assistance and for permission to reproduce copyright material in this book.

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA) 2010 to present, unless otherwise indicated. This material was downloaded from the Australian Curriculum website ([www.australiancurriculum.edu.au](http://www.australiancurriculum.edu.au)) (Website) (accessed 27 May 2022) and was not modified. The material is licensed under CC BY 4.0 (<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0>). Version updates are tracked in the 'Curriculum version history' section on the 'About the Australian Curriculum' page (<http://australiancurriculum.edu.au/about-the-australian-curriculum/>) of the Australian Curriculum website.

ACARA does not endorse any product that uses the Australian Curriculum or make any representations as to the quality of such products. Any product that uses material published on this website should not be taken to be affiliated with ACARA or have the sponsorship or approval of ACARA. It is up to each person to make their own assessment of the product, taking into account matters including, but not limited to, the version number and the degree to which the materials align with the content descriptions and achievement standards (where relevant). Where there is a claim of alignment, it is important to check that the materials align with the content descriptions and achievement standards (endorsed by all education Ministers), not the elaborations (examples provided by ACARA).

## Images

• © Monkey Business/Adobe Stock: **317** • © AAPgrad/Shutterstock: **233** • © WILLIAM WEST/Getty Images: **317** • © alybaba/Shutterstock: **233** • © Andrey Burmakin/Shutterstock: **260, 270** • © AAP Images: **34**  
• © ArliftAtoz2205/Shutterstock: **137, 194** • © Axefan2/Wikipedia/Public Domain: **122** • © Benny Marty/Shutterstock: **231, 232, 233** • © Benoit Daoust/Shutterstock: **259** • © BlueRingMedia/Shutterstock: **120**  
• © Carlos Leopardi/Shutterstock: **234** • © Davide69/Shutterstock: **260** • © demypic/iStock/Getty Images: **158**  
• © Digital Vision./Getty Images: tiburonstudios/Getty Images, wrangler/Shutterstock, Sinan Isakovic/Shutterstock, Alan Pryke/Newspix: **32** • © Image Source/Getty Images: **330** • © Dinner The Look/Shutterstock: **122** • © Dneprstock/Shutterstock: **232** • © DUSAN ZIDAR/Shutterstock: **120** • © Getty Images: **354** • © Jacaranda Active Outcomes 1 3E NSW Ac LearnON & Print, **9780730358237, 350**  
• © SolStock/Getty Images: **197** • © Stefan Schurr/Shutterstock: **333** • © vgajic/Getty Images: **334**  
• © Evgeniyqw/Shutterstock: **158** • © Hakan Dere/E+/Getty Images: **158** • © Hekla/Shutterstock: **100**  
• © jvphoto/Alamy Stock Photo: **11** • © Mr Privacy/Alamy Stock Photo: **247** • © Image Point Fr/Shutterstock: **121** • © Inna Kharlamova/Shutterstock: **100** • © Getty Images/iStockphoto: **135** • © Jazalayyin/Getty Images: **366** • © santyan/Getty Images: **194** • © JPC-PROD/Shutterstock: **121** • © Ksenia Shestakova/Shutterstock: **232**  
• © M. Unal Ozmen/Shutterstock: **158** • © Mai Groves/Shutterstock: **259** • © Meilisa Dwi N/Shutterstock: **232**  
• © Michael Leslie/Shutterstock: **137** • © Trevor Pinder/Newspix: **244** • © nito/Shutterstock: **121** • © Philip Schubert/Shutterstock: **137** • © Pixel-Shot/Shutterstock: **101, 227** • © Hasil Muslu/Shutterstock: **233**  
• © Roman Sigaev/Shutterstock: **121** • © rsiel/Shutterstock: **211** • © Rudenko Alla/Shutterstock: **101**  
• © Adam Calaitzis/Shutterstock: **359** • © Adam Vilimek/Shutterstock: **332** • © Afanasiev Andrii/Shutterstock: **349** • © Alex Bogatyrev/Shutterstock: **258** • © altanaka/Shutterstock: **349** • © Anna Grigorjeva/Shutterstock: **329** • © Anton Vierietin/Shutterstock, WoodysPhotos/Shutterstock: **260** • © Antonio Guillem/Shutterstock, MEDIA MANAGER: person putting on a seatbelt: **243** • © antpkrr/Shutterstock: **291** • © Arina P Habich/Shutterstock: **104** • © Bangkok Click Studio/Shutterstock: **123** • © Brian A Jackson/Shutterstock: **212, 229** • © Burdun Iliya/Shutterstock: **102** • © ChameleonsEye/Shutterstock: **198, 209, 284** • © Chris Hellyar/Shutterstock: **268** • © ChristianChan/Shutterstock: **20** • © Colored Lights/Shutterstock: **95**  
• © Creative442/Shutterstock: **240** • © De Visu/Shutterstock: **240** • © Milosluz/iStock/Getty Images: **167**  
• © Denis Tabler/Shutterstock, Elena Shashkin/Shutterstock: **225** • © Diego Cervo/Shutterstock: **156** • © Dmitry Demidovich/Shutterstock: **22, 33** • © Dragon Images/Shutterstock, Jonathan James McMillan/Shutterstock: **269**

• © Efetova Anna/Shutterstock: **159** • © elenabs/Shutterstock: **345** • © everst/Shutterstock: **112**  
 • © Fejas/Shutterstock: **287** • © GLandStudio/Shutterstock, Vasyi Shulga/Shutterstock: **271**  
 • © goffkein.pro/Shutterstock: **102** • © GoodIdeas/Shutterstock: **151** • © Goodluz/Shutterstock: **210** • © Ground  
 Picture/Shutterstock: **172** • © Gts/Shutterstock: **162** • © Haryadi CH/Shutterstock: **101** • © highwaystarz/Adobe  
 Stock: **312** • © Hysteria/Shutterstock: **168** • © I T A L O/Shutterstock, Eugene Onischenko/Shutterstock,  
 EFKS/Shutterstock: **270** • © Inara Prusakova/Shutterstock: **269** • © IOIO IMAGES/Shutterstock: **296**  
 • © iPhoto-Thailand/Shutterstock: **360** • © J Mundy/Shutterstock: **230** • © James Cole Creative/Shutterstock: **14**  
 • © junpinzon/Shutterstock: **366** • © kikovic/Shutterstock: **201** • © Kzenon/Shutterstock: **13** • © LightField  
 Studios/Shutterstock: **239** • © LittlePanda29/Shutterstock: **198** • © Lorenzo Photo Projects/Shutterstock: **350**  
 • © marekulasz/Shutterstock: **123** • © margouillat photo/Shutterstock: **228** • © marilyn barbone/Shutterstock:  
**238** • © Marmolejos/Shutterstock: **17** • © MicroOne/Shutterstock: **156** • © Mihai\_Andritoiu/Shutterstock: **206**  
 • © Mike\_shots/Shutterstock: **16** • © Mix and Match Studio/Shutterstock: **173** • © Mohd Nasiruddin  
 Yazid/Shutterstock: **362** • © Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock: **7, 17, 106, 163, 183, 228, 329**  
 • © Natalia Varlamova/Shutterstock: **177** • © New Africa/Shutterstock: **25** • © nms1980/Shutterstock: **356**  
 • © oneinchpunch/Shutterstock: **94, 111, 150** • © Pierre Jean Durieu/Shutterstock: **238**  
 • © Rittis/Shutterstock: **16** • © Roman Chazov/Shutterstock: **16** • © Ross Stevenson/Shutterstock: **112**  
 • © sebra/Shutterstock: **108** • © Sergei Kolesnikov/Shutterstock: **301** • © Serious Boy merge to teen headshot  
 half side by side growth and development: **104** • © Seyff/Shutterstock: **290** • © Brastock/Shutterstock: **76**  
 • © Chaay\_Tee/Shutterstock: **110** • © desdemona72/Shutterstock: **46** • © feelphoto/Shutterstock: **314**  
 • © fizkes/Shutterstock: **113, 146** • © Focus and Blur/Shutterstock: **48** • © matimix/Shutterstock: **269, 328**  
 • © Viktoria Kazakova/Shutterstock: **61** • © William Perugini/Shutterstock: **6** • © softpixel/Shutterstock: **283**  
 • © Source: Nils Verseemann/Shutterstock: **202** • © squarelogo/Shutterstock: **344** • © STEKLO/Shutterstock: **96**  
 • © stockphoto-graf/Shutterstock: **356** • © Stokkete/Shutterstock: **205** • © Studio Romantic/Shutterstock: **129**  
 • © Syda Productions/Shutterstock: **206** • © taka1022/Shutterstock: **267** • © Tanison Pachtanom/Shutterstock:  
**240** • © TierneyMJ/Shutterstock: **176** • © TK Kurikawa/Shutterstock: **209** • © Tom Wang/Shutterstock,  
 Photographee.eu/Shutterstock, verOnicka/Shutterstock: **135** • © Tori Levi/Shutterstock: **350**  
 • © vanhurck/Shutterstock: **361** • © vectorfusionart/Shutterstock: **349** • © wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock: **328**  
 • © xavier gallego morell/Shutterstock: **21** • © XiXinXing/Shutterstock: **334** • © zstock/Shutterstock: **246**  
 • © Michael Smith ITWP/Shutterstock: **14** • © Robyn Mackenzie/Shutterstock: **128** • © Sherjaca/Shutterstock:  
**233** • © Comstock/Getty Images: sportpoint/Shutterstock: **258** • © tamayura/Shutterstock: **232** • © Tetra  
 Images/Getty Images: **112** • © Tohuwabohu1976/Shutterstock: **234** • © Alamy Stock Photo: **177** • © PhotoDisc,  
 Inc/Getty Images: **318** • © Asserting your boundaries: **109** • © BeeZeePhoto/Shutterstock, Sunshine  
 Seeds/Shutterstock, The Creative Guy/Shutterstock, brett keating/Alamy Stock Photo: **30** • © Beyond Blue Ltd:  
 State of Victoria: **131** • © Buda Mendes/Getty Images: **323** • © challenge course: **319** • © Colorfuel  
 Studio/Shutterstock: **221** • © David Kendall/Alamy Stock photo: **170** • © DESIGNECOLOGIST/UnSplash: **199**  
 • © DragonImages/Adobe Stock: **115** • © ENVIROSENSE/Shutterstock: **231** • © Flash Vector/Shutterstock: **342**  
 • © harmony.gov.au: **35** • © HEADSPACE INC: **130, 131** • © Heath Doman/Shutterstock: **155** • © Karen &  
 Summer Kala/Alamy Stock Photo: **116** • © Kids Helpline: **130, 131, 179** • © Lance Bellers/Shutterstock: **280**  
 • © Maya Kruchankova/Shutterstock: **185** • © Milky Way fa/Shutterstock: **144** • © Neale Cousland/Shutterstock,  
 Mark Kolbe/Getty Images: **359** • © notbad/Shutterstock: **221** • © OSTILL is Franck Camhi/Shutterstock: **257**  
 • © panitanphoto/Shutterstock: **170** • © Planned Parenthood: **117** • © Rawpixel.com/Shutterstock: **4, 13, 45, 58**  
 • © ReachOut Australia: **130, 131** • © REDPIXEL.PL/Shutterstock: **201, 203** • © Role of the coach: **313**  
 • © Rose Carson/Shutterstock, Vetta/the Agency Collection/Getty Images, Niloo/Shutterstock,  
 warrengoldswain/iStock/Getty Images: **194** • © Ruslan Gilyazov/123RF: **282** • © Source: **24-hour movement**  
 guidelines – children and young people (5 to 17 years) – poster for educators, Australian Government-  
 Department of Health. **348** • © Source: Beaumont, Fetting, Alderson, O'Halloran, Weston, (2022).  
 JACARANDA KEY CONCEPTS IN VCE Health & Human Development, Units 1 & 2, **7th** edition, p.323. John  
 Wiley & Sons: **97** • © Source: Consent Labs: **107, 109, 118** • © Source: Got a lot going on?, Headspace: **236**  
 • © Sport In Pictures/Alamy Stock Photo: **310** • © StockAppeal/Shutterstock: **238** • © SVStudio/Shutterstock,  
 Paranyu/Shutterstock: **94** • © Tatyana/Adobe Stock: **218** • © Tim Mainiero/Shutterstock: **168, 169** • © Winston  
 Davidian/Photodisc/Getty Images: **190** • © YanLev/Shutterstock: **92, 242** • © James Peragine, 2010. Used under  
 license from Shutterstock: **263** • © STOP\_WAR/Shutterstock: **51** • © majson/Shutterstock: **69** • © Sander van

der Werf/Shutterstock: **83** • © Source: Introvert Doodles. Retrieved from: <https://www.growthcounseling.com/blog/2019/9/18/intimate-and-tribal-gas-lighting-how-to-keep-yourself-safe-amp-sane>: **70**

- © Source: Talk soon. Talk often. A guide for parents talking to their kids about sex. Department of Health. Government of Western Australia: **79** • © Source: The digital lives of Aussie teens, 2021. Esafety. Licensed under CC BY 4.0: **82** • © Suzanne Tucker/Shutterstock: **104** • © Pressmaster/Shutterstock: **194**
- © ydecosta/Shutterstock: **228, 229** • © John Elliott: **233** • © Dubbo Regional Council: **247** • © Source: Sivak, L., et al. (2019). “Language Breathes Life”—Barngarla Community Perspectives on the Wellbeing Impacts of Reclaiming a Dormant Australian Aboriginal Language. In *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health* Vol. 16, Issue 20, p. 3918. Licensed under CC BY 4.0: **237** • © Izf/Shutterstock: **254**
- © Natursports/Shutterstock: **268** • © Bojan Milinkov/Shutterstock: **284** • © Dziurek/Shutterstock: **283**
- © European Sports Photo Agency/Alamy Stock Photo: **283** • © Paul Kane/Getty Images: **314** • © Malte Mueller/Getty Images: **2, 3, 252, 253** • © Source: Beaumont, Fettling, Alderson, O’Halloran, Weston, (2022). *JACARANDA KEY CONCEPTS IN VCE Health & Human Development, Units 1 & 2, 7th edition*, p.323. John Wiley & Sons: **97, 148** • © Source: Aboriginal Culture and History, Victorian Public Sector Commission. Licensed under CC BY 4.0: **136** • © Source: EUFIC, 9 practical tips for a healthy and sustainable diet: **230**
- © Source: Cancer Council Victoria: **245**

## Text

- © Source: King et al. 2009, “Oxford Studies of Religion”, Oxford University Press, South Melbourne: **137**
- © Source: A History Stretching back 65,000 Years, Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet. Licensed under CC BY 4.0: **136** • © Source: Data from The Sport and Physical Activity Landscape, SportAus: **362**
- © Source: Dadirri-A Reflection By Miriam – Dr. Rose Ungunmerr-Baumann: **241** • © Source: Young Mob-First Nations youth program, World Vision Australia: **137, 138** • © Source: Louise Swanson, *Jacaranda Geoactive 2 NSW Australian curriculum Geography Stage 5, 2017*, John Wiley & Sons: **231**

Every effort has been made to trace the ownership of copyright material. Information that will enable the publisher to rectify any error or omission in subsequent reprints will be welcome. In such cases, please contact the Permissions Section of John Wiley & Sons Australia, Ltd.

# Understanding cognitive verbs

## Cognitive verbs in the Australian Curriculum

The Australian Curriculum aims to develop students' disciplinary knowledge, skills, understanding and general capabilities across the curriculum. Students are also expected to progressively develop their thinking skills.

In the Australian Curriculum, cognitive verbs are used as signposts for this depth of thinking. Cognitive verbs signify different types of thinking and are already used in the classroom by many teachers and students.

Questions within Jacaranda resources use these cognitive verbs to support students in cognitive verb 'thinking'. The following list describes the cognitive verbs that are frequently used in Years 7 and 8.

Cognitive verb	Description
analyse	considering something in detail, finding meaning or relationships and identifying patterns. In an analysis you may reorganise ideas and find similarities and differences.
apply	using knowledge and understanding in order to solve a problem or complete an activity. This may involve applying a familiar concept to an unfamiliar situation.
compare	recognising how things are similar and dissimilar. Concepts or items are generally grouped before a comparison is made.
decide	selecting from available options. This may involve considering criteria on which to base your selection.
describe	giving an account of a situation, event, pattern or process. A description may require a sequence or order.
develop	bringing something to a more advanced state. Processing and understanding are required in order to develop an idea or opinion.
evaluate	making a judgement using a set of criteria. This may include considering strengths and limitations of something in order to make a judgement on a preferred option.
examine	considering the information given and recognising key features. This sometimes requires making a decision.
explain	making an idea, concept or relationship between two things clear by giving in-depth information. Explanations may include details of who, what, when, where, why and how.
identify	recognising and showing a particular part or feature of something. This might also include showing what or who something or someone is.
interpret	gaining meaning from text, graphs, data or other visuals. An interpretation includes stating what something might mean.
select	choosing the most suitable option from a number of alternatives. This might require some consideration of context.

**Source:** Adapted from the QCAA Cognitive Verbs.



PART

# 1

# Personal, social and community health

## TOPIC SEQUENCE

1	Identity and diversity .....	4
2	Developing respectful relationships .....	40
3	Adolescence – changes and strategies .....	92
4	Protective behaviours and seeking help .....	144
5	Influences on health, safety and wellbeing .....	190
6	Promoting health, safety and wellbeing .....	218



# 1 Identity and diversity

## LESSON SEQUENCE

1.1 Overview .....	5
1.2 My identity .....	6
1.3 Developing a positive identity .....	11
1.4 Valuing and appreciating diversity .....	20
1.5 Developing empathy .....	25
1.6 Celebrating diversity .....	30
1.7 Review .....	37

**FIGURE 1.1** The 2021 *Mission Australia Youth Survey Report* found that 53.4 per cent of Australian young people are happy overall with their lives. Breaking down this figure, we see that 63.2 per cent of males reported feeling happy or very happy with their lives, compared to 48.5 per cent of females and 22.2 per cent of gender-diverse young people. Less than half (42.4 per cent) of First Nations Australian young people said they were happy overall with their lives. What might influence the levels of happiness felt by Australian young people?



# LESSON

## 1.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 1.1.1 Being different together

Diversity is the richness and uniqueness of human life. It is one of the key elements that make life interesting and rewarding. Diversity includes differences in individual interests and capabilities, as well as in ethnicity, culture, age, gender, language, socio-economic status and sexual orientation. When you value diversity, you recognise and respect the fact that people are different, and that you can learn from those differences. Some people have difficulty accepting differences in others and might discriminate against or bully them. We can embrace diversity by becoming more self-aware (i.e. forming our own identity), having rich and respectful conversations, learning about other people's points of view and being open-minded.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- Why is valuing diversity important for developing a positive identity?
- How can valuing diversity support you through your adolescence?
- How can communities value diversity and promote inclusion?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. What is unique about you?
2. How is your identity shaped by your changes, transitions, family, culture and traditions?
3. How can respecting diversity promote healthy communities?
4. How can we actively promote and celebrate inclusion?



Resources



**Video eLesson** Identity and diversity (eles-6018)

# LESSON

## 1.2 My identity

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe the importance of a positive identity.

### ENGAGE



doc-15649

Consider the following saying: *Be yourself; everyone else is taken.* What do you think this saying means?

**FIGURE 1.2** We are all different, with our own unique characteristics.



### 1.2.1 We are all unique

In this lesson, you will explore the ways each of us is **unique** and how we develop our **identity** — that is, our ideas and **beliefs** about ourselves. We are all individuals, with our own set of characteristics that make us unique. Our uniqueness is very special; it allows us to offer different skills, abilities, thoughts and opinions, and it makes our relationships with others interesting. Even though everyone is unique, in some respects we are similar. For example, you and your friends may play the same sport, like the same music or dress in a similar way.

### 1.2.2 Identity and wellbeing

Having a positive sense of identity helps your wellbeing through:

- having good self-awareness, self-acceptance and self-worth
- feeling good about who you are — having self-esteem
- knowing you belong and feel included in a social group
- sharing and developing interests within a group of similar-minded people
- allowing for greater independence
- providing purpose and motivation in life and supporting resilience
- supporting emotional wellbeing, lowering rates of anxiety and improving mood.

**unique** one of a kind  
**identity** sense of self in terms of characteristics and beliefs  
**beliefs** attitude that something is true or accepted

Your identity forms within a culture. It is seldom a deliberate or conscious process — we do not generally set out to create a certain identity for ourselves. We learn about culture and the identities of others through interactions with our family, peers, school and the media, and through the other connections we make in our everyday lives. Your identity is built from your memories, experiences, relationships and **values**. This mixture creates a sense of who you are, and new features are developed and incorporated into your identity over time.

Key parts of identity — like gender, sexual orientation, race and ethnicity, religion, age and physical ability — are important in shaping how we understand and experience the world. They affect the types of opportunities we get and the challenges we face.

Over time, we come to think of ourselves in certain ways. You may think of yourself as a reliable and trustworthy friend or a good sportsperson. When we are children, our family has the greatest influence on our identity. Our sense of identity is generally associated with the support and security of a caring adult. In the early primary school years, identity may also be influenced by attributes that parents/carers value and model. During our later school years, as we reach **adolescence**, our **peers** have an increasing influence on our behaviours, attitudes and beliefs.

### Our changing sense of identity

How our peers treat us can have a major impact on the way we feel about ourselves. We may want to be accepted by a group of people, so we dress and behave in ways that can help us connect with that group. This is because society, through the media, often promotes a belief that people must look a certain way to be valued and accepted.

The media uses images, words and characters to convey specific ideas and values related to culture and identity in society. The ‘perfect’ image the media creates is not possible for most people to achieve. Indeed, due to the use of filters and media-editing tools, the images that are created are often unrealistic. It is important to look at the whole person — who they are, not just how they look — and value and appreciate the unique qualities that each person has to offer.

Our sense of self and identity changes as we grow older. It develops as we start to experience a wider range of relationships and situations that affect our thoughts and feelings about who we are. You also make choices that shape your identity. It can involve trying out new experiences, making decisions about what you like and don’t like, and exploring your feelings and thoughts. Our sense of self and identity can also change in different situations. For example, we may feel very confident and self-assured when we are with our family, but less confident with our peers at school.

Through our identities, we make statements about who we are and who we are not. Acceptance, respect, appreciation and being valued are all strong contributors to a person’s sense of identity at any age. We all feel a sense of belonging when we feel accepted, respected, appreciated and valued within a community.

### 1.2.3 It’s great to be different!

Look around you. Are you exactly the same as anyone else? We are all different in many ways. The **physical**, **social** and **emotional** changes that we experience during adolescence happen at different rates and times for each of us — no two people have the same experience.

**FIGURE 1.3** Identity is influenced by many factors, including peers, culture, relationships and the changes that occur during puberty.



**values** beliefs about what is important; guide our attitudes and behaviour

**adolescence** the time during which we mature from a child to an adult

**peer** someone who is of a similar age or shares similar interests

**physical** refers to our body; in particular, its movements, systems (such as the muscular system) and structures (such as our bones and joints)

**social** refers to our interactions with other people

**emotional** refers to our feelings

There are a number of reasons why no one is exactly the same as anyone else. These reasons are both physical (biological) and social (environmental). When we are conceived — that is, when an egg and sperm unite — we receive **genes** from both our biological parents. Our genes determine many of our physical characteristics, such as the colour of our eyes, hair and skin; our biological sex; our height and blood type; our abilities; and whether we are born with certain diseases or conditions.

**genes** the biological units through which we inherit traits from our biological parents

**culture** the ethos, values, beliefs and/or philosophies of a group of people

**diverse** varied or different

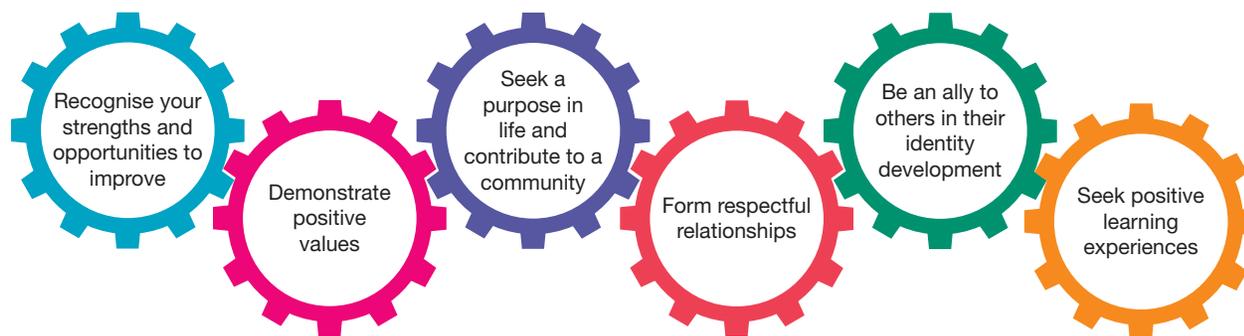
Our differences are not just genetic. From the day we are born, we are influenced by many things within our environment that are also unique. Our **culture** affects our diet, the way we dress, the languages we speak, our religion and the customs we follow. Our family influences us even more, affecting how we deal with our emotions, the relationships we have, our education, the values we hold, what we think about ourselves, what we eat, how active we are and what interests or hobbies we have.

We live in a very **diverse** society. Remember, we are all unique! An inclusive society that encourages diversity in all its forms benefits from this range of human experience and culture. Being inclusive benefits the health and wellbeing of everyone.

### 1.2.4 It's okay to be me!

Most people find it easy to identify a number of things about themselves that they would like to change. This is okay, provided you can also easily identify things about yourself that you like or that are good qualities. Accepting who you are as a person includes knowing your good qualities and recognising that there will be things that you can improve. Accepting who you are and liking things about yourself is the first step towards a positive identity.

**FIGURE 1.4** Some actions on the path towards a positive identity



#### DISCUSS

- List five words that people could use to describe you.
- Ask at least one other person who knows you well to list five words to describe you. Compare their list with yours.
- Identify two different factors (e.g. your family, peers, an organisation you belong to) that may have influenced your development of these characteristics. Outline how these factors affected you.
- Compare your words and suggested influences to those of at least two classmates. Analyse the similarities and differences.
- Justify the most influential factor for people your age.

## 1.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 This is me!



- a. Using the **Prezi** weblink in the Online Resources, compile a profile about yourself. This profile should show how you see yourself, your beliefs about yourself and what you value in yourself and others. You may wish to include photos, videos or a collage of words that describe you. When compiling your profile, consider:
- who you are
  - where you come from (your cultural background)
  - how you see yourself
  - how you get along with other people
  - things you are good at, not so good at and would like to improve
  - your future goals and dreams
  - your beliefs and the things you value
  - your family
  - your school experiences
  - who your role model is.
- b. In pairs, compare your profiles with each other.
- i. Write down all the similarities and differences that you notice.
  - ii. Identify the factors that may have influenced these similarities and differences.

### 2 #Guesswho?

Introduce yourself as a unique person in 280 characters. Explain why anyone would want to be friends with you. What would it mean to have you as a friend?

### 3 My avatar



An avatar is an icon or image that represents a person or character in the virtual world. Create an avatar for yourself. You can use the **Bitmoji** or **Avatar** maker weblinks in the Online Resources.

### 4 The changing nature of our identity

It is common for people to feel differently about themselves in different situations (social contexts). In groups of three or four, discuss how you feel and act when you are with people you know well compared with when you are around people you do not know well. Then, answer the following questions:

- a. Does your identity change when you are in different social contexts (e.g. with your family, at school with your peers)?
- b. How does your behaviour change in different social contexts?
- c. Describe another social context you have experienced in which you feel your identity varied. Explain the factors that influenced your identity in this situation.
- d. What aspects of your identity do you think might change as you get older?

### 5 My sense of identity



Complete the **Improving my sense of identity** in the Online Resources to explore your strengths and weaknesses.

## 1.2 Exercise

### 1.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

##### LEVEL 2

6, 8, 9

##### LEVEL 3

7, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Select the correct definition of the term 'identity'.
  - Identity is how we see others.
  - Identity is what others think of our actions and beliefs.
  - Identity is how we see ourselves and what we believe about ourselves.
  - Identity is how we judge others based on their actions or beliefs.
- MC** Which group becomes an important influence on our identity in adolescence?
  - Peers
  - Grandparents
  - Parents
  - Teachers
- State which of the following characteristics we inherit from our parents genetically and which characteristics we have because of our environment.

	Genetic	Environmental
Eye colour		
Biological sex		
The languages we speak		
The values we hold		
Height		
Blood type		
Interests and hobbies		
The customs we follow		

- Our identity is dynamic; it changes over time. True or false?
- MC** The first step towards developing a positive identity is accepting who you are. What does this mean?
  - Recognising your good qualities
  - Recognising the aspects of your behaviour that you could improve
  - Liking things about yourself
  - All of the above

### Apply your understanding

- State** the meaning of 'values' and 'beliefs'.
- Describe** some key parts of your identity. **Identify** three things that have influenced the development of your identity and then **explain** how they influenced you.
- Describe** how your sense of self develops as you get older.
- Explain** why having a positive identity is important to your health, wellbeing and relationships.
- The only thing we all have in common is that we're all different. Do you agree with this statement? **Explain** your response.

# LESSON

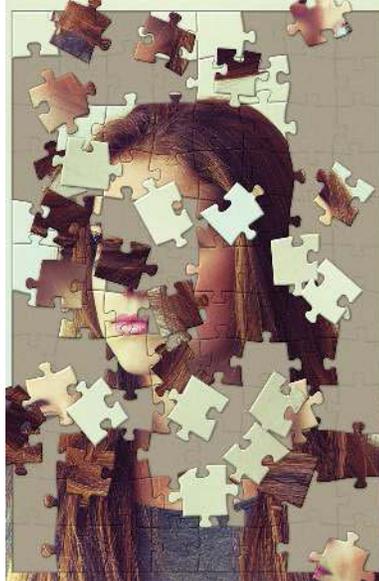
## 1.3 Developing a positive identity

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe influences on identity.
- Describe the use of personal totems in First Nations Australian cultures in forming identity.

### ENGAGE

**FIGURE 1.5** Your identity can be thought of as a jigsaw of many pieces.



Finding how all the pieces fit together in the jigsaw puzzle of your identity is a dynamic process. Puberty is a key time for collecting pieces of the puzzle.

Do you think the puzzle can ever be finished?

### 1.3.1 Forming an identity

Many factors shape our identity. In this lesson, you will explore how family, peer groups, cultural identity, changes during puberty and the school environment all play a role in the development of a positive identity.

### DISCUSS

Puberty has been described as a time of 'trying on hats'. What do you think this means when used in reference to identity?

## 1.3.2 Factors that shape our identity

Identity is based on both having a sense of self — our uniqueness and individuality, which makes us distinct from others — and belonging to a collective group. We therefore have a personal identity and a social identity.

The factors that influence our identity include our family, peer group, culture and traditions, school, gender, sexuality, body image, physical development, the media and our own successes and failures. We now look at each of these in turn.

**FIGURE 1.6** Our identity reflects the influence of a range of factors



### Family

Young people who are encouraged and supported by their families have the opportunity to feel good about themselves. Self-esteem develops through positive interactions with parents or caregivers in early adolescence and later with your peers. Warm family interactions and opportunities to take on challenges and experiences with support help young people to develop confidence. This is an important factor in a positive identity.

Parents and caregivers also directly teach values and beliefs. This includes teaching about right and wrong and sharing religious and political beliefs, beliefs about how to interact with people, and social rules and expectations. Parents also pass on values and beliefs through their behaviours and the examples they set.

The transition to adulthood involves young people actively exploring their own individual value system and accepting or rejecting the values of their family, community and culture. This can involve questioning why things are the way they are or experimenting with a different set of values and beliefs. If young people challenge the religious or cultural values held by the family, or directly challenge parental authority, this can be frustrating for many parents.



Follow the **ReachOut: Family conflict** weblink in the Online Resources for a teenager's story about family conflict.

## Peer group

Having a close friend or group of friends can be very important for young people. They expose you to a range of values that may or may not be similar to those of your family. Good friends will listen, be supportive and help you when you need it. The things you say to your friends and how you treat them can affect how they think about themselves. Likewise, how they respond to you can influence how you see yourself. Having a peer group also gives you people to discuss your opinions and attitudes about the world with. They can give you feedback that tells you how your opinions and attitudes compare to those of others.

Developing positive relationships with your friends is an important part of forming a positive identity, so considering the qualities of these relationships is essential. Positive relationships have the following qualities:

- mutual respect
- trust
- honesty
- support
- fairness/equality
- separate identities
- good communication.

## Culture and traditions

Cultural identity is important for a sense of self and how we relate to others. Culture includes the ideas, knowledge, attitudes, customs, beliefs and social behaviour of a particular community of people. First Nations Peoples of Australia have lived here for at least 65 000 years. Today, although the majority of the Australian population is of Anglo-Celtic ethnicity, our society is also made up of migrants from more than 200 countries. Almost 30 per cent of Australia's population were born overseas, and 48 per cent have a parent who was born overseas. This makes Australia a culturally rich and diverse society.

### Cultural background

Cultural background is one of the most significant influences shaping our identity. Each person's culture includes their customs, beliefs, values, language and behaviour. The multicultural nature of Australian society means that most of you will interact with people from a range of cultural backgrounds different from your own. You can learn a lot from interacting with people from different cultures.

Some differences in culture may be quite visible (e.g. food choice, dress, customs, behaviours and interests); however, other differences are less visible (e.g. values, attitudes and beliefs). The values of a cultural community reflect what that community considers important. Culture is something that we learn; it is dynamic and adapts to changing circumstances.

### Cultural stereotypes

False stereotypes can be used to label people from different cultural backgrounds and ethnicities. One false stereotype is the 'myth of the model minority'. This stereotype suggests that all Asian Australian children are maths whizzes or musical geniuses and that their Tiger mums force them to work harder and be

**FIGURE 1.7** Our peer group can help shape our identity.



**FIGURE 1.8** Food choice reflects our culture and traditions.



better than everyone else. The myth also characterises Asian Australians as a polite, law-abiding group who have achieved a higher level of success than the general population through a combination of talent and hard work. The stereotype assumes that people of Asian culture are taught from a young age to be polite and obedient and that it is unacceptable for them to be direct or confrontational.

Young people have the power to challenge stereotypes. In Greater Dandenong, Melbourne a group of 12 young people formed The Change Makers project team to address racial stereotypes and their negative impacts on young people's wellbeing and sense of belonging. The project team created a video to encourage young people to reclaim their identities by choosing their own labels and challenging harmful racial stereotypes. Follow the **Change Makers** weblink in the Online Resources to view the video.



### Traditions

Traditions are practices and beliefs that are handed down from one generation to the next. Traditions are many and varied. Your family may have a traditional way of celebrating a particular event. For example, if your parents were born in Vietnam, but you generally self-identify as an Australian, you may celebrate the Vietnamese festival of Tet with your family but celebrate Australian holidays with your peers from school. In this case, you have an Australian national identity, but in the home environment your ethnic identity is also important.

**FIGURE 1.9** In Australia, we constantly interact with people from a range of cultural backgrounds.



Follow the **ReachOut: Understanding a different culture** weblink in the Online Resources for some tips on how to understand different cultures.

## First Nations Australians

### Totems

For First Nations Australians, identity is shaped by kinship and connections to Country. For many, a major aspect of their identity is their totem. This is a natural object, plant or animal that is inherited by members of a clan or family as their spiritual emblem. Some people have several totems.

Totems play many important roles within First Nations communities. For example, they can represent your role within the kinship system, as well as your responsibilities and obligations to others and to Country. People who share the same totem can feel a connection with each other, which is made stronger by the fact that they will share some of the same responsibilities within the community.

You can have a nation group totem and a family totem, which are given to you at birth. You can have a personal totem, which can be given to you by an Elder. You can also have a special plant or animal totem that may have been present at the time of your conception or birth. So not all totems are 'given'; some are merely yours when you come into the world as it is your birthright. A child is taught the importance of their totems as Elders share Dreaming stories and the ways that their totems fit into the wider kinship system.

### World view

Families are connected to the land through kinship, which involves specific roles and responsibilities. These are regulated by traditional law and observed through ceremonies, cultural practices and language. This creates a unique, First Nations way of seeing and being in the world.

**FIGURE 1.10** Totems are important in the identities of First Nations Australians.



## Land

'Country' includes the animals and plants, lands, sky and waters, which all must be cared for by their traditional owners.

## Language

A person's mother tongue is a way of expressing identity. Although languages are distinct, many of the language groups have similar words that may differ slightly in meaning because of how songlines connect nation groups, clans and mobs.

## Kinship

A complex social system that determines how people relate to each other, their roles and responsibilities to each other and to Country (their non-human kin).

## Law

Traditional law applies to relationships, ceremony, seasons of the year, plants and animals. There are punishments for when the law is not followed.

## Cultural practices

These include caring for Country, ceremony, song, corroboree (communal celebration) and initiation. The responsibility to uphold lore promotes community and identity.

Understanding the importance of the connection between these elements supports an understanding of how identity and belonging were affected in the Stolen Generations and the impact this had on the social and emotional health and wellbeing of First Nations Peoples.

## Kumanjaji

Many First Nations Australian groups share the belief that this life is only one part of a longer journey. When a person passes away, the spirit leaves the body and must be sent on the next part of its journey. Following their passing, a deceased person is referred to as Kumanjaji, meaning 'no name'. Anyone in the community sharing the same personal name also becomes referred to as Kumanjaji. This tradition not to depict a deceased person or their voice (i.e. their first names) is very old. This law has been adapted to include images as well. A smoking ceremony is also conducted when a person passes away. The smoking of the deceased person's belongings and residence helps to encourage the departure of the spirit.

## School

Schools that provide interesting and challenging learning opportunities help students succeed. Acknowledging students' personal growth and success helps them to feel good about themselves. For many adolescents, school is a place where they feel supported and **connected**. Identity is developed, in part, through relationships and feedback received from others. At school, young people take part in activities and programs that can help them discover their abilities and interests and further develop them.

## Gender

**Gender** beliefs influence our identities. They can shape our attitudes and behaviours. Sometimes, there is a lot of pressure on us to behave in certain ways or to fit a certain **stereotype**. For boys, this stereotype may mean being strong, tough and sporty; for girls, it may mean being more sensitive and nurturing. Young people who do not fit these stereotypes may be bullied and teased by their peers. This has a negative influence on their identity. These stereotypes are steadily being broken down.

**connected** having a feeling or sense of belonging to someone, a group of people or a place  
**gender** our beliefs about what it means to be a male or a female  
**stereotype** a set of characteristics typically used to categorise a group of people

**FIGURE 1.11** Both males and females can be influenced by stereotypes.



## Sexuality and gender diversity

During adolescence, young people become physically and sexually attracted to others. A person's sex, as determined by their biology, does not always correspond with their gender identity.

Gender identity refers to a person's view of themselves as male, female, both, genderqueer or non-binary. Cisgender is an umbrella term used to describe people whose gender identity corresponds with their birth sex, while transgender is a term used to describe people whose gender identity does not correspond with their birth sex.

When a young person is sensitive about their sexuality, they may feel unsure about themselves. Treating everyone with respect and accepting difference allows young people the freedom to explore and understand this aspect of their identity.

## Body image

**Body image** is our thoughts and feelings about the way we look and what other people think of our looks. Body image contributes to our beliefs about who we are. **Body confidence** is how a person feels about the way they look. It means we accept and are happy with how we look and what our bodies can do.

No-one feels great about their body all the time. It is important to remember that we all come in different shapes and sizes, and that we are worthwhile and valuable people regardless of how we look. Be kind. Respect yourself, even if you have things to work on.

It's also important to understand and challenge society's made up and constantly changing ideals. For example, keep in mind that the use of filters and media editing tools popular among social media users mean that the images created are often fake and unrealistic.

**FIGURE 1.12** Respecting and accepting differences helps everyone be themselves.



**body image** what we and other people think of our physical appearance; how we feel about our body

**body confidence** how a person feels about the way they look

**FIGURE 1.13** Having body confidence means you accept and are happy with how you look and what your body can do.



## Physical development

The rate at which we mature or grow can affect identity formation. For example, girls who develop breasts or start menstruation before their friends sometimes feel uncomfortable or embarrassed. Boys who mature early are often more confident with their peers than those who mature later.

Puberty is a period of greater variation between individuals compared to childhood. This can raise identity-related questions such as ‘Are the changes I’m going through normal?’, ‘Why are the others taller/stronger/more attractive than me?’ Physical changes during puberty also mean coming to terms with sexual identity.

## The media

We are influenced by the stereotypes of the different genders that we see on television, in movies and online. Some young people compare themselves to these unrealistic or non-representative images. This comparison can have a negative influence on their identity.

Social media is a great way to connect with others; however, its focus can be on rewarding appearance with ‘likes’. Instagram, Snapchat and Tik Tok all involve using ‘views’, ‘likes’ and comments to show approval. There is an important problem with basing your self-identity on how many ‘views’ or ‘likes’ you receive on a post: someone will always have more than you, and someone will always have more than them, and so on. Imagine if people start to think that the number of ‘likes’ they get on social media determines how valuable they are as a person. It’s important to remember that social media approval doesn’t define who you are as a person. There are many other things that make you special and valuable.

Some areas of the media are starting to celebrate people’s unique qualities through news, entertainment and sports brands aimed at empowering all people in our society. For example, SBS now has a dedicated television channel sharing First Nations’ perspectives — NITV (National Indigenous Television) — and fashion magazines are increasingly showing plus-size models. This allows a greater range of people to feel represented by the broader media, which positively affects their sense of belonging. Advertising companies are also beginning to show the diversity in our community realistically, such as by using actors and models with intellectual disabilities or who use mobility aids.

## Success and failure

For the majority of people, if we are successful at the things we do, we will feel good about ourselves. Confidence means believing that we can do well in the future too, and it is connected to how much we like and trust ourselves. Confidence helps you make safe, informed decisions and avoid unsafe people and situations. Sometimes we may avoid trying new things because we are worried we won’t be good at them and that might make us feel embarrassed. But it is important to keep trying and find things we can be successful at, because it helps us feel good about who we are.

**FIGURE 1.14** Maturing early or late in relation to one’s peers affects one’s sense of self-esteem and identity.



**FIGURE 1.15** The media can influence our thoughts and feelings about our identities.



## 1.3 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Gender

- a. In small groups, collect pictures of people of different genders from websites and the sports sections of newspapers.
  - i. List the characteristics of the genders as shown in the pictures.
  - ii. Discuss the messages being sent about what people of these genders should be like.
- b. As a whole class, discuss the following:
  - i. Do you think the images of the different genders shown in the media are accurate representations?
  - ii. Are these images healthy?
  - iii. Do you think these images and messages would have a positive or negative effect on young people's identities? Explain why.
  - iv. What can young people do to challenge negative images and messages?
  - v. What kinds of images do you think should be shown to encourage young people to develop positive identities?
- c. Complete the **Gender stereotypes** worksheet in the Online Resources to learn more.



doc-15651

### 2 Cultural similarities

As a class, brainstorm the different cultural groups to which students belong. (Think about your family, religion, peer groups, as well as interest groups, such as a football team, dance troupe or drama club.) Complete the following:

- a. List the characteristics that help identify each group.
- b. Examine how cultural groups influence the people who belong to them. Develop a list of the influences you have learned about.

### 3 Family traditions

- a. List as many of your family traditions as you can think of.
- b. Explain how the traditions identified in part a influence your identity now and into the future.

### 4 Cultural identities

- a. Use the **First Nations Australian Cultures: Identity, racism and connection** weblink in the Online Resources to view the video about Grace.
- b.
  - i. Consider this statement: 'Many people believe the heritage of the First Nations Peoples of Australia and a deep knowledge of First Nations' cultural identity are important to all Australians.'
  - ii. Write a 300-word personal reflection on this statement.



weblink

### 5 Media and body image

- a. There is a move in the fashion industry and media towards using models who have a healthy body image. Why do you think this has happened? Do you think this is a positive thing?
- b. Use the **Advertising and body image** weblink in the Online Resources to investigate one company's campaign to challenge beauty stereotypes in advertising.
- c. To further explore this topic, view the **Body image** video eLesson in the Online Resources.



weblink



eles-0721

### 6 Media and diversity

- a. A study on media diversity in Australia, *Who Gets To Tell Australian Stories?*, revealed that more than 75 per cent of media presenters, commentators and reporters have an Anglo-Celtic background, while only six per cent have either a First Nations or non-European background.
- b. Take action by creating a letter, email or tweet that addresses this issue. Explain how a lack of diverse representation in the media can negatively affect identity formation among young people in our multicultural society. Identify why this impact can continue over multiple generations.

## 1.3 Exercise

### 1.3 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

##### ■ LEVEL 2

6, 7, 9

##### ■ LEVEL 3

8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. Factors that influence identity are independent of each other. True or false?
2. A person's identity can embrace more than one culture. True or false?
3. **MC** Stereotypes are:
  - A. useful for deciding what boys and girls should do.
  - B. always accurate.
  - C. a set of characteristics that are not always accurate but that are used to group people.
  - D. useful for working out who we want as friends.
4. **MC** What is meant by the term 'body image'?
  - A. What we think of our physical appearance
  - B. What other people think of our physical appearance
  - C. How we feel about our body
  - D. All of the above
5. **MC** Which factor has an impact on our identity?
  - A. Media
  - B. Family
  - C. Culture
  - D. All of the above

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** who and what influences your identity. **Explain**, using an example, how one of these factors has influenced your attitudes, beliefs and behaviours.
7. **Describe** how the identity of a First Nations Australian can be shaped.
8. **Explain**, using an example, how the factors that influence identity are related to one another.
9. **Identify** the types of images the media uses to stereotype the different genders. **Explain** why these stereotypes can be unhealthy for young people.
10. **Create** a slogan that promotes a healthy body image for young Australians.

# LESSON

## 1.4 Valuing and appreciating diversity

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Identify how respecting diversity and challenging discrimination supports individual and community health and wellbeing.
- Describe the need for valuing diversity when developing respectful relationships.

### ENGAGE



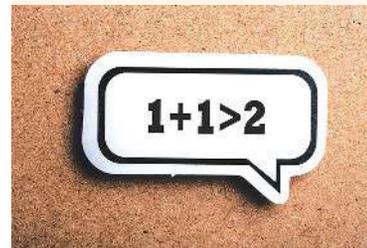
Watch the **A refugee's story** video eLesson in the Online Resources.

eles-0722

Consider this saying: *The whole is greater than the sum of its parts.*

What does this saying mean? How does it relate to diversity and inclusion?

**FIGURE 1.16** When is the whole greater than its parts?



### 1.4.1 Enriching society through diversity

Each one of us is unique. This means that, although there will be similarities between people and groups of people, no one person or group is identical to another. There are differences in the things people do and like, their religion, the food they eat, the clothes they wear and the people to whom they are attracted. The diversity that exists in every society is something that should be valued and celebrated. It gives us the chance to experience different lifestyles and other ways of thinking.

We can help all people feel valued by appreciating who they are and understanding that their differences enrich our society. Through celebrating our differences, we recognise we are better together.

The benefits of living in a diverse society are:

- It promotes tolerance and understanding between different cultures.
- It enriches our community through shared experiences with different people.
- It promotes inclusion and acceptance.
- Through contact and communication with people who are not like us, we can learn how to relate to difference in a positive way rather than seeing difference as a barrier or threat.
- You improve your own social development and increase your understanding of the world.
- You think more critically about your values and beliefs, which helps you to better understand yourself.

### 1.4.2 Challenging inequities and discrimination

While diversity offers many benefits for our society, it is not always valued. Not everyone is treated with respect and fairness or has the same opportunities. This leads to **discrimination** and **inequities** in the way people are treated and in their levels of health and wellbeing.

Inequities occur when some people in society receive better treatment than others, not because they are hardworking or in need, but because they look or act in a particular way. For example, people in Australia on a higher income may have greater access to healthcare than people on lower incomes because they can afford to pay for extra services above what is covered by Medicare. Rural Australians may face more barriers in obtaining medical care because geographically they can be further away from larger hospitals and doctors.

**discrimination** treating a person or group of people less favourably because they are different  
**inequities** injustice; unfairness

Inequities can be based on factors such as a person's:

- income
- religion
- sexuality
- gender
- disability status
- ethnicity
- sex
- age
- culture.

Sometimes, several forms of discrimination combine to leave a particular individual or group at an even greater disadvantage. For example, discrimination against women frequently means that they are paid less than men for the same work. Discrimination against an ethnic minority often results in members of that group being paid less than others for the same work. Where women from a minority group are paid less, they are suffering from discrimination on the grounds of both their sex and their ethnicity.

Challenging inequities shows that we value and support everyone's right to be treated fairly and with respect. You can challenge inequities by:

- *educating yourself*. Respect and value the differences between people and understand when language or actions may discriminate against them.
- *advocating for others*. Take action to support those who are treated unfairly. For example, let bullies know that their behaviour is not acceptable and that you do not agree with it.
- *role modelling inclusive language and behaviours*. This means ensuring that you treat others fairly and practise using respectful language. Language is very powerful and can be a great tool for changing stereotypes and attitudes.

**FIGURE 1.17** Discrimination is treating a person or group of people less favourably because they are different.



### DID YOU KNOW?

Challenging inequities and discrimination is about human rights. A section of the Human Rights Commission website is dedicated to 'How young people can get involved in human rights'.

### DISCUSS



Access the **No excuse** weblink in the Online Resources. What inequities have the young people experienced? How might this affect their wellbeing or identity?

A recent Victorian Population Health survey revealed that over 91 per cent of Victorians agreed that multiculturalism (as a general concept) made life in their area better.

People discriminate against others for a range of reasons. This includes fear of anything different, trying to fit into a social group, prejudice, power or assumptions based on stereotypes. Valuing and appreciating diversity starts with us being curious and open-minded about difference. It is also important that we challenge negative stereotypes and not be too quick to judge people. Learning the value of diversity takes a lifetime. Sometimes it can be difficult, but it is also exciting and rewarding. We all have a choice about how we treat people. We can work to treat all people with respect and to truly value and appreciate differences. Use the **Diversity activities** weblink in the Online Resources to find activities on this topic.



### 1.4.3 Embracing diversity for health and wellbeing

There is growing evidence that shows discrimination can have a devastating impact on community health and wellbeing. VicHealth research suggests that ‘discrimination is thought to affect health because it results in people developing a negative view of themselves and this in turn affects their self-esteem. It may bring about fear, stress and anxiety, which can have a negative effect on both the mind and the body’.



Valuing diversity means we understand the benefits of differences and similarities in people and that we work to build respectful relationships among diverse people. When we value diversity we make sure that we provide equal treatment. This includes access to resources and decisions for all community members regardless of race, ethnicity, sexual orientation and physical ability. If we are valued and appreciated by others, then we also feel safer and supported within our communities. A community that embraces diversity and recognises the value of all its members is more likely to thrive. In this way, challenging discrimination can have a positive impact on the health and wellbeing of both individuals and communities. People’s health and wellbeing are improved when they feel valued and appreciated.

**FIGURE 1.18** What changes would we see in Australia if our communities embraced diversity?



### 1.4.4 ‘Mind-body-spirit’ connections to health and wellbeing

Health and wellbeing includes more than just the physical body — you also need to care for your mind and spirit. Looking after your mind, body and spirit is about creating balance in your life by nurturing your whole self. This includes meeting your spiritual, mental, emotional and physical needs. Different cultures see the link between mind, body and spirit in different ways, as seen in practices such as yoga, meditation, prayer and tai chi.

The traditional Chinese approach to health and illness focuses on the balance between body, mind and spirit, commonly expressed as *yin* and *yang*. By embracing diversity, Australia has benefited from the introduction of traditional and contemporary movement activities from the Asia region.

First Nations Australian mind-body-spirit connections relate to a connection to Country, people and ways of being. Traditional First Nations Australian medicine is holistic and recognises the social, physical and spiritual dimensions of health. It considers the personal, family and community issues surrounding an illness, looks at how the whole person became sick and seeks out the reasons underlying the sickness.

### 1.4.5 Kinship

Kinship systems — networks of social relationships — are an important part of people’s lives in most societies. Kinship systems define how a person fits into the community.

Australian society was multicultural long before the arrival of European colonisers. In First Nations Australian cultures, richly complex kinship systems puts everybody in a specific kinship relationship. A person’s position in the kinship system gives them specific roles and responsibilities in their community and has a significant influence on the development of their identity. Kinship systems are regulated by traditional law. They tell people who they can and can’t marry, who their relatives are, what their skin names and totems are (for some groups) and where their traditional lands are located. They are also tied up with important customs, traditions, language, Dreaming stories and songs connected to traditional lands.

The strong sense of identity fostered through kinship relationships can help support First Nations Australian's health and wellbeing. The positive sense of identity encouraged by strong connections to family, extended family and community helps people feel supported and included.

## 1.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Identifying and challenging inequities

In pairs, undertake the following tasks:

- a. Identify and discuss the inequities that exist between people and groups of people in your school or local community. For example, your school might have better sporting facilities than another local school, which might give you an advantage in sporting matches.
- b. Suggest why such inequities have developed.
- c. How might these inequities influence a person's identity?
- d. What could you do to advocate for the rights of people who are not being treated fairly or who are being discriminated against within your school and wider community?

### 2 Winter Sleepout

In groups of three or four, use the **Sleep at the 'G** weblink in the Online Resources to investigate Melbourne City Mission's annual appeal. Answer the following questions:

- a. Outline the cause that is supported by the Sleep at the 'G appeal.
- b. Describe how the campaign works.
- c. Analyse how the campaign encourages you to think about inequities in society.
- d. Create a flyer for a similar event that could be hosted at your school using what you have learned so far.

### 3 What you say matters

Use the **What you say matters** weblink in the Online Resources to view a performance by Brothablack featuring the students of James Meehan High School, directed by Brendan Fletcher and produced by MediaRock and ThinkTank. In groups of three or four, develop your own rap or music video that encourages your peers to embrace diversity to allow all students at your school to learn and flourish in a safe and supportive environment. Your rap or music video could aim to challenge one of the following:

- a. racism
- b. sexism
- c. disability discrimination
- d. homophobia.

*Note:* You will need to research the following points in relation to your chosen topic:

- What is racism, sexism, ableism, discrimination or homophobia?
- Why are some people racist, sexist, ableist, discriminatory or homophobic?
- Where does it happen?
- Why is it a problem?
- What can you do to challenge it?

### 4 Kinship tree

- a. Develop the personal kinship tree of your family to as far back as your great-grandparents.
- b. Include any traditions, customs and values that have been passed down and that have been important to the development of your identity.
- c. Under the tree, write about how your family has contributed to your health, safety and wellbeing.



weblink



weblink



weblink

## 1.4 Exercise

### 1.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

##### LEVEL 2

7, 9

##### LEVEL 3

6, 8

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. Diversity should be valued. True or false?
2. **MC** Inequities occur when some people in society receive better treatment than others because
  - A. they are hardworking.
  - B. they look or act a particular way.
  - C. they are in need.
  - D. All of the above
3. **MC** You can challenge discrimination by:
  - A. educating yourself.
  - B. role-modelling inclusive behaviour.
  - C. advocating for others.
  - D. All of the above
4. **MC** What effect can discrimination have on people's identity?
  - A. They may feel isolated or alone.
  - B. They may avoid going to school.
  - C. They may become depressed.
  - D. All of the above
5. **MC** Identify two ways you can advocate for others when they are discriminated against.
  - A. Treat people differently because of their sex or race.
  - B. Speak out on others' behalf.
  - C. Role model inclusive language and behaviours.
  - D. Don't get involved.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Explain** why some people discriminate against others.
7. Inequities relate to unfairness or injustice. **Identify** inequities that you think occur in Australia.
8. How could you become a role model for people looking to challenge inequities? **Identify** some specific examples (e.g. you could raise money for a local charity to help provide food for families in need).
9. **Explain** what is meant by 'valuing diversity'. Why is it important for wellbeing?

# LESSON

## 1.5 Developing empathy

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Examine the role of empathy and sensitivity in respectful relationships.

### ENGAGE

- *A Mile in My Shoes* is a mobile exhibition in the United States that invites visitors to walk a mile in someone else's shoes — literally. Housed in a giant shoebox, this roaming exhibit has a diverse collection of shoes and matching audio stories that explore our shared humanity. Visitors wear the shoes of a stranger while listening to their story. The stories cover a range of experiences designed to foster empathy.
- If you created a similar exhibit to tour Australia, whose stories would you include? Who would benefit from experiencing those stories?

**FIGURE 1.19** Walk a mile in someone else's shoes



### 1.5.1 Standing in someone else's shoes

If you have ever imagined yourself in someone else's shoes, then you have felt empathy. The ability to feel **empathy** is an excellent characteristic to have and will help you to trust and develop meaningful relationships with others. The next topic will explore this in more detail.

**empathy** the ability to identify, appreciate and understand another's situation or feelings

Empathy is how we understand what others are experiencing as if we were feeling it ourselves. It doesn't necessarily require us to have gone through the same situation. Empathy is linked to emotional intelligence, which will also be explored in the next topic.

There are many benefits to being able to experience empathy. For example:

- Empathy allows you to build social connections with others.
- By understanding what people are thinking and feeling, you are able to respond appropriately in social situations. This adds to your feeling of belonging.
- Empathising with others helps you learn about and manage your own emotions. This makes you more resilient and protects you from becoming overwhelmed, even in times of great stress.
- Showing empathy promotes support for others and by others in return.

To understand the value of inclusivity and empathy, reflect on these questions:

- When was the last time you had to think about your ethnicity, gender, religion, ability level or sexual orientation?
- When watching movies or TV shows, how often do you see characters that reflect who you are?
- How often are you in social settings where most people have a different identity to you?

### 1.5.2 When empathy is difficult

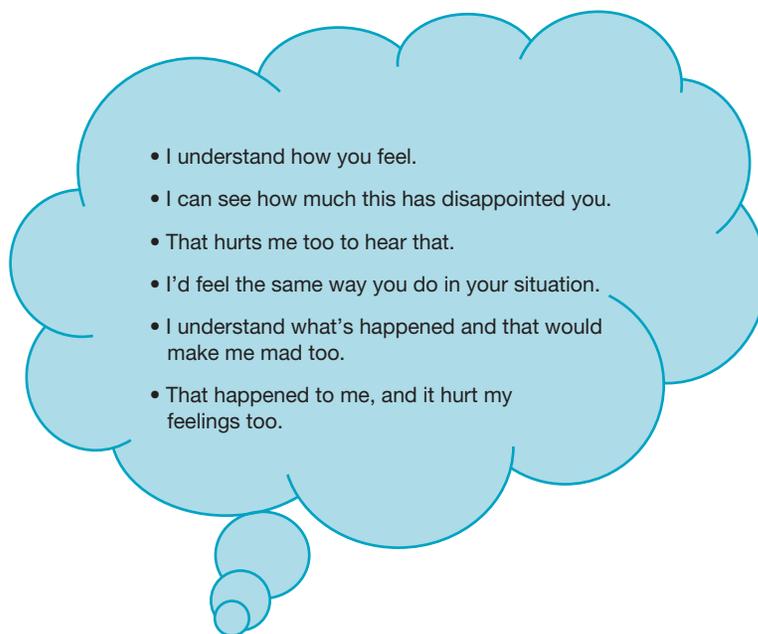
Sometimes we focus too much on our own problems and cannot see or appreciate other people's feelings and situations. Trying to understand the problems other people experience will help you to know, respect and connect with those people and improves your relationships. Sometimes it is harder for us to feel empathy for people we are close to or know well because our own feelings and judgements get in the way.

The following strategies can help you better understand other people's situations and what they may be feeling.

- *Seek information.* Ask your parents, friends or teachers what they think it might be like to suffer unfair treatment or whether they have their own experiences with it.
- *Use active listening skills.* Allow the person time to tell you about their feelings and the situation. Clarify things you don't understand by asking questions, but don't interrupt or try to solve their problem. Remember to focus on their feelings and experiences; refrain from giving advice.
- *Imagine what it might be like.* Put yourself in another person's situation and think about what it would feel like to be treated unfairly.

Empathy means listening to someone else's story about what it's like in their shoes and believing their experience and emotions even when it doesn't match our own experience.

**FIGURE 1.20** Use these phrases to show empathy.



### DID YOU KNOW?

Articles 1 and 29 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights state that all human beings are born free and equal, and we have a duty to other people and should protect their rights and freedoms.

## 1.5.3 Learning to be inclusive

Being **inclusive** is about valuing difference and respecting others regardless of their gender, sexuality, ability or culture. It encourages us to try to understand other people's views and situations, which makes it easier to feel empathy.

**inclusive** language and behaviour that doesn't isolate others or make them feel inferior

The use of discriminatory language can make some groups of people feel less important or acknowledged than others. For example, the word 'man' has historically been used generally in terms such as 'mankind', 'policeman', 'fireman', 'salesman' and 'businessman'. This has led people to associate males with these terms, excluding females. By using terms such as 'sales assistant' or 'police officer', all genders are included.

The behaviours you adopt in your treatment of others can have an enormous impact on their wellbeing. Everyone has a responsibility to respect the rights of others. This includes showing respect for privacy, not harming, harassing or threatening others, not putting others down and treating others fairly. You can have a positive influence on other people's identity when your behaviours show that you respect and value them and do not exclude them.

**FIGURE 1.21** Being inclusive means rejecting stereotypes.

**CHALLENGE** why the stereotype exists and has power.

If you can see and demonstrate that a stereotype is based on wrong assumptions or on fear about differences, you can reduce the power of the stereotype and the stigma attached.

**ACCEPT** differences in others.

People are unique products of their individual upbringing and background.

**REDEFINE** your thinking.

What do you think about people who are different from you? Think outside the box when it comes to diversity. Just because those around you believe something about a group or individual, does not make it right.

**REFLECT** on your own behaviours and treatment of others.

Do you place any stereotypes on others based on gender, culture, income or ability? Do you show respect for others, include them and treat them fairly? Do you show empathy towards others?

## DID YOU KNOW?

Almost one in five same-sex attracted young people report having been physically assaulted due to homophobia.

**Source:** Australian Human Rights Commission

## 1.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 What is empathy?

Read the following scenario and record your answers to the questions in your workbook.

*Sebastian's parents fought regularly. His father would come home from the pub drunk and demand his dinner and yell at his mother if it wasn't ready. A couple of times, he put his fist through the wall and smashed some ornaments. When this happened, Sebastian would try to stop his dad. One night, when things were really bad, Sebastian's dad threw him across the room.*

*It was really hard for Sebastian to get up each day, go to school, do his work and pretend nothing was wrong. His grades were falling and most of his teachers were getting concerned that something was wrong.*

*Sebastian's Science teacher was frustrated by these changes. She confronted Sebastian about his poor grades and said if he didn't start working harder, she would not allow him to represent the school in basketball, which was Sebastian's passion. Sebastian got upset and told the teacher to get off his case and that she was a useless teacher. He didn't really mean it — Sebastian actually thought she was a good teacher and generally they got on well. Both Sebastian and his Science teacher were upset about their confrontation.*

- a. What prevented the Science teacher from feeling empathy for Sebastian?
- b. How could this situation have been avoided?
- c. How was the relationship between Sebastian and his teacher affected by a lack of empathy?
- d. What needs to happen for people to develop empathy?
- e. Describe how this situation could have been different if:
  - i. the teacher had been more empathetic
  - ii. Sebastian had explained the problems he was having at home.

## 2 Building empathy

Divide into groups of three. Read the following scenarios and discuss each of the questions below.

*A new student, Tanya, enrolls in your class. She has poor eyesight and has to wear thick glasses. Her doctor has told her she must sit at the front of the class so she is closer to the board. Tanya hasn't made any friends in the class and sits by herself.*

*Scott is in Year 8. He is not very sporty and prefers to go to the library and play on the computer during lunchtime. Scott is hassled every day by a group of boys in Year 9, who call him names. One day, they trash his school bag and empty its contents in the toilet. Scott starts to cry and the boys laugh at him.*

*Timor and his family have spent the last two years in an immigration detention centre. Timor and his friends are transported to the local school each day to attend lessons. Timor doesn't mix with the other students, as he doesn't speak English well enough to hold a conversation.*

- a. Explain how the treatment of each person is unfair.
- b. List some of the feelings or emotions the person may be experiencing in each situation.
- c. What would it feel like for you if you were in each situation?
- d. Suggest how the treatment of each person could be changed. What effects might this have on each person's relationships with others?

## 3 Inclusion in the community

Investigate a local program that aims to increase inclusion within the community. This might be a program aimed at including people of all ages, genders or ethnicities.

- a. Explain the purpose/aim of the program, including the target group.
- b. Identify how the program overcomes two barriers to inclusion for the target group.
- c. Outline one positive health impact from the program for the individuals involved and one for the wider community.
- d. Create an advertisement (poster, ad, webpage) for the program that highlights its positive health outcomes.

## 4 Inclusiveness

Design a poster or fact sheet that promotes inclusiveness. Use the **Posterini** or **Canva** weblink in the Online Resources to design your poster online.



weblink

## 5 Teaching empathy

Create an innovative way to teach others how to be more empathetic; for example, create a comic strip, perform a skit or write a story. To do this, you will need to understand and research the following:

- What does it mean to be empathetic?
- Why is it important to develop empathy?
- What are the different ways you can show empathy?
- What is the impact of displaying empathy?

## 1.5 Exercise

### 1.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8

**LEVEL 2**

6, 7

**LEVEL 3**

9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** How can you show empathy?
  - A. By focusing on your own problems and no-one else's
  - B. By trying to understand others' problems
  - C. By not listening to what others have to say
  - D. By ignoring others' opinions and beliefs
- Being inclusive means using language or behaviour that doesn't isolate others or make them feel inferior. True or false?
- MC** Which of the following are examples of showing empathy?
  - A. Putting yourself in another person's shoes to understand what they are feeling
  - B. Trying to imagine how someone else might react in a situation
  - C. Building trust with another person by showing them that you feel what they feel
  - D. All of the above
- MC** Language and behaviour that doesn't isolate others or make them feel inferior is called:
  - A. inclusive.
  - B. empathetic.
  - C. understanding.
  - D. discriminatory.
- A benefit of empathy is that it allows you to build social connections with others. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

- Explain** why empathy is important in our community and for respectful relationships.
- Describe** a time in your life when the ability to feel empathy would have helped to avoid a conflict.
- Explain** what it means to be 'inclusive'.
- Consider** if you think adopting inclusive behaviour and language in your interactions with others will support their identity. Why or why not?
- Imagine you and your family were just told that you have 10 minutes to evacuate your home. You can take only what you can fit into a backpack. **Explain** what you would take with you and what would be hard to leave behind. How would you feel in this situation? What groups does this exercise promote empathy for?

# LESSON

## 1.6 Celebrating diversity

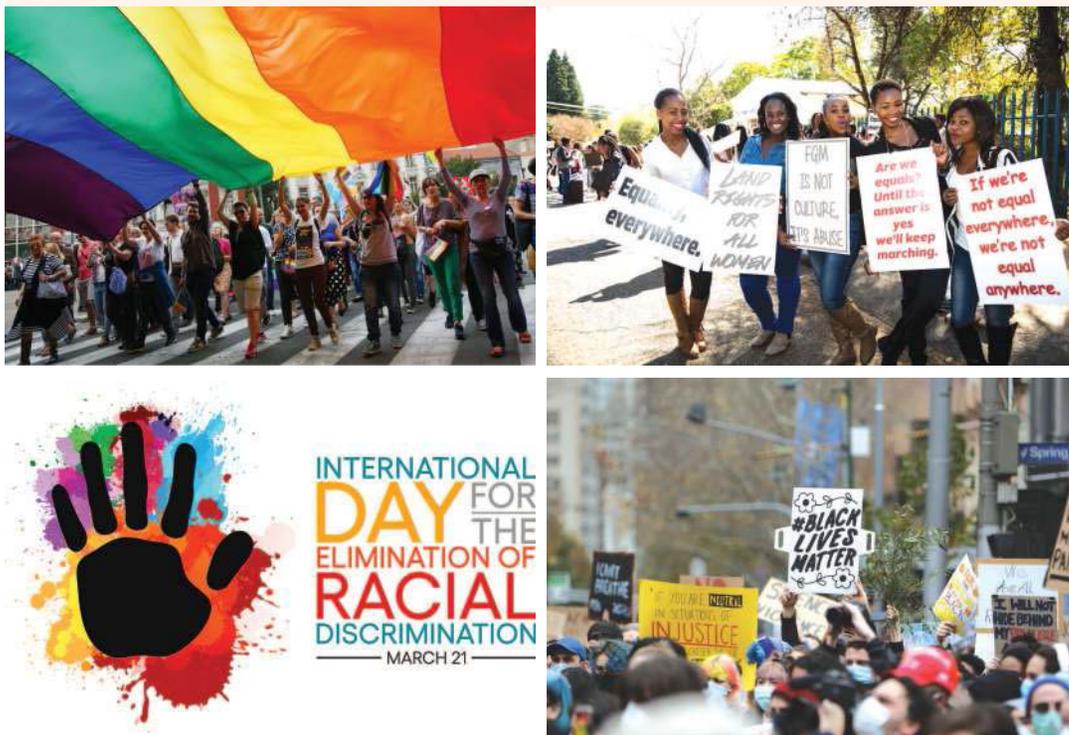
### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Identify strategies to challenge narrow views of gender, race, violence, sexuality, gender diversity and ability.
- Investigate events and strategies that aim to strengthen relationships between First Nations Australians and non-First Nations Australians.

### ENGAGE

Discuss how these campaigns could strengthen relationships in the community.

**FIGURE 1.22** Campaigns like these seek to strengthen diversity.



### 1.6.1 Learning from diversity

At the individual level, we differ from other people in many ways. The most obvious difference is in our physical appearance, but we each also offer different views, ideas, attitudes and beliefs. At the community level, our society is made up of many different groups and subcultures. However, even within these groups, there is diversity. Diversity provides variety and it gives us options from which to choose — it makes life interesting.

Discrimination is the result of learned prejudice and stereotyping. We can all learn to be more inclusive. By celebrating diversity, we contribute to the positive identities of those around us. Further, diversity brings many opportunities to learn about lives and experiences that differ from our own. The diverse nature of Australian society is something to be affirmed and celebrated.

## 1.6.2 Affirming diversity

Individuals can differ from one another in many ways, including in their ideas, beliefs, attitudes, values, backgrounds, experiences and behaviours. Diversity includes differences in:

- race
- ethnicity
- cultural background
- educational background
- socioeconomic status
- gender or sexual orientation
- age
- religion
- physical ability
- neurodiversity.

These differences are a great advantage to our society and should be affirmed. To affirm diversity means to talk about, acknowledge, be comfortable with and support these differences. However, some people may face a barrier to celebrating diversity — prejudice.

People are not born with **prejudices**; prejudices are learned behaviours. How we treat other people is learned from what we see and hear. If you are brought up to respect others, regardless of their differences, it will be easy for you to affirm **diversity**. You probably do it every day without thinking about it. For other people who have been taught to believe that people who are different are worth less than they are, it may be more difficult to overcome their prejudices.

Some young people may find it difficult to affirm diversity because their family or peer groups have certain beliefs or because they feel they will be judged if they do. For example, you may not agree with your peers when they exclude other students for being different, but you may find it difficult to tell them to stop.

The first step in developing positive relationships with people who are different from you is taking time to get to know them and not judging them because they belong to a particular group. Having an understanding of people's lives, their culture and beliefs can help you to appreciate the differences that exist between people and groups of people. Consider that you may be just as different to other people as they are to you. Resist the thinking that you are somehow the 'norm', and that the other person is the one who is different.

**prejudices** unfavourable opinions or feelings formed without reason, knowledge or thought

**diversity** the broad range of differences that exist between people and communities, including in terms of gender, ethnicity, culture, socio-economic status, age, religion, ability and sexuality

### DISCUSS

Why is it important from the perspective of diversity and inclusion to correctly pronounce someone's name?

Imagine what it would be like if everyone you met put you down or thought you were worth less than them because you were different from what they thought was 'normal'. When people belong to a particular culture, speak another language, have different coloured skin or a lower socio-economic status, differ in their ability or are same-sex attracted, they are more likely to be discriminated against.

Remember, diversity is a positive part of Australian society. It is important to be inclusive and to treat each other with respect so that we can all feel happy, supported and connected.

### 1.6.3 We're better together

It is everyone's role to make people feel worthwhile and included in our society and to affirm difference. At both the state and federal levels, the government has passed anti-discrimination legislation to ensure that people are treated fairly. Within many workplaces, there are policies that ensure that everyone has equal access to work opportunities and is treated fairly by employers and workmates.

**FIGURE 1.23** Diversity provides us with different perspectives in life.



At the individual level, the way you treat someone can have a significant influence on their identity and can make them feel either included or isolated. An important part of inclusion is overcoming any stereotypical ideas you may have about particular groups or cultures. Indeed, stereotypes are a major cause of discrimination.

If you do have some discriminatory attitudes or beliefs, think about why this is and whether these opinions are valid. You will probably find that you have formed these opinions based on other people's prejudices and on stereotypes. Treating each person as an individual, rather than as representative of a particular group, will help you overcome any prejudices you may have.

## HEALTH FACT

Stereotyping people because they belong to a certain group of people can lead to discrimination. When people are discriminated against and treated badly, their identities can be negatively affected. This can lead to depression, poor relationships and other health problems.

**FIGURE 1.24** Welcoming all people affirms diversity.



Diversity refers to the mix of people in a community or the differences between people in how they identify in relation to their age, cultural background, disability status, gender, religion, sexual orientation, gender identity and socio-economic background.

Affirming diversity or inclusion refers to getting a diverse group of people to work together for wellbeing.

Inclusion is achieved when a diversity of people feel:

- respected for who they are and able to be themselves
- connected to others and that they belong
- their perspectives and talents are valued
- they have equal access to opportunities and resources.

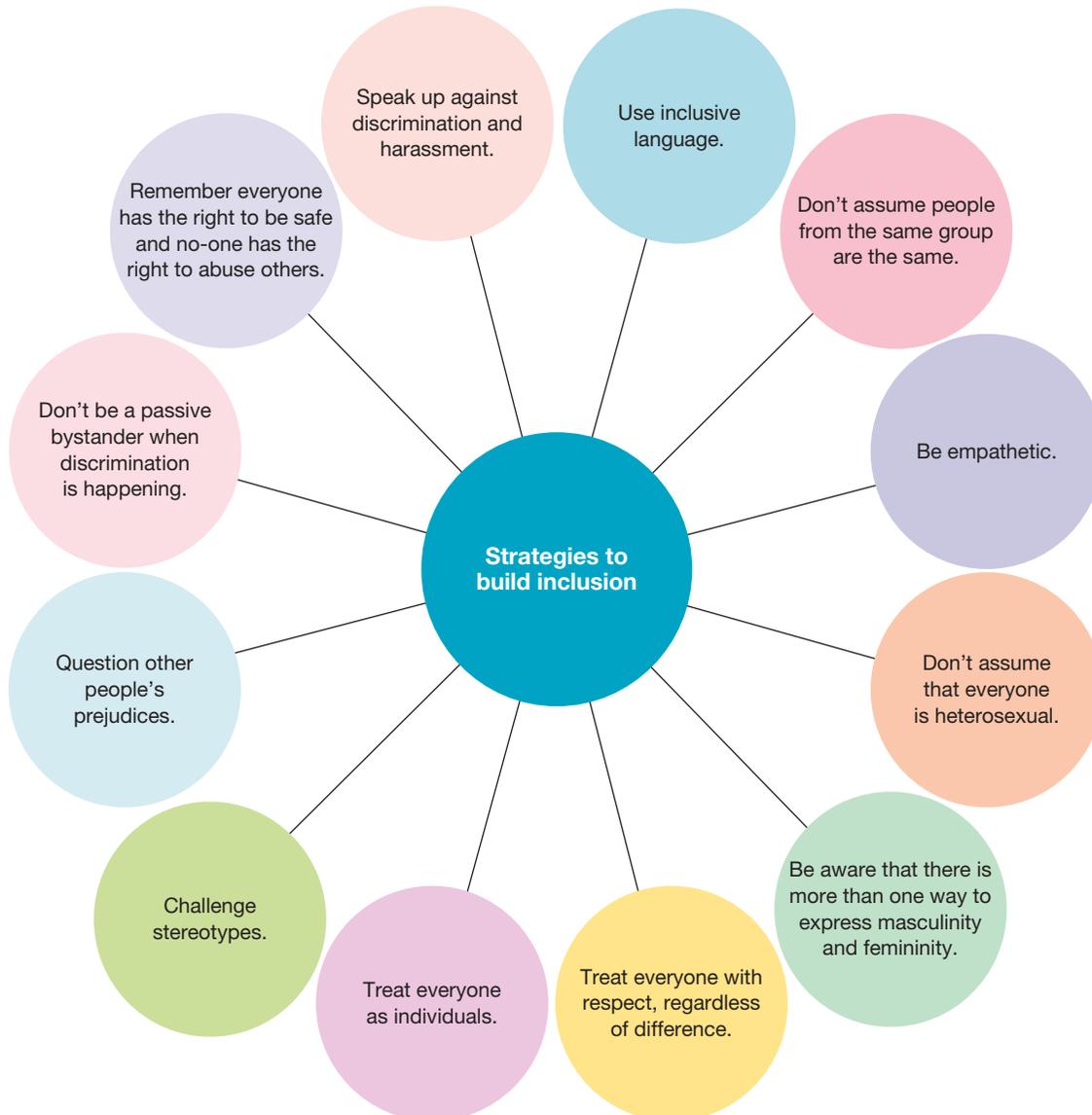
Using inclusive language is another way to affirm diversity. Using non-sexist language — for example, ‘police officer’ rather than ‘policeman’ — affirms that people of any gender can hold this role. Likewise, using the word ‘partner’ affirms all types of romantic and sexual relationships.

Being inclusive means not making assumptions about people. For example, young people often discuss their attractions and relationships with their peers and, in most cases, assume that everyone is **heterosexual**. For a young person who is **LGBTIQ+** or unsure of their sexuality, this assumption can make them feel that who they are is not important or that they are excluded from the group.

**heterosexual** emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the opposite sex

**LGBTIQ+** a term that stands for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Intersex, Queer, Asexual. The plus sign represents all the other identities that are not explicitly mentioned.

**FIGURE 1.25** Which of these strategies do you use to ensure others feel included?



### Promoting inclusion through sport

Sport is a powerful way to bring groups together. Reconciliation in Australia is about strengthening relationships between First Nations Australians and non-First Nations Australians for the benefit of all.

Football Australia (FA), the AFL and Cricket Australia are among the national sports governing bodies that have developed and implemented reconciliation action plans. These plans are endorsed by Reconciliation Australia and aim to build and strengthen relationships with First Nations communities. Each plan also seeks to empower and educate those in the sport about the issues that continue to face First Nations Australians in the pursuit of reconciliation. The Indigenous rounds in AFL help strengthen relationships and support reconciliation.

**FIGURE 1.26** Sport can be a powerful tool for reconciliation.



## DID YOU KNOW?

In 2020, Nike ran a campaign called 'Just Don't Do It' in a plea to people to not overlook acts of racism.

## Harmony Week

The Department of Home Affairs leads national celebrations for Harmony Week, which aims to recognise and promote diversity and inclusion. Activities take place during the week (Monday to Sunday) that includes 21 March, which is the United Nations International Day for the Elimination of Racial Discrimination. Harmony Week is about inclusiveness, respect and belonging for all Australians, regardless of cultural or language background.

 Orange is the colour chosen to represent Harmony Week. Traditionally, orange signifies social communication and meaningful conversations. It also relates to freedom of ideas and the encouragement of mutual respect, diversity and inclusivity.

**FIGURE 1.27** Harmony Week aims to increase respect for diversity.



## 1.6 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Inclusive actions and behaviours

- As a class, brainstorm a list of words that people associate with each of the following groups:
  - First Nations Australians
  - Same-sex attracted people
  - Asian people
  - Muslim people
  - People with a disability.
- Divide your brainstormed list into positive and negative words. Discuss.
- As a class, discuss why stereotypes and the negative use of language are barriers to diversity.
- Identify strategies that individuals and groups could use to affirm difference and diversity.

### 2 Affirming diversity

- Complete the **Celebrating diversity** worksheet in the Online Resources.
- Access the **Do one thing for diversity and inclusion** weblink in the Online Resources to watch a short animation about diversity. Make your own video or slideshow that shows the diversity represented in your school. Be sure to include key messages about embracing, appreciating and valuing diversity.

### 3 Take action to challenge prejudice and stereotypes

Research a local, national or global organisation that aims to embrace and celebrate diversity, and then create a report by completing the following:

- Identify the name of the organisation.
- Outline the guiding aims and objectives of the organisation.
- Explain how it embraces diversity.
- Identify the organisation's achievements to date.
- List and describe some ways you can support the organisation's aims and objectives within your own community.

Follow the weblinks in the Online Resources for examples of organisations you could research.

 doc-15652

 weblink

 weblink



## 4 Reconciliation

Reconciliation Australia lists some goals that will create a culture of reconciliation for Australia.

- Positive two-way relationships built on trust and respect exist between First Nations and non-First Nations Australians throughout society.
- First Nations Australians participate equally and equitably in all areas of life (i.e. we have closed the gaps in life outcomes) and the distinctive individual and collective rights and cultures of First Nations Australians are universally recognised and respected. First Nations Australians are self-determining.
- Our political, business and community institutions actively support all dimensions of reconciliation.
- First Nations histories, cultures and rights are a valued and recognised part of a shared national identity and, as a result, there is national unity.

With a partner, choose one of these actions and design an event or media item to support it.

## 5 Affirming diversity

Run a photo competition in your school to promote diversity.

## 6 Diversity advocate

Investigate the work that Dylan Alcott does for diversity through his Dylan Alcott Foundation or the Ability Fest.



## 1.6 Exercise

### 1.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

#### LEVEL 2

7, 8

#### LEVEL 3

9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

## Check your understanding

- Stereotyping can lead to discrimination. True or false?
- MC** What is meant by the statement 'prejudices are learned behaviours'?
  - Prejudices don't exist.
  - People are born with prejudices.
  - People are not born with prejudices; prejudices are something people learn from what they see and hear.
  - All of the above
- MC** The government helps people to be treated fairly through:
  - the right to vote.
  - education laws.
  - anti-discrimination laws.
  - TV ads.
- MC** Which of the following can have a negative effect on the health of communities and individuals?
  - Discrimination
  - Celebrating diversity
  - Being curious and open-minded about differences
  - Learning about other cultures
- Sport in Australia plays a role in promoting inclusive behaviour. True or false?

## Apply your understanding

- Outline** why it is important to celebrate diversity.
- Explain** how stereotyping can lead to discrimination.
- Identify** a group of people who have been or are currently discriminated against. **Explain** the reasons behind the discrimination.
- Evaluate** how accepting you are of people who are different from you. **Identify** how you can improve.
- In some communities, Harmony Week includes a Harmony Walk. **Propose** how this affirms diversity and encourages empathy.

# LESSON

## 1.7 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 1.7.1 What have I learned?

- Diversity is the richness and uniqueness of human life. It helps make life interesting and rewarding.
- Everyone is unique, with their own set of characteristics.
- A positive identity is important to our wellbeing and health.
- Many factors affect our identity, such as the media and our peers, family, relationships, gender, cultures, traditions and sexuality.
- For First Nations Australians, their identity is defined by their kinship and connections to Country.
- Valuing and appreciating diversity starts with being curious and open-minded about differences.
- There are benefits for everyone of living in a diverse society.
- Discrimination has a negative impact on the health of communities and individuals.
- Being connected and having a sense of belonging to a place or people supports good physical and mental health.
- Wellbeing involves the mind, body and spirit, and different cultures value the link between these aspects of wellbeing in different ways.
- The strong sense of identity created through kinship relationships and extended family can help support health and wellbeing.
- Accepting people for who they are and appreciating the differences between people and cultures can help everyone feel valued.
- When you start to find yourself judging others, try to feel empathy for them. This will help you to be more accepting of others' differences.
- Learning to be inclusive will help others feel a sense of belonging and equality. This is one strategy for valuing the diversity that exists in our society.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- Why is valuing diversity important for developing a positive identity?
- How can valuing diversity support you through your adolescence?
- How can communities value diversity and promote inclusion?

Evaluate your initial responses to the essential questions now that you have studied the topic.



Resources



Interactivity Crossword (int-8913)

## 1.7.2 Key terms

**adolescence** the time during which we mature from a child to an adult

**beliefs** attitude that something is true or accepted

**body confidence** how a person feels about the way they look

**body image** what we and other people think of our physical appearance; how we feel about our body

**connected** having a feeling or sense of belonging to someone, a group of people or a place

**culture** the ethos, values, beliefs and/or philosophies of a group of people

**discrimination** treating a person or group of people less favourably because they are different

**diverse** varied or different

**diversity** the broad range of differences that exist between people and communities, including in terms of gender, ethnicity, culture, socio-economic status, age, religion, ability and sexuality

**emotional** refers to our feelings

**empathy** the ability to identify, appreciate and understand another's situation or feelings

**gender** our beliefs about what it means to be a male or a female

**genes** the biological units through which we inherit traits from our biological parents

**heterosexual** emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the opposite sex

**identity** sense of self in terms of characteristics and beliefs

**inclusive** language and behaviour that doesn't isolate others or make them feel inferior

**inequities** injustice; unfairness

**LGBTIQA+** a term that stands for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Intersex, Queer, Asexual. The plus sign represents all the other identities that are not explicitly mentioned.

**peer** someone who is of a similar age or shares similar interests

**physical** refers to our body; in particular, its movements, systems (such as the muscular system) and structures (such as our bones and joints)

**prejudices** unfavourable opinions or feelings formed without reason, knowledge or thought

**social** refers to our interactions with other people

**stereotype** a set of characteristics typically used to categorise a group of people

**unique** one of a kind

**values** beliefs about what is important; guide our attitudes and behaviour

## 1.7 Exercise

### 1.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

#### LEVEL 2

11, 12, 17, 19

#### LEVEL 3

13, 14, 15, 16, 18,  
20

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. A positive identity is not important to our physical health.	
2. The influences on your identity stay the same throughout your life.	
3. Our identity is affected by many factors, including family, peers and the media.	
4. There are many cultures and traditions in Australia that influence people's identities.	

5. Only professionals can provide help when discrimination occurs.	
6. Discrimination can have a negative impact on the health of communities and individuals.	
7. The sense of identity created through kinship relationships and extended family can support the health and wellbeing of First Nations Australians.	
8. Being inclusive is about including everyone with similar views and ideas.	
9. Empathy is putting yourself in someone else's shoes.	
10. People are born with prejudices and they cannot be changed.	

### Apply your understanding

11. **Explain** the benefit to wellbeing of having a positive identity.
12. **Outline** some actions you can take to develop a positive identity.
13. **Explain** why adolescence is a complex time for identity development.
14. **Describe** why culture is a major influence on identity development.
15. **Analyse** why diversity should be valued.
16. **Propose** how you can challenge discrimination.
17. **Describe** how you can show empathy.
18. **Explain** why showing empathy is important.
19. Valuing the difference between people is important for the health and wellbeing of both individuals and Australian society. **Outline** some strategies to build inclusion.
20. **Explain** why celebrating diversity can support others' identities.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign unique tests and exams



Access quarantined tests and assessments



Track your students' results



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# 2 Developing respectful relationships

## LESSON SEQUENCE

2.1 Overview .....	41
2.2 Relationships and emotions .....	42
2.3 Communicating our emotions in relationships .....	50
2.4 Respectful relationships .....	57
2.5 Equality in relationships .....	66
2.6 Consent and being empowered .....	76
2.7 Review .....	88

**FIGURE 2.1** Studies show that positive connections increase our chances of a longer life by 50 per cent. Can you think of some reasons for this?



# LESSON

## 2.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 2.1.1 Developing respectful relationships

Humans are social beings. Feeling a sense of connectedness is essential to our wellbeing. We connect through relationships, which are dynamic and complex. These relationships can be developed in a range of ways, such as online, face to face and/or by phone. Our relationships are influenced by emotions. Emotions focus our attention; they influence the way we see people and experiences, and they determine the positive and negative memories that we attach to a person, experience or relationship.

Our emotions are also affected by our relationships. All the relationships that you develop in your lifetime will have a significant influence on your wellbeing and help to shape your sense of self and identity. It is important to recognise that both positive respectful and negative unequal relationships have an impact on your emotions and your wellbeing and happiness. The key elements for developing and maintaining respectful relationships are effective communication, mutual respect, empathy and valuing diversity.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- What factors affect our emotions and how can we manage our emotions?
- What role do respect, consent and empathy have in respectful relationships?
- How do gender stereotypes influence our relationships?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. Why are relationships important to wellbeing?
2. Which factors influence our emotions and how can we manage emotions to enhance relationships?
3. What makes a respectful relationship?
4. What is the impact of gender stereotypes on power and equality within relationships?
5. How can you challenge stereotypes and stay safe in relationships?



Resources



**Video eLesson** Developing respectful relationships (eles-6019)

# LESSON

## 2.2 Relationships and emotions

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Understand the benefits of relationships for health and wellbeing.
- Connect personal, social and cultural factors with the way individuals respond emotionally.
- Describe how emotions affect thinking and behaviour.

### ENGAGE

Belonging or 'fitting in'?

You can 'belong' to a group (when you are accepted into a group for who you are) or you can 'fit in' to a group (when you change things about yourself to be accepted).

Have you found yourself 'fitting in' to any groups?

### 2.2.1 Why we interact with others

Humans have an emotional need to belong and to be accepted by members of a group. We feel a sense of **belonging** when we have a network of support around us. Connecting with others and building strong relationship networks enhance our wellbeing and give purpose and meaning to our lives. The more closely connected we are to others, the happier we feel, the more satisfaction we have in our lives and the greater the chance of a long and healthy life.

**belonging** a sense of knowing where you fit and having meaningful relationships

### Emotional needs

**TABLE 2.1** Our relationships are driven by a range of emotional needs.

Emotional need	Description
Safety, security and acceptance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Feeling protected, cared for and guided by others</li><li>• Feeling that you are liked and worthwhile as a person</li></ul>
Freedom to say what we need and how we feel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Communicating <b>emotions</b> and <b>needs</b> in ways that are helpful to ourselves and others</li></ul>
Self-direction, assertiveness and identity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Accepting how we are unique and different to others</li><li>• How we feel we are, or would like to be, similar to others</li></ul>
Joy, spontaneity and creativity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Being curious</li><li>• Developing confidence and resilience to face challenges</li></ul>
Self-control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Having self-discipline</li><li>• Having the ability to manage responsibilities and difficult feelings</li></ul>

Relationships satisfy our emotional needs and promote **emotional wellbeing** by providing an opportunity to belong to a group that accepts you for who you are. This allows you to feel secure and good about who you are and what you stand for. Having a confident sense of self can increase feelings of self-worth and self-esteem, and reduce stress and social anxiety.

Often these emotional needs must be balanced. For example, we try to balance our need for self-direction and a sense of identity with the need for acceptance by others.

**emotions** strong feelings  
**need** something that is required  
**emotional wellbeing** the ability to understand and accept your feelings and manage emotional challenges for your own happiness and self-esteem

## Emotional wellbeing

**FIGURE 2.2** Relationships influence all aspects of our emotional wellbeing.



## Emotional intelligence

Healthy relationships are promoted when we have **emotional intelligence**. This refers to our ability to identify and manage our own emotions, as well as identifying the emotions of others. Emotional intelligence can be learned. It involves:

- being aware of our own feelings and those of others
- controlling our emotions
- expressing how we feel
- showing empathy.

**emotional intelligence** the awareness of and ability to control and express our emotions with empathy towards others



Go to the **Emotions and the brain** weblink in the Online Resources to learn more.

### 2.2.2 Belonging or fitting in?

Our need to belong means that we develop a range of different relationships as we move through life. All our relationships will help to shape us as people. Your understanding of what is right and wrong is shaped by the responses to emotions and communication in your relationships and interactions with others.

Feeling connected is about:

- knowing you can seek support when you need it, that you will be listened to and that you can work together
- gaining respect and support from members of the group, as well as providing the same to them in return
- being accepted for who you are and accepting others in the same way.

#### DISCUSS

Consider this scenario posted to a youth blog:

*'Ever since I left primary school, I have more friends from different social groups. I'm a reader, blogger, average student and former soccer player, and each group is different. I feel like I behave differently in each of my groups and don't know if I'm behaving like a jerk at times. It seems like only my best friend knows the real me.'*

Outline the emotional needs that might be causing this person to behave differently in their different relationships.

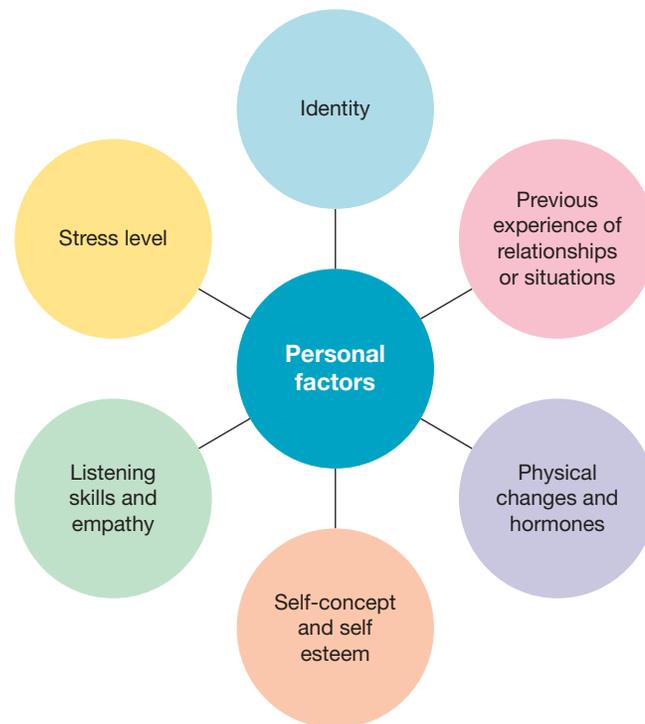
## 2.2.3 Factors that influence the way we respond emotionally

Within our relationships we experience a broad range of emotions. The relationships we have with our family and friends are usually the primary source of our emotions. These emotions can range from happiness, frustration and anxiety, to love, rage and despair.

Many personal and sociocultural factors affect what emotions we feel, how we relate to others and how we express our thoughts and feelings in relationships. These factors influence our expectations of what we want and need, how we treat others and how we want to be treated in relationships in our **social network**. Our emotions also affect how others respond to us.

**social network** the social relationships an individual has developed

**FIGURE 2.3** Which of these personal factors affect your emotions?



### DISCUSS

During puberty the brain starts strengthening parts that allow you to feel intense and complex emotions. However, the part of the brain that is responsible for regulating emotions, deep thinking, reasoning and decision making is often the last to develop.

How might this present challenges to a young person in their relationships?

In topic 1 you considered stereotypes. When left unchecked, stereotypes can affect how you feel about and act towards others. The media messages you receive, as well as the interactions you have with others, influence how you view people based on their race, sexuality or religion. The way you think about others affects how you feel and how you behave.

**FIGURE 2.4** Which of these sociocultural factors affect your emotions?



Sometimes social factors influence personal factors. The reward centres in your brain light up when they receive a 'like' on social media because a chemical called dopamine is released. This is the same chemical that makes someone feel good when they eat chocolate.

## 2.2.4 Recognising our emotions

We often cannot control the things that life throws our way, but we can learn to control our emotional response to them.

**Emotional regulation** is about:

- which emotions we have
- when we have them
- how we experience and express them.

Emotional regulation allows you to keep your emotions under control by slowing down and processing your emotions before reacting to them. This doesn't mean you avoid negative emotions; it just means you can notice your feelings and respond effectively in different situations.

When we can regulate our emotions, we are better able to cope with stress in life and be more resilient. This can lead to increased confidence and emotional wellbeing. It also has a positive effect on how others respond to us.

### **emotional regulation**

understanding which emotion you are feeling and when, and expressing it in an appropriate way for the situation

**FIGURE 2.5** Social media use has a direct impact on our emotions.



## The 'anger iceberg'

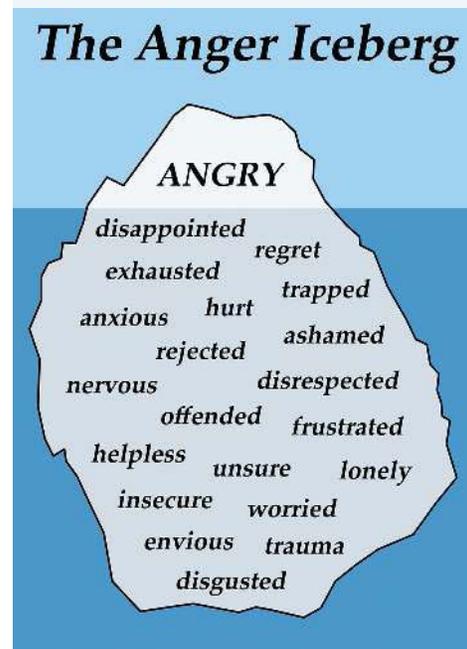
When we experience anger, it can be similar to an iceberg — people only see about 10 per cent of the emotion we are feeling.

What we see and hear can be yelling and loud voices. What we don't see beneath the surface can be a mix of other emotions, such as frustration, disappointment, pain, jealousy, loneliness or fear.

It is usually easy to spot anger, but the anger iceberg shows us what other emotions might be affecting our relationships and helps us better understand why we feel so mad. This can help us to manage our anger in a productive and meaningful way.

Table 2.2 shows how anger can affect your thinking and behaviour. It also describes a range of other emotions, how they might affect your thinking and how you might behave in a relationship as a result. How could the behaviours listed below affect others? How might they feel and behave in response?

**FIGURE 2.6** Would someone respond differently to you if you expressed the emotions shown below the surface rather than just anger?



**TABLE 2.2** Emotions affect how we feel, think and behave in a relationship.

Emotion How do I feel?	Thinking What thoughts am I having?	Behaviour What do I do in response?
Anger	Your mind is full of negative thoughts. You want to do something. You are being treated unfairly.	You confront the person or group.
Fear	You imagine the worst. Your brain makes quick decisions about what to do next for safety.	You avoid the person, group or interaction.
Sadness	Your thoughts are negative and you feel that there is no hope. You replay thoughts over and over. You are missing out.	You withdraw from the situation or relationship.
Guilt	You focus on yourself and your words or actions. The opinion others have of you matters a lot. You have done something wrong.	You hide from the situation or relationship.
Joy or happiness	You think freely, quickly and have positive thoughts. It's good to be you.	You look forward to the relationship or challenge and embrace it.
Contentment	You are in the moment, feeling calm and relaxed. Things are good for you.	You stay in a relationship or group.

## 2.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Factors that trigger emotions

- Create your own mind map of figure 2.3. Use it to identify examples of how each of the personal factors can affect your emotions. Identify some of the ways you respond to these emotions.
- As a class, consider the impact that a range of sociocultural factors can have on our emotions.
- Copy figure 2.4 onto the whiteboard. Identify how each factor might affect someone's emotions and how they could respond.
- Identify some possible consequences of these emotional responses.

## 2 Belonging or 'fitting in'?

Dr Brene Brown compares 'fitting in' and belonging. She believes that 'fitting in' takes a lot of courage, emotion and energy from an individual. Belonging, on the other hand, takes effort from a group or community but a lot less from an individual.

- a. As a class, write this idea in the centre of a whiteboard.
- b. Create a mind map to expand on this idea.
- c. As a group, consider what responsibility we have to make sure others feel like they belong. Things to consider are:
  - How could they be made to feel safe and accepted?
  - How could they be made to feel important to a group?
  - How could they be accepted for who they are?

## 3 Is it fair?

Two Sky Sports presenters in the UK were accused of sexism after commenting during an English Premier League match about a female referee's understanding of the offside rule. Believing that their microphones were off, the commentators were heard making negative remarks about the female linesman and saying that women don't know the offside rule.

- a. Identify the emotions that might be felt by:
  - the referee
  - the commentators
  - the viewers of the game.
- b. Identify what other sociocultural factors could be affecting the emotions of people who heard the negative comments.

## 4 Gender messages

- a. As a class, conduct a media investigation of alcohol or gambling advertising to analyse the impact of gender stereotypes or gender-based messages.
- b. You could investigate advertising on television, social media, sports programs or male- and female-oriented magazines.
- c. Things to look for include:
  - What images are used and what messages are sent about masculinity and male relationships?
  - What images are used and what messages are sent about what it means to be female?

## 5 How would you react?

Your friends have received invitations to a party, but you haven't.

- a. Identify the emotions that you might show to others.
- b. Identify the emotions that you might be feeling under the surface.
- c. How might you react?
  - Look sad with your group of friends and hope they ask you what's wrong.
  - Pretend you don't care and say negative things about the party.
  - Confide in a close friend who has been invited and go to the party with them.
  - Tell yourself it's just one party and find something else to do.
- d. For each option in part c, think about what might happen next. Which reaction would lead to the best outcome for you and others? What could you do to control emotions that may be inappropriate to this situation?

## 6 What lies below the surface?

- a. In your family, or in the culture you grew up in, what emotions do people freely express? What emotions do they keep to themselves?
- b. Think of a person you know who handles difficult emotions, such as sadness, fear or hurt, effectively. Describe how they show these emotions. Explain what they do to cope with them.
- c. Anger is sometimes used to cover emotions that make a person feel vulnerable, such as hurt or shame. Can you think of a time you expressed anger to hide another emotion you were feeling?



girl pushed her in the same way and made a nasty comment. As she left school on Friday, Aminah heard the girl say, 'Catch you next week, Aminah.' Then she winked and walked off laughing with her friends.

- List the emotions Aminah might feel in this situation.
- Describe the actions or behaviours these emotions could prompt in Aminah.
- List the emotions Aminah's friends might feel and why?
- Explain what the girl bullying Aminah might feel and why.

## 2.2 Exercise

### 2.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 6

#### LEVEL 2

4, 7, 9

#### LEVEL 3

5, 8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Why is fostering positive and respectful relationships important?
  - To be popular and have lots of friends
  - For our opinions to be heard
  - To feel a sense of belonging
  - To impress others
- MC** What are the consequences of a positive relationship?
  - You have a sense of belonging.
  - You feel good about yourself.
  - You are accepted for who you are.
  - All of the above
- Emotional intelligence can be learned. True or false?
- Match each emotional need with the correct description.

Emotional need	Description
a. Safety, security and acceptance	A. Having self-discipline
b. Freedom to say what we need and how we feel	B. Feeling protected, cared for and guided by others
c. Self-direction, assertiveness and identity	C. Communicating emotions and needs in ways that are helpful to ourselves and others
d. Joy, spontaneity and creativity	D. Accepting how we are unique and differ from others, how we feel we are, or would like to be, similar to others
e. Self-control	E. Being curious

- Sort the following examples of things that can affect our emotions according to which type of factor they are.  
**Word list:** identity, family influence, previous experience, peer influences, self-esteem, empathy, media, stereotypes and prejudice

Personal	Sociocultural

### Apply your understanding

- 6. Outline** how emotions and relationships are interrelated.
- Select one of the emotional needs listed in table 2.1. **Explain** what it might look like in a friendship you have.
- Look at figure 2.7, the emotion wheel. Choose one of the emotions in the 'happy' section. **Explain** how this could create positive thinking and behaviour. How could others respond to this?
- 9. Explain** how one personal factor and one sociocultural factor could influence our emotions.
- 10. Explain**, using an example, how the changes to the brain during adolescence could make emotions hard to control.

## LESSON

### 2.3 Communicating our emotions in relationships

#### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Recognise and interpret emotional responses to stressful situations.
- Propose strategies for ensuring emotional responses don't have a negative impact on others.

#### ENGAGE

**Scenario:** Your friend is great fun to be with when it's just the two of you, but when you're with others they are not 'themselves'. They act differently, make insulting jokes about you and other people and are unkind. You don't want to lose them as a friend, but their behaviour is hurtful.

Describe one or two strategies you can use to address this situation.

#### 2.3.1 Expressing our emotions to others

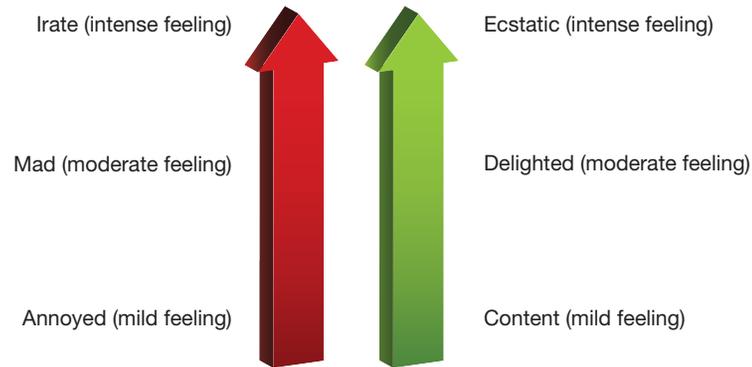
No matter how well you know a person, you cannot read their mind. We need to communicate clearly to avoid misunderstandings. Effective communication is not just exchanging information. You need to listen in a way that gains the full meaning of what's being said and makes the other person feel heard and understood. Effective communication is an essential aspect of managing emotional responses and developing all types of relationships.

##### Effective communication

We can all learn how to improve the way we communicate. Part of this is identifying the most appropriate and respectful way to relate to each other depending on the situation.

To express our emotions or communicate how we are feeling, we need to have an emotional vocabulary that indicates how strongly we feel across a wide range of emotions. This can make it easier for others to understand the feelings we are trying to share and to have empathy for us.

**FIGURE 2.8** Some emotions linked to anger and happiness, by level of intensity



Refer back to the emotion wheel in figure 2.7, in lesson 2.2. How many of the emotions shown are you familiar with?

### DISCUSS

Emojis are symbols or visual language. We can use them to express a broad range of emotions when we use digital technology. They are used in the same way that tone of voice, facial expressions and body gestures are used in face-to-face and verbal communication. For people who find it difficult to express themselves through words, emojis can help them to better communicate their thoughts and feelings.

What are the benefits and limitations of emojis as a way of expressing emotions?

**FIGURE 2.9** Emojis allow us to represent emotions in text-based communication.



### 2.3.2 Building resilience through communication

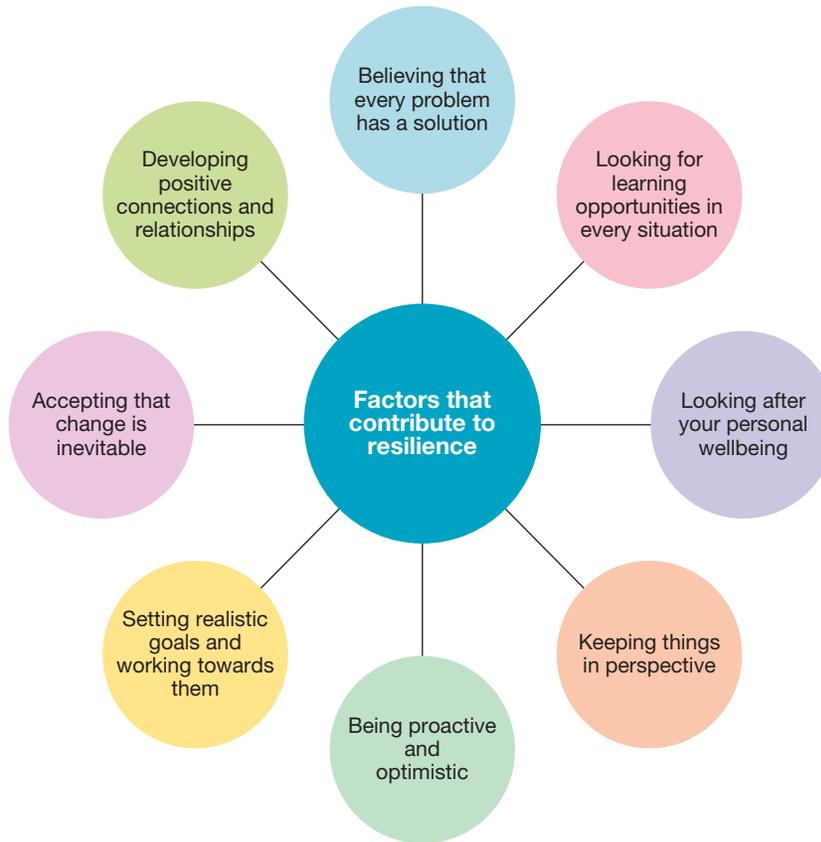
You can't change someone else, but you can develop skills to protect and look after yourself when you come up against negative people. Having a strong sense of self-esteem and confidence helps you to think positively about yourself in the face of negative situations. Developing techniques for becoming more optimistic can enhance your **resilience** and ability to cope with adversity.

**resilience** the ability to recover or bounce back from challenges and/or difficulties

'Happiness is created, not discovered.' With this in mind, it is important to act proactively and constructively in negative situations. This promotes a positive sense of wellbeing and overall happiness.

Many factors combine to build resilience. One of the main factors is having caring and supportive relationships. Respectful relationships help boost a person's resilience. Other contributing factors are shown in figure 2.10.

**FIGURE 2.10** Taking these actions will help you to be more resilient.



### 2.3.3 Dealing with conflict through communication

Even in a respectful relationship, disagreements and arguments can happen. Conflict is normal and healthy and it can help you learn about and understand each other. It can also be unpleasant and make you feel sad, guilty, confused or angry.

It's important to deal with conflict as it arises. Maintaining a respectful relationship depends on how you manage your differences and come to resolutions. Dealing with conflict immediately will prevent a small conflict, such as a difference of opinions, from becoming an unsafe or dangerous situation.

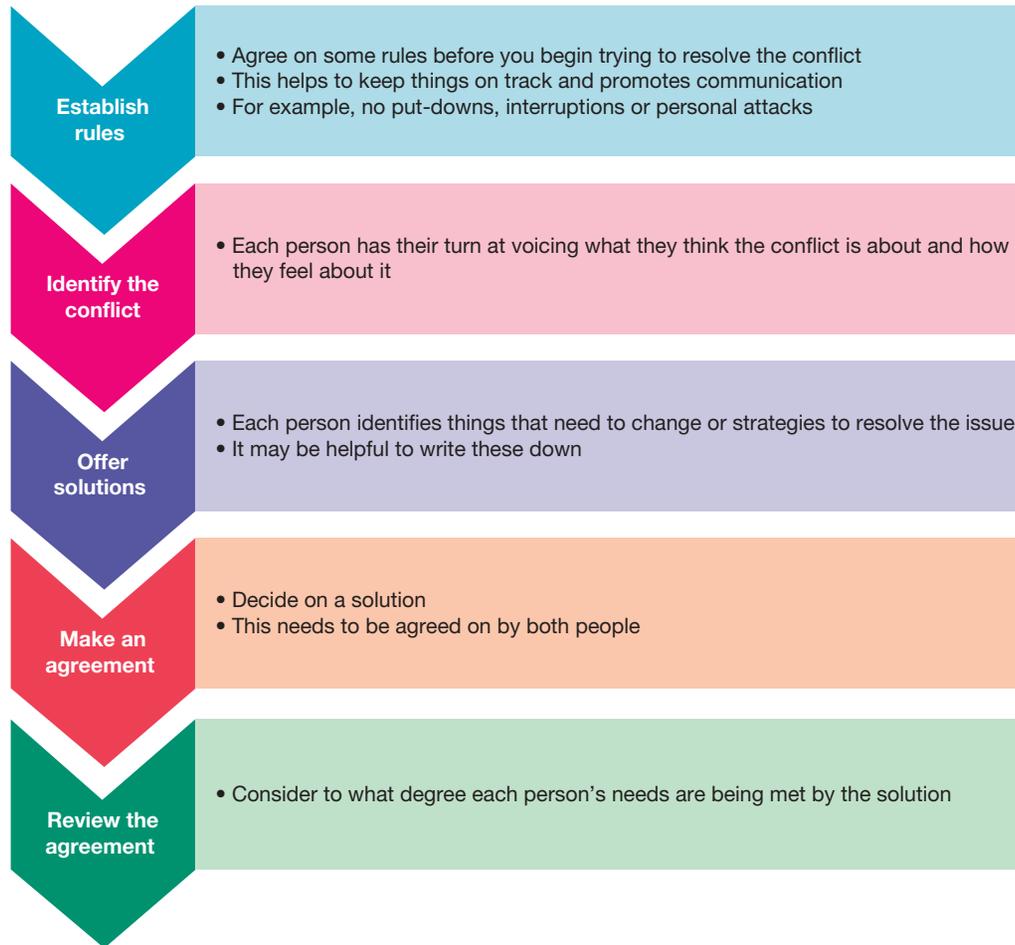
### 2.3.4 Communicating effectively

Sharing your feelings can seem hard. Like other skills, the ability to communicate feelings can be improved through practice. First you need to recognise the emotions you're having and what's causing them. You also need to take ownership of your emotions using 'I' statements. Instead of saying, 'You're making me really angry!' you could say, 'I'm feeling frustrated because we don't agree.' Use the **'I' statements** worksheet in the Online Resources to practise this.



Open, clear and effective communication can be learned. We communicate and express ourselves both verbally and non-verbally. We can say a lot without speaking. Our posture, tone of voice and the expressions on our face all convey a message. It is important that our body language and tone reflect what we are saying. When our words match our body language and tone, people understand us. When they don't match, people tend to believe the body language. Non-verbal communication ultimately determines how genuine a conversation is and how the other person feels and responds.

**FIGURE 2.11** A helpful model in dealing with conflict



### 2.3.5 Active listening skills

Listening is a very important part of effective communication. When you do not use effective listening skills, you are not effectively communicating. This prevents the development of positive relationships. Have you ever mindlessly responded with 'uh huh' when someone was trying to tell you something, then had to ask them to repeat the question? Have you ever had someone do that to you?

**Active listening** takes work but it improves our communication. If we want our communication skills to get stronger, it is crucial to adopt good listening skills. With effective communication skills you can appreciate the experiences and perspectives of other people, even if they are different from your own.

**active listening** the ability to engage completely with the speaker, understand their message, comprehend the information, respond thoughtfully and recall specific details

### 2.3.6 Assertiveness in relationships

Using your effective communication skills to be assertive in an intimate relationship can be difficult. This can be affected by the power dynamics in the relationship due to:

- age
- gender
- position
- ability
- wealth.

**FIGURE 2.12** How we can express our emotions effectively to manage differences.



Being assertive means standing up for yourself and your rights while also respecting the rights and opinions of others. It is important for both people in a relationship to be able to communicate their needs and wants in a safe and respectful manner.

In any type of relationship, we should not try to force, control, pressure, persuade or manipulate others to change because it would be better for us, or because we think it would be better for them (e.g. trying to convince someone to change the way they dress, go on a diet or do the activity we prefer on the weekend). Consent applies to all types of relationships, not just sexual relationships. It is everyone's right to say 'no' or not to give consent.

In a sexual relationship, equal power for both partners allows for assertive communication. This means clearly giving consent and being able to talk about condoms and who will organise contraception. No one person should be making all the decisions about contraception use in a respectful sexual relationship.

There are things that you can do to ensure that your communication is respectful but assertive. These include:

- Clarify what you feel and want or don't want.
- Don't be afraid to say 'no'.
- Be clear.
- Use a calm voice and keep your body relaxed.
- Listen and let the other person finish speaking.
- Show respect and kindness.
- Use careful, non-blaming language and don't seek to win.
- Talk openly and honestly, maintaining open body language.
- Recognise that your needs are as important as your partner's.
- Stick to each point until you've worked through it.



doc-17175

## 2.3 ACTIVITIES

### 1 All the feels

- In pairs, choose one of the basic emotions: happiness, sadness, fear, disgust, anger and surprise.
- List as many words as you can that are like the emotion you chose.
- Use this to create a list of emotions from A to Z.
- Explain how you can experience a contrasting mix of emotions about the one event. For example, changing schools could make you feel excited, apprehensive, curious and sad.
- List four unpleasant emotions that you might experience from A to Z.
- Describe how you might behave as a result of each of these emotions.
- Describe how others might feel and behave in response to you.

### 2 Resolving conflict

- In a small group, choose one of the following scenarios and answer the questions that follow.
  - Your friend visits your house and takes some money from your bedroom.*
  - Your parents won't let you go to a party because your friend's parents won't be home.*
  - You told your best friend a secret and they went and told other kids in your class.*
- Identify the problem in your scenario and discuss what each character might be feeling.
- Use the model in figure 2.11 to identify the steps you would take to resolve each problem.
- In your group, roleplay how you would resolve the conflict presented in the scenario.
- As a class, identify the positive strategies that each group used to resolve the conflict.
- As a class, explain why conflict resolution is an important skill for young people to have.

### 3 Resolving conflict roleplay

- Refer back to figure 2.12 on how to express emotions effectively.
- Roleplay the following potential conflict situations with a partner using the steps in the figure.
  - A classmate told another friend that you had said something mean about them, but you didn't.*
  - One of your classmates started a rumour about you.*
  - Your group of friends made fun of someone from a different culture and it made you feel uncomfortable.*
- Did the situation end productively or not? Why or why not?

### 4 Speed communicating and listening

- Arrange a single line of desks in the middle of the room with a chair on either side of the desk so that pairs of students face each other, or organise students sitting in two circles on the floor in the classroom with the students in the inner circle facing the students in the outer circle.
- Each pair must communicate with no-one else other than their partner for two minutes (timed by the teacher).
- At the end of the two minutes, one partner stays where they are and the other moves one seat to their right (or the number of moves to the right can be determined by the teacher).
- The aim is for each student to get to know the person opposite them as best they can in the allocated two minutes.

- e. Remember that verbal and non-verbal communication and listening skills are equally important in this activity. Encourage the conversations to be 'two-way', and use simple starting questions if necessary. For example, 'Do you have siblings?', 'Do you have pets?', 'What are your favourite hobbies?', 'What is the best thing that you have ever gotten away with?'
- f. At the end of each two-minute time period, the teacher can randomly ask a student to tell the rest of the class as much as they can remember about the person they just finished having a discussion with.
- g. At the end of the activity, the teacher might ask each student to identify the most interesting point made by any other student that they spoke to.
- h. Reflect on this activity by answering the following questions.
  - What behaviours or actions made you feel like you were being listened to?
  - What behaviours or actions made you feel like you weren't being listened to?
  - What are some strategies that you can use to make sure you are communicating effectively?

## 5 Active listening

Access the **Active listening** weblink in the Online Resources. Reflect on the following questions.

- a. We hear what is being said but are we really listening?
- b. What is listening?



## 2.3 Exercise

### 2.3 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 5, 8

■ LEVEL 2

4, 6, 7, 9

■ LEVEL 3

10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

## Check your understanding

1. **MC** Good listening skills include:
  - A. asking questions and responding passively.
  - B. acting disinterested and interrupting the conversation.
  - C. being distracted by the things around you.
  - D. keeping eye contact and showing genuine interest.
2. Good listening skills include giving a conversation your full attention and concentrating on what the other person is saying. True or false?
3. **MC** Which of the following are important components of active listening? Choose all possible answers.
  - A. Maintaining eye contact
  - B. Asking relevant questions
  - C. Responding before someone has finished
  - D. Showing genuine interest
4. Match the active listening skill with its description.

Active listening skill	Description
a. Paraphrase	A. Take your time to think, wait before you respond
b. Ask questions	B. Be there for the other person, don't be tempted to solve the problem for them
c. Use positive body language	C. Wait until the person has finished speaking before you try to give advice
d. Listen	D. Try not to interrupt while they are speaking

Active listening skill	Description
e. Evaluate the conversation	E. Reword what the person has said to show you are clear about what they are saying
f. Don't give advice too quickly	F. Nod, face the other person and be relaxed and open
g. Avoid judgement	G. Try to show support and put yourself in their shoes
h. Show empathy	H. Help the other person provide detail about their thoughts and feelings

- Place the following steps for resolving conflict in the correct order.
  - Offer solutions
  - Make an agreement
  - Establish rules
  - Identify the conflict
  - Review the agreement

### Apply your understanding

- Explain** why it is important to use the right word for the intensity of the emotion you are feeling.
- State** an example of when verbal and non-verbal communication don't match. What might be the outcome?
- Identify** and list some actions we can take to make our communication more effective.
- Explain** what resilience means when we apply it to feeling emotions.
- Imagine that you are in the scenario described at the beginning of lesson 2.3 and repeated here.

**Scenario:** *Your friend is great fun to be with when it's just the two of you, but when you're with others they are not 'themselves'. They act differently, make insulting jokes about you and other people and are unkind. You don't want to lose them as a friend, but their behaviour is hurtful.*

**Create** a script for a conversation between you and your friend using the tips given about how to express emotions effectively to resolve conflict.

## LESSON

### 2.4 Respectful relationships

#### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe the concepts of respect, power balance and decision making, stereotypes and inclusivity.
- Identify the qualities of respectful relationships.
- Understand the rights and responsibilities in respectful relationships.

#### ENGAGE

'It is not our differences that divide us. It is our inability to recognize, accept and celebrate those differences.'

— Audre Lorde (American writer)

In small groups, respond to this idea, referring to respect, stereotypes and inclusion.

## 2.4.1 Respect

Fostering respectful relationships is essential in every aspect of our lives, including at school, at home, online, in the community and on the sporting field. **Respect** means:

- recognising and appreciating the differences between people
- treating people fairly
- respecting other people's emotions
- recognising and protecting other people's right to express their emotions, thoughts, opinions and who they are
- respecting other people's right to be safe.

**respect** recognising and appreciating the differences between people and treating them fairly

It is important that both people in a relationship respect each other. This is the foundation for a caring relationship, characterised by trust, safety, empathy and effective conflict resolution and negotiation.

To build mutual respect in a relationship:

- Consider your words before speaking.
- Consider your actions before acting.
- Act with kindness and tolerance.
- Treat people fairly.
- Recognise and appreciate the differences between people.
- Take the other person's preferences into consideration.
- Acknowledge the rights of others.

**FIGURE 2.13** Respect means recognising and appreciating the differences between people and treating them fairly.



## 2.4.2 Building respectful relationships

How do you know if your relationship with someone is respectful or not? To help you identify whether a relationship is respectful for you, think about how you feel and how you are treated in the relationship.

A respectful relationship is one of mutual respect, trust, good communication, understanding and honesty. Being in a relationship should be a positive experience for both people. Everyone has the right to feel safe, valued and cared for in relationships, particularly when starting a closer, intimate relationship.

Arriving at a point in a relationship where both people feel happy and respected is not always easy. Sometimes the differences between people get in the way, and people don't know how to respond emotionally.

When you develop relationships, it is important to think about what you want and need from the relationship. Different people want different things from relationships. Compromising your needs to keep someone else happy or to avoid an argument is not what healthy relationships are about. Caring and respectful relationships are those in which both people have their rights respected.

### The characteristics of a respectful relationship

In a respectful relationship, you feel:

- you are able to make your own decisions
- loved and needed and good about yourself
- happy, safe, secure, comfortable, accepted and free to be yourself.

In a respectful relationship, you support others when you:

- listen to the other person when they want to share their thoughts or feelings
- try to understand the other person's point of view
- remember the other person has the right to have different opinions
- provide and accept support when needed.

In a respectful relationship, when there is disagreement you:

- talk about the situation when there are differences in opinion
- listen to each other's needs and try to compromise
- don't interrupt or judge the other
- don't put the other person down
- express your needs in a calm way and clearly explain what you need
- are not aggressive and avoid losing your temper
- realise that sometimes you need to agree to disagree.

In a respectful relationship, together you:

- make sure there is a balance of give and take in the relationship
- are honest and don't tell lies or mislead the other person
- develop trust and respect in the relationship
- are dependable and supportive.

## DISCUSS

When someone follows you on Instagram or adds you as a friend on Snapchat, does it mean that you have a relationship that is as close and intimate as the one you have with offline friends?

Some young people engage in 'friend-collecting behaviour'. This means increasing the size of their online social network by 'friending' people that they don't know personally or that they wouldn't talk to in person. Do you agree that some young people engage in 'friend-collecting behaviour'?

## 2.4.3 Rights and responsibilities in relationships

Everybody has **rights** in relationships, such as the right to feel safe and express their own opinions. They also have **responsibilities**, such as not threatening or harming other people.

Recognising that each person has rights and responsibilities in a relationship, and learning what these rights and responsibilities are, is an important step in learning how to develop and maintain respectful relationships.

**rights** something that everyone should have; for example, everyone has the right to feel safe

**responsibilities** your obligations; for example, you have a responsibility not to harm other people

**TABLE 2.3** Examples of rights and responsibilities in relationships

Rights	Responsibilities
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To feel safe</li><li>• To be treated fairly</li><li>• To have a say</li><li>• To be able to express thoughts, feelings and needs freely</li><li>• To be respected</li><li>• To say no</li><li>• To change your mind</li><li>• To make your own decisions</li><li>• To be free to spend time with others</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To be respectful</li><li>• To be considerate of other people's feelings</li><li>• To listen</li><li>• To accept others' right to have an opinion or different point of view</li><li>• To respect the other person's needs</li><li>• To provide support</li><li>• To respect the other person's feelings</li><li>• Not to put others down</li><li>• Not to harm others</li></ul>

## on Resources

 **Interactivity** Rights and responsibilities (int-5449)

## ALERT!

This topic includes discussion around issues such as power in relationships, sexual assault, physical and emotional abuse, and discrimination and harassment. This content may be difficult to think about for some young people and it is important that you care for your safety and wellbeing. If any of this content makes you feel uncomfortable or could trigger negative thoughts or feelings, remember to seek support. Possible sources of support include:

- a teacher or your school counsellor
- Kids Helpline (1800 55 1800)
- online youth support groups, such as Reachout, Beyond Blue and Lifeline eheadspace
- your doctor
- a youth health service.

## 2.4.4 Power



doc-14643

When we use our **power** in relationships in a positive way, our relationships become stronger. This means that not only do our decisions and actions make others feel good in the short term, but the relationship will continue long into the future. A balanced relationship helps to nurture mutual respect.

**power** the ability to do something or make something happen in a relationship

An uneven balance of power, on the other hand, can lead to unhealthy and destructive relationships. Power imbalances create an environment for mistrust, abuse (verbal, emotional, physical), and negative behaviours or attitudes. It is very important that there is a mutual sense of understanding, decision making, respect and communication so that no member of the relationship feels excluded or taken advantage of.

## DISCUSS

Everyone has some power in their relationships. When people use their power to control or hurt someone else, the relationship is abusive. People can have power in relationships because they are perceived as being:

- bigger and stronger
- more popular
- in greater authority in their job or position
- more knowledgeable or more skilful
- connected to someone important or who has more power
- older
- more attractive.

Think about a relationship you know of in which one person has more power because they are more popular. Does responsibility come with popularity?

Power affects how people think, feel and interact. Problems can develop in relationships when there is a power imbalance. The partner with less power might:

- be excluded from making decisions
- grow resentful
- feel taken for granted or unsafe
- withdraw from the relationship to protect their own feelings and self-esteem.

You may have lost power in a relationship if you:

- sometimes feel alone when you are with the other person
- feel intimidated (physically, emotionally, intellectually) by them
- measure your self-worth based on how they see you
- don't get to participate in decision making, so your needs, beliefs or interests are not met.

A sign that you have too much power can be that you make decisions based only on your personal beliefs, preferences or interests. For a relationship to be respectful, it must be based on mutual respect and equality.

As children, and during our teenage years, we may see conflict in our family environment. In families where negotiation and problem-solving are modelled and practised to solve conflict, young people can learn communication and relationship skills for life.

In families with high conflict where insults, name-calling, shouting or walking away in public areas happens, young people's feeling of safety may be challenged. This is harmful for their future relationships as well as their current and future mental health. Our childhood experiences with our parents provide a model for our adult relationships.

## 2.4.5 Diversity, stereotypes and being inclusive

One issue that can arise in diverse communities is **stereotyping**. This means portraying all members of a particular group as having the same characteristics or behaviours. People or groups can be stereotyped based on age, gender, sexual identity, ability, looks, religion, culture or skin colour. For example, some relationships can still be affected by traditional views on how young and older people should behave and what they should expect in relationships.

The media has a role in reinforcing or breaking down stereotypes. Stereotypes have consequences for respectful relationships because they create divisions within and across groups.

**stereotyping** where a set of characteristics is used to categorise a group of people  
**diversity** the broad range of differences that exist between people and communities, including in terms of gender, ethnicity, culture, socio-economic status, age, religion, ability and sexuality

**FIGURE 2.14** Break The Bias is a movement to respect **diversity** and equality, and reduce discrimination.



The Australian government lists values based on freedom, fairness and respect as central to our community. They consider this as including:

- respect for the freedom and dignity of the individual
- freedom of religion
- equality of opportunity for all people, regardless of their gender, sexual orientation, age, ability, race, or national or ethnic origin
- mutual respect
- tolerance.

**FIGURE 2.15** How can you be more inclusive?



## 2.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Respectful relationships

In pairs, use the **What makes a good friend?** weblink in the Online Resources to research information on adolescent relationships. Using the information from your research, design and create an information sheet on adolescence and relationships. Your information sheet should be targeted at young people. Discuss with your partner what sort of information would help young people to find their way through a relationship. You may wish to focus on relationships in general, or friendships, intimate relationships or family relationships. The following questions can be used as a guide.

- List the key elements of a respectful relationship.
- Outline important relationships for young people.
- Describe the characteristics of an unhealthy relationship.
- Discuss strategies for negotiating respectful relationships.

### 2 Physical activity and relationships

Participating in a group activity is one way in which we learn to relate to others in positive and respectful ways. In games like dodgeball and 40:40 there are official rules to help us to play the game fairly and show us what is and isn't acceptable behaviour. There are also unwritten expectations and responsibilities of fair play.



weblink

- a. In groups of four, design a new and creative game for the class to participate in. You will need to write a plan and identify:
  - the equipment that you need
  - the instructions for the class
  - the official rules of the game
  - a list of unwritten expectations of fair play.
- b. After the class has participated in each game, discuss the following questions as a whole group.
  - i. Were there any moments of fair play shown?
  - ii. Did you hear any words of encouragement from either team during the game?
  - iii. How did people relate to and communicate with each other during the game? Provide some specific examples.
  - iv. Were the official rules ever broken?
  - v. Did you notice anything else worth mentioning in relation to positive and respectful participation?
  - vi. How does participation in a team sport help you to develop respectful relationships?
  - vii. How do people feel when players are not positive and respectful?
  - viii. What is the most important aspect of participating in a team sport?

### 3 Rights and responsibilities

- a. As a class, discuss the rights and responsibilities listed in table 2.3. Add any other rights and responsibilities that the class identifies to the table.
- b. Make a list of the:
  - i. behaviours that show respect for others' needs and feelings
  - ii. behaviours that help to make others feel safe.

### 4 Understanding rights and responsibilities

- a. In groups of four, brainstorm the rights and responsibilities that:
  - i. students have in the classroom
  - ii. young people have at home.
- b. Write your group's ideas under the following headings.
  - i. Classroom rights
  - ii. Classroom responsibilities
  - iii. Home rights
  - iv. Home responsibilities
- c. As a group, discuss the following questions.
  - i. How do you feel when your rights are not respected by others?
  - ii. Imagine yourself as a parent. How would you feel if your child did not stick to the curfew you had both agreed on?
  - iii. As a student, how would you feel if a classmate left all the work to you in a paired class assignment?
  - iv. What strategies could you use to negotiate a better outcome for part **iii**?
  - v. Why is it important to respect others' rights?

### 5 *For the Birds*, short Pixar film

Using a search engine, find and watch *For the Birds*, a short Pixar film.

- a. Discuss the relevance of the film in terms of taking responsibility for your own needs while respecting the needs of others.
- b. Rewrite the ending to the film to show how all the birds' needs are met and that there is a mutual sense of respect and trust.

### 6 Appropriate use of personal power

- a. In small groups, read each of the following scenarios. Identify who has the power in each relationship and why.
  - *Every day at school, Alex is bullied by his peers because he is gay. He is really depressed and scared, particularly when he is walking home from school. Tony is a popular athlete in Alex's year. He understands what Alex must be going through because he has supported his cousin through a similar situation.*

- *Jamie dropped out of school at the end of Year 10. She is now 18 years old and has never managed to get a job. All her friends have finished their VCE and have jobs. Her best friend Jessica has always been more motivated to achieve; she currently has a part-time job and is studying at TAFE. Jamie doesn't know how to get out of the negative cycle she is in. She is feeling down and is bored with her life.*
- Discuss ways in which each person with the power in the scenarios could use their power in a positive way.
  - Choose one scenario and roleplay the situation in front of the class so the use of power contributes positively to the relationship. Alternatively, devise your own scenario and roleplay it. As a class, discuss each group's roleplay and determine how power was used and how it contributed to respectful relationships.

## 7 Responding to differences

- When we meet people who are different from us, we can respond to the differences by excluding, avoiding, allowing, accepting or appreciating them. Read the explanations of the five ways of responding.
 

**Excluding** — You deliberately deny the person access to information, friendships, place, groups and activities. For example, you do not let them join your group for a game at lunch.

**Avoiding** — You deliberately have as little contact as possible with this person. For example, if they are sitting at a certain table in the library, you choose a different table.

**Allowing** — You see the differences in this person as negative but feel that it's OK as long as they don't get in your way.

**Accepting** — You see the differences in this person but it doesn't bother you. You work with them in sports teams and class activities and it's not a problem. You don't seek friendship with them.

**Appreciating** — You see the person's differences in a positive way. You enjoy being around them and make an effort to include them.
- Identify which of the five ways of responding to differences are being used in the following scenarios.
  - *Bella and Carla are assigned to be partners for a sport project. They don't usually spend time together outside of school. They only talk when necessary for the project and once the lesson ends they both move off to different classes with different groups of friends.*
  - *Amber finds out that Cherry has joined the group working on the menu for the Chinese New Year celebrations, so she joins a different group working on the entertainment.*
  - *Jorja often goes to Petra's house after school. Petra's mother and father were not born in Australia, and Jorja enjoys watching videos of their life in the country of their birth. She enjoys the food Petra's mum prepares for dinner, which is different to the meals she has at home.*
  - *Depak and Anh have been friends since primary school. Depak often asks Anh for advice about what to do when he feels pressure from the group to behave in a certain way that makes him feel unsure about himself. Anh tells him to be himself and points out all the things Depak is good at. Depak feels that Anh understands him and he is thankful they are friends.*
  - *Amara is working on a project to raise money for a nearby youth homeless shelter. She posts an invitation on social media for other students to be involved. Many students volunteer and Amara is excited to work with people with different skills and experience that can help her project.*
  - *Daisy intentionally does not invite Jessie or Peta to the music festival.*
  - *David is Catholic and Caleb is Jewish. They live just around the corner from each other and catch the same train to school. They talk about sport and music and catch up on weekends. Neither of them have ever discussed their religious differences.*
- If you have identified the people in these scenarios as responding to differences with excluding, avoiding, allowing or accepting behaviour, explain how they could move to the 'appreciating' stage described in part a at the start of this activity.

## 2.4 Exercise

### 2.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 6, 7

##### ■ LEVEL 2

5, 8, 9

##### ■ LEVEL 3

4, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** What are the characteristics of a positive relationship? Select all possible answers from the options below.
  - Allows different opinions
  - Allows you to be yourself
  - Makes you feel anxious
  - Involves good communication
- MC** How can you improve the way in which you relate to others so your relationships are happy and respectful? Select all possible answers from the options below.
  - Disrespect the other person's values
  - Respect the other person's rights
  - Do not show interest in the other person
  - Be honest about what you want out of the relationship
- MC** What makes a respectful relationship?
  - A positive balance of power
  - One person exerting more power over another person
  - Making compromises too frequently and being non-assertive
  - All of the above
- MC** Which of the following is NOT a personal skill necessary for developing balance in a relationship?
  - Compromise
  - Being assertive
  - Respecting the needs and rights of others
  - Being aggressive
- Use the words 'Abuse' and 'Positive use' to complete the following sentences.

\_\_\_\_\_ of power involves influencing others in ways that show respect for yourself and others.

\_\_\_\_\_ of power occurs when someone does not respect the rights of others and their own responsibilities.

### Apply your understanding

- Identify** ways to build respect.
- Explain** why some relationships are stressful or hard.
- Imagine that you and three other people have been stranded on a desert island. **Propose** three ways in which the relationships between the four of you might be tested. **List** rules to maintain respectful relationships on the island.
- Describe** one reason why people have power in a relationship and discuss its impact.
- Figure 2.15 in section 2.4.5 shows what it means to be inclusive. Using this list, **discuss** an example of how respecting the diversity of someone from a different cultural background can help to address stereotypes.

# LESSON

## 2.5 Equality in relationships

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Examine how gender stereotypes influence roles, decision making, power and control in relationships.
- Identify indicators of unequal relationships.
- Identify the impact of gender stereotypes on relationships.

### ENGAGE

A class in Kerry, Ireland began a *Detect to Protect* program for their peers to help them identify unhealthy relationships. The *Detect to Protect* acronyms mean:

**DETECT** (Dishonesty, Envy, Tension, Exclusion, Control and feeling Trapped)

- This helps students identify toxic traits and characteristics in unhealthy relationships.

**PROTECT** (Privacy, Respect, Openness, Time, Encouragement, Communication and Trust)

- This aims to help educate students on nurturing healthy friendships and romantic relationships.

Does your school need something like this?

**Source:** <https://www.irishtimes.com/life-and-style/health-family/toxic-teen-relationships-it-s-considered-normal-that-s-the-mas-sive-issue-1.4570603>

### 2.5.1 Recognising problems in relationships

An unhealthy relationship will generally be one that prevents you from challenging yourself to be the best that you can be. It is important that you stay true to yourself and have the skills to identify when a relationship isn't working for you and how to handle this.

We all encounter unhealthy relationships at some stage in our lives; however, it is when relationships become abusive and beyond our ability to control that we need to seek help to ensure our safety. Suggestions about where to go are included later in this lesson.

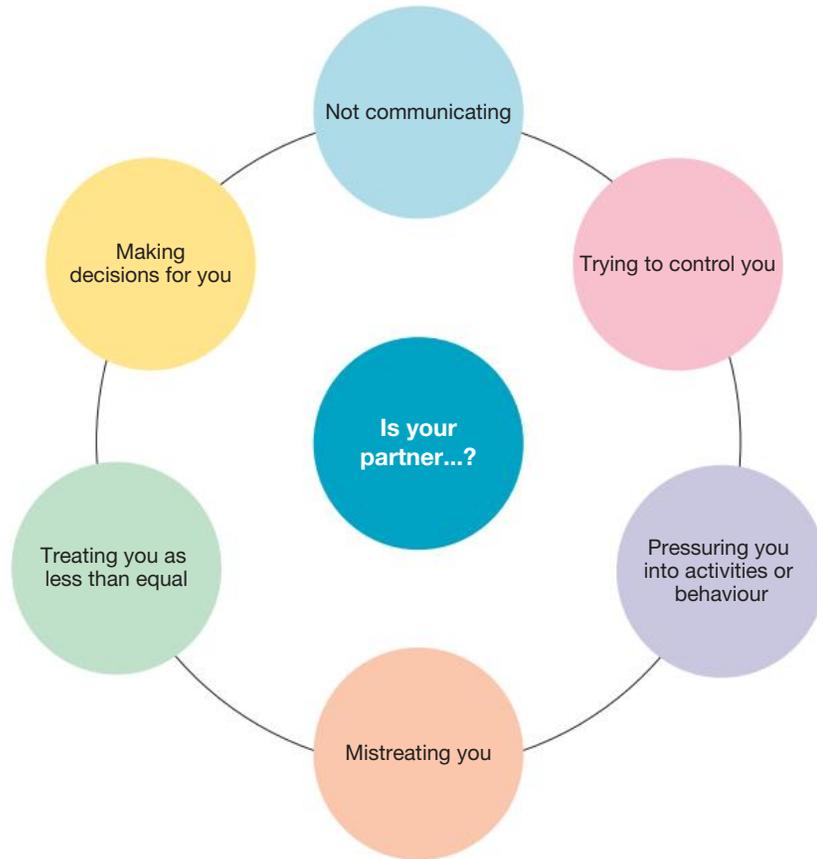
#### Your 'emotional bank account' and the magic ratio

If you opened an 'emotional bank account', an unhealthy relationship would be one where there would be a lot of withdrawals and not enough deposits. It is essential that substantial deposits are made for a relationship to remain sustainable.

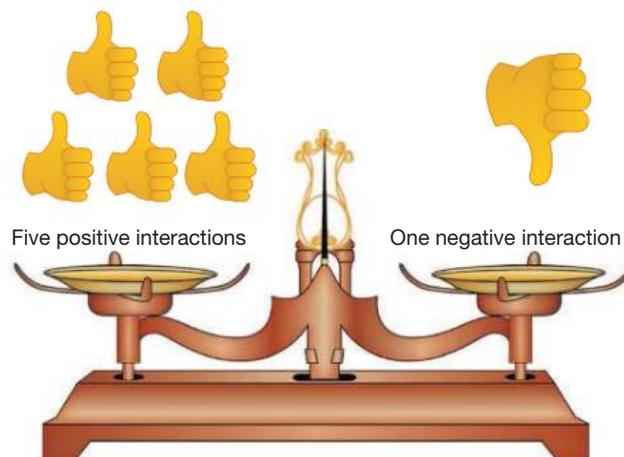
According to Dr John Gottman, a relationship researcher, to achieve a respectful relationship, the bank account needs to be in credit. While positive and negative interactions will occur in any relationship, Dr Gottman found that stable relationships have a balance of five positive interactions to every one negative interaction. He called this **the magic ratio of 5:1**. These positive interactions protect the relationship from the negative interactions.

**the magic ratio of 5:1** for every one negative interaction or feeling between people, there must be five positive interactions or feelings for the relationship to be positive and in balance

**FIGURE 2.16** Warning signs you may be in an unhealthy relationship



**FIGURE 2.17** The magic ratio of 5:1 for stable, positive relationships.



**social rejection** occurs when an individual is deliberately excluded from a relationship or group interaction

### DID YOU KNOW?

Teenagers learn extensively from their peers and tend to feel pressured, especially by those who have more social power, who are older or who are more popular. Adolescents can sometimes let themselves be drawn into an unhealthy relationship because of the fear of **social rejection**. This can cause them to place more importance on what other people think of them than what they think of themselves. It can also make them ignore their true feelings.

## 2.5.2 Gender stereotypes

When we make **assumptions** about an entire group of people, those assumptions are referred to as **stereotypes**. Throughout our lives, stereotypes can reflect and affect how others think about our identities as well as how we behave and how we think about ourselves. Despite considerable social change over the years, **gendered expectations** still exist today. Gender stereotypes are harmful because they limit people's capacity to develop personal abilities, pursue professional careers and make choices about their lives.

**assumption** something that is accepted as true before one gathers any proof that it is so

**stereotype** a set of characteristics typically used to categorise a group of people

**gendered expectations** how we are expected to act, speak, dress and conduct ourselves based upon our assigned sex

### Examples of gender stereotypes

Gender stereotypes involve assumptions and beliefs that are untrue and restrictive, yet they're still used in the media, celebrity culture, society and even by families, schools and professionals.

Common gender stereotypes include:

- Boys don't cry and real men don't talk about how they feel.
- Girls are emotional and caring.
- Girls are polite and accommodating. Boys are sporty.
- Men are powerful.
- Boys want sex.
- Girls need love.
- Girls are better at reading and boys are better at maths.
- Girls should be thin and beautiful to make them appealing to men.
- Assertive women are unfeminine, 'bossy' or 'bitches'.
- Men are naturally assertive and bold. Women are natural nurturers; men are natural leaders.
- Women don't need equal pay because they are supported by their husbands.
- Women who appear less feminine or reject advances from men are lesbians.
- Women with children are less devoted to their jobs.
- Men who are not aggressive and/or assertive are unmanly.
- Same-sex couples cannot make good parents.

### Gender stereotypes and self-concept

Gender stereotypes can undermine people's confidence and make them doubt their abilities. They can lower their sense of competence, reduce access to learning and prevent people from reaching their full potential. Self-stereotyping can also occur when people start thinking and acting like the stereotypes they hear. Go to the weblinks **Because why...let gender hinder our children's potential?** and **Because why...shouldn't boys dance?** in the Online Resources for more information.



weblink

## 2.5.3 Gender stereotypes and relationship behaviour

It's normal to hold expectations of ourselves, of other people and of relationships. The expectations people hold of you come from images they have of who they want you to be or how they want you to act. People hold images of many kinds of relationships and sometimes their expectations can be unfair.

For example, it's common to have images of what an intimate relationship is supposed to be like. These images influence how you treat your partner and how you expect to be treated. Gender stereotypes can create and reinforce gender inequality. This is when more is afforded to men than women and there's an unequal distribution of power, resources and opportunity between them in favour of men. Having fixed images of how people of different genders 'should' and 'shouldn't' behave can leave young people of all genders vulnerable and under pressure. This can create relationships that are unhealthy and that negatively affect people's safety, confidence and wellbeing. If traditional gender attitudes exist within sexual relationships (i.e. the male partner expects to be in control, has the power or puts his needs first), this can be a barrier to condom use or to consent.

Equal power for both partners encourages assertive communication. This helps people to be open about consent and condom use as well as who is organising contraception. No one person should be making all the decisions about contraception use in a respectful sexual relationship.

### DID YOU KNOW?

#### The Man Box report

The 2018 Man Box report studied attitudes to manhood and the behaviours of young Australian men aged 18 to 30. It revealed the social pressures that young Australian men experience to be a 'real man'. These social pressures affect their wellbeing, behaviours and the safety of our wider community. The report uses the term 'The Man Box' to describe the set of beliefs that place pressure on men to be tough, not show any emotions, be the breadwinner, always be in control, use violence to solve problems and have many sexual partners.

## 2.5.4 Abusive relationships

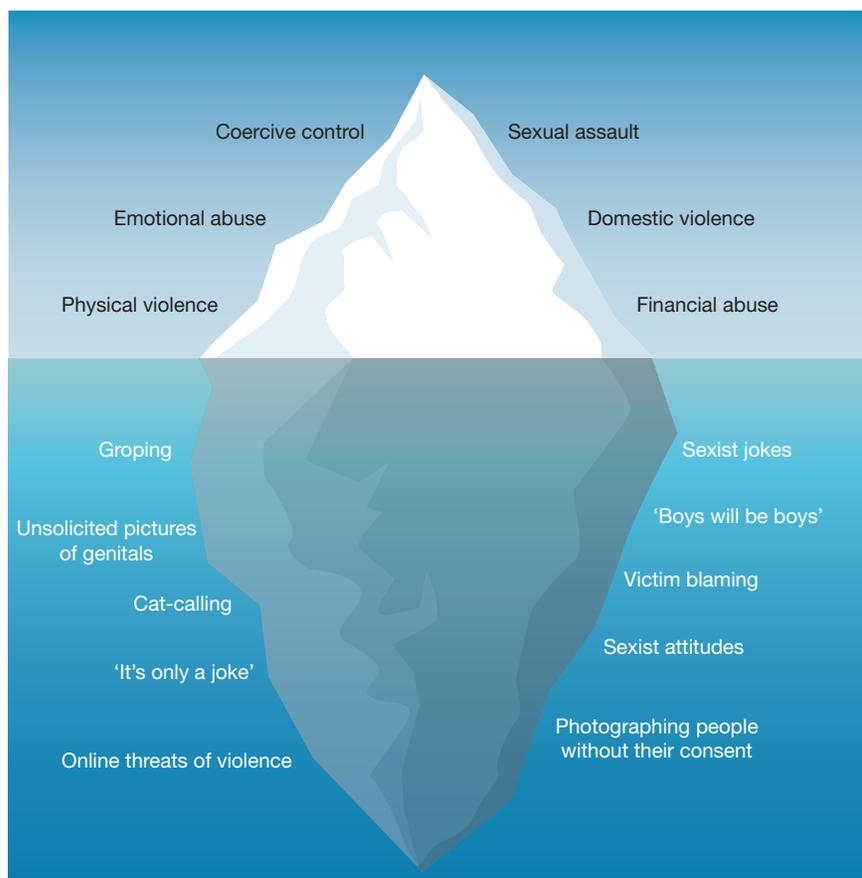
### The role of gender

It is important to state that not all men are violent and predatory, and women are not naturally victims. However, current data shows that issues of violence, such as sexual assault and intimate partner violence, stem from gender stereotypes and the imbalance of power they create in relationships.

### Violence against women

A UN Declaration states that 'violence against women is any act of gender-based violence that causes or could cause physical, sexual or psychological harm or suffering to women, including threats of harm or coercion, in public or in private life'.

**FIGURE 2.18** Gender-based violence can take many forms



We still see people condoning or excusing violence against women through comments such as ‘Boys will be boys’, or the shifting of blame to women with comments like ‘she asked for it dressed like that’.

Violence is also more common in relationships in which men control decision making and hold rigid ideas about what is acceptable behaviour for females. In Australia today, men still have greater control over power and resources, which can reinforce the message that women have lower social value and are less worthy of respect.

## Emotional abuse

Relationships are emotionally abusive when one person uses their power to try to control another person. Emotional abuse is usually a pattern of behaviour over time rather than an isolated incident. If you are in a relationship in which your friend or partner repeatedly displays the following behaviours, then the relationship may be emotionally abusive:

- Trying to control what you think and feel
- Telling you who you can and cannot see
- Telling you what you can and cannot wear
- Showing extreme jealousy
- Being possessive
- Not wanting you to have other friends
- Threatening to hurt themselves if you break up with them
- Using insults and frequent put-downs
- Making you feel guilty for things you are not responsible for.

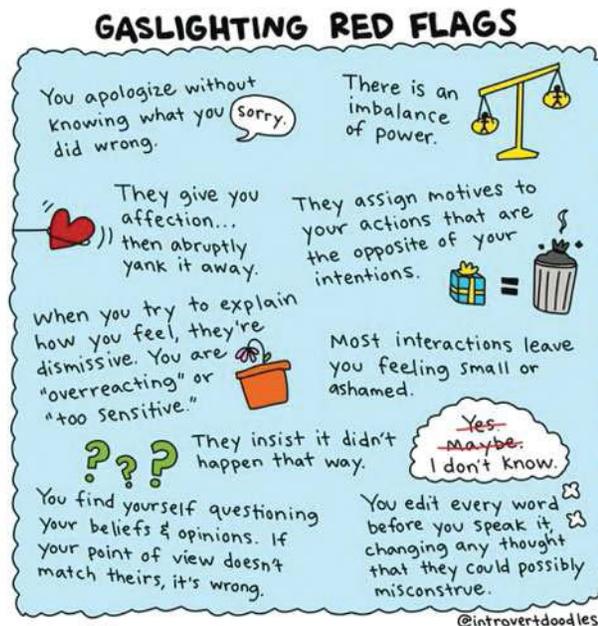
If you notice these kinds of behaviours in your relationship with your partner or with a friend, it is important to challenge the person in an assertive way as early as possible. Tell them you’re not happy with their behaviour and ask them to respect your rights in the relationship (see section 2.4.3).

## Gaslighting

One form of emotional abuse is called ‘**gaslighting**’. Gaslighting aims to trick people into not trusting their own thinking, emotions or experiences. People who gaslight others learn that the words they use can persuade and control others. In this way, they gain immense power in the relationship.

**gaslighting** a form of manipulation in abusive relationships in which a person creates a false narrative and makes the target of their gaslighting question their judgements and reality

**FIGURE 2.19** The use of power to control others in a relationship is a form of emotional abuse.

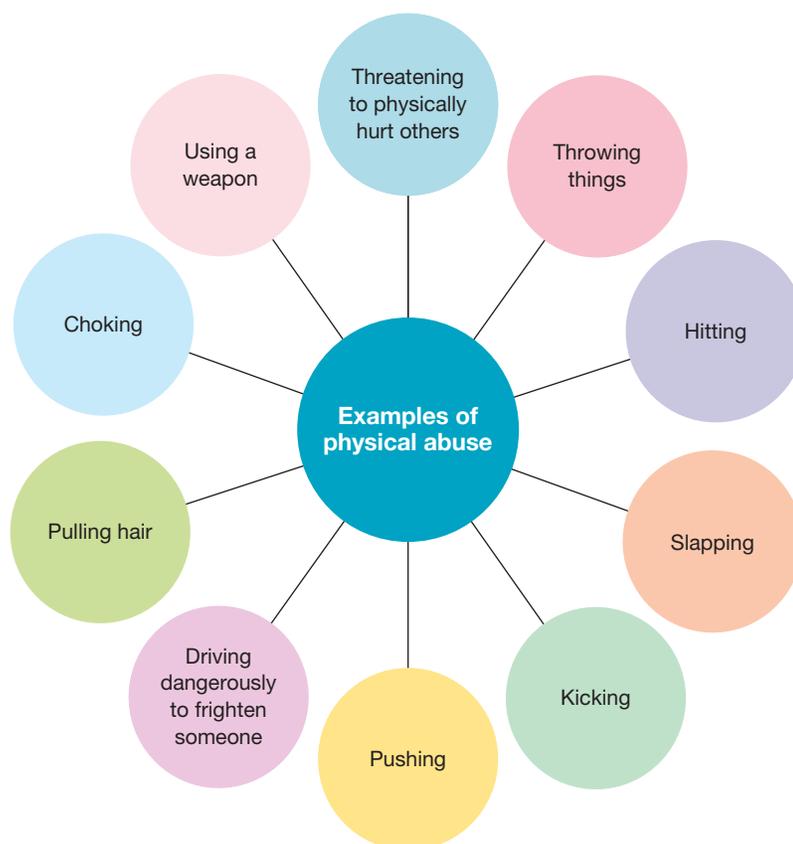


## Physical abuse

**Physical abuse** can include acts in which a person physically harms another, as well as when a person uses threatening actions to intimidate another person. Examples of physical abuse are shown in figure 2.20.

**physical abuse** using power to be physically violent towards another less powerful person

**FIGURE 2.20** Acts of physical harm are indicators of an unhealthy relationship.



## Sexual abuse

Sexual activity without consent is sexual abuse. **Consent** means a person freely agrees to participate in a sexual activity and understands what they are agreeing to. Consent is an essential foundation of sexual relationships and is needed for every sexual activity, every time. Consent must be clearly communicated. There can be no mystery or doubt. There are laws around who can consent and who can't. Consent can also be withdrawn at any time, even during a sexual activity. Continuing to act after consent has been withdrawn is sexual abuse. Any sexual activity without consent is against the law.

**Sexual abuse** can occur to anyone, regardless of gender, ethnicity or age. Child sexual abuse occurs when a person uses their power to involve a child or young person in sexual activity. People who sexually abuse may use:

- bribery
- threats
- trickery
- coercion
- force
- manipulation.

**consent** occurs when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen

**sexual abuse** using power to involve another person in sexual activity for which they have not given consent or were not able to give consent

Sexual abuse can include:

- suggestive behaviours or comments
- exposure
- viewing pornography
- fondling breasts or genitals
- masturbation
- oral sex
- penetration of the vagina or anus by a finger, penis or object.

Sexual abuse can have a devastating impact on the lives of children and young people. It always involves emotional abuse. Young people who are sexually abused need to remember that what has happened is not their fault. Telling someone who can provide help, such as a person in their support network, is an important step in stopping the abuse.

Kids Helpline is a valuable source of information and advice for young people on a range of issues, including consent.

### HEALTH FACT

In 2020, the top five reasons for young people contacting Kids Helpline were:

1. emotional wellbeing
2. family relationships
3. mental health concerns
4. friend/peer relationships
5. child abuse.

**Source:** Kids Helpline, Insights 2020, [www.kidshelpline.com.au](http://www.kidshelpline.com.au)

## Psychological abuse

**Harassment** is often thought of separately to abuse; however, both involve a more powerful person or group oppressing a less powerful person or group, often on the grounds of ‘difference’. These differences can be related to culture, ethnicity, gender, sexuality, ability or disability, religion, body size and physical appearance, age, marital status, parenting status or economic status.

**harassment** a kind of bullying; any form of behaviour that is not wanted, or is offensive, humiliating or intimidating

There are many types of bullying and harassment, including:

- physical (e.g. hitting, kicking, pinching)
- verbal (e.g. name-calling, teasing)
- psychological (e.g. standover tactics, threats)
- social (e.g. social exclusion, rumours, putdowns)
- sexual (e.g. physical, verbal or non-verbal sexual conduct)
- cyber (e.g. using the internet, texting, email and other digital technologies).

Harassment:

- can be done *directly* (e.g. face to face) or *indirectly* (via mobile phone or the internet)
- may be motivated by jealousy, distrust, fear, misunderstanding or a lack of knowledge
- can have an element of threat
- can continue over time and be premeditated.

**FIGURE 2.21** Everyone has the right to be free from harassment.



The Australian Human Rights Commission defines sexual harassment as any unwanted or unwelcome sexual behaviour that makes a person feel offended, humiliated or intimidated. There are laws against sexual harassment, but it continues to occur.

Sexual harassment may include:

- staring or leering
- unwelcome touching
- suggestive or insulting remarks
- sending sexually explicit emails or text messages
- inappropriate advances on social networking sites
- accessing sexually explicit internet sites.

Each person has the right to be free from harassment and we all have the responsibility to treat others how we would like to be treated. The principle of mutual respect is essential in maintaining healthy relationships.

## Homophobic and transphobic bullying

Most young people experience strong feelings or attractions for other people during adolescence. Some have these feelings and attractions for people of the same sex and identify as being gay or lesbian. Young people who are **same-sex attracted**, or who are thought to be same-sex attracted, are sometimes the targets of bullies and are abused and harassed.

**Homophobic bullying** involves discrimination against people who are, or who are thought to be, same-sex attracted. **Homophobia** is the fear or dislike of people who are homosexual (same-sex attracted). You are not born homophobic, just as you are not born racist. These are learned behaviours that are based on ignorance and prejudice.

**Transphobic bullying** is based on prejudice or negative attitudes, views or beliefs about transgender individuals. Transgender people do not have, or identify with, the same sex they were assigned at birth.

### How are homophobic and transphobic bullying different?

Homophobic bullying targets someone's sexual orientation (whether they are, or are perceived to be, gay, lesbian or bisexual), whereas transphobic bullying targets someone because of their gender identity (whether they identify with a sex other than the one they were assigned at birth) or because they do not 'conform' to traditional gender stereotypes.

It is important to recognise the difference between 'gender identity' and 'sexual orientation' because a person's gender identity does not tell us anything about their sexual orientation.

Sometimes it feels challenging to take action about harassment or gender-based violence. Some reasons people give for not acting include:

- being afraid you will get into trouble for asking for help
- being afraid someone will think you were in the wrong
- being afraid that people will think you brought it upon yourself
- being afraid that people will think you are lying.

Sometime people can also be unsure of helping others in this situation, as they are afraid the bully will turn on them too.

**same-sex attracted** people who are emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the same sex. They often identify themselves as being gay or lesbian.

**homophobic bullying** discriminating against people who are, or who are thought to be, same-sex attracted

**homophobia** an irrational fear, aversion to or discrimination against people who are homosexual or same-sex attracted. It can also refer to stigma arising from social ideologies about homosexuality.

**transphobic bullying** discriminating against individuals who are transgender; that is, individuals whose gender is not the same as, or who do not identify with, the sex they were assigned at birth

## 2.5.5 Seeking help and support networks

No matter who you are, there will be times in your life when things seem too hard, or you don't know what to do to resolve a conflict or get out of an unsafe situation. Everyone needs to seek help at some stage, and it's OK to ask for help when you need it.

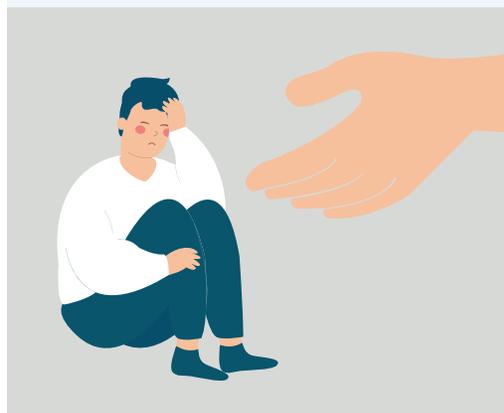
Sometimes seeking help can be mistakenly seen as a sign of weakness. However, seeking help is really a sign of strength because it involves you identifying a need, clearly expressing the need to others and communicating how they can help you meet the need.

Developing a support network is important. This can be face-to-face or an online community. The purpose is to give you an inclusive space, with people who can provide you with advice, guidance and resources. A support network can help you take action.

The benefits of a support network include:

- building connections and relationships
- having someone to listen to you
- being able to share your thoughts and feelings
- having another perspective on a situation
- having another person's opinion and life experiences to help you sort out your own thoughts and feelings
- having access to advice to help you solve your problems
- having someone to help you find experts such as counsellors or youth workers.

**FIGURE 2.22** Everyone needs a helping hand sometimes.



### 2.5 ACTIVITIES

#### 1 Class emotional bank account

Develop a class bank account of positive relationship interactions/primers.

- Design a bank note, leaving a space for a comment to be added.
- Each of you will have your own bank note to use when you notice another member of the class displaying positive relationship behaviour. When this occurs, write down the behaviour in the space on the note and deliver it to the class emotional bank account (a box in the classroom). You can do this at any time during the class and this activity can be carried over a few classes or even the whole term.
- The teacher will read out the bank notes in the class emotional bank account at a time that they determine is appropriate.
- Examples of comments include:
  - praising someone for displaying the courage to speak in front of the class
  - thanking a class member for voluntarily helping with another student's work
  - complimenting someone for using good listening skills to show interest in a conversation.
- It would be great if the teacher could also develop a bank note of their own.  
Option: Each student may develop more than one bank note or photocopy their design to be used on a few occasions.

Note: The comments will only have a positive effect if they are genuine.

#### 2 Fear of social rejection

Being rejected is the opposite of being accepted. Use the **Kids Helpline: Social anxiety** weblink in the Online Resources to view websites that offer handy hints on ways to deal with being anxious about social rejection.

#### 3 Is it abuse?

*Rena is an excellent student. She is happy at school. She works hard at her schoolwork and always feels prepared for assessments. Rena is part of the school soccer team and the Rainbow Alliance. She has a supportive group of friends who she feels comfortable spending time with. It is different for Rena at home, though. Rena's parents are*

never happy with her school reports. They think that Rena attending the Rainbow Alliance is a waste of time and they have made her stop going. This has made Rena feel hurt and disappointed. Although her parents watch her soccer games, they are always critical of her play. Rena is not allowed to have friends over after school or on the weekends. Rena feels lonely, isolated and unhappy at home and feels anxious when it's time to leave school at the end of the day or for the weekend.

- a. Is Rena experiencing abuse? If so, what type?
- b. What are the warning signs for Rena?

#### 4 Appropriate use of personal power

Cigarette packages warn people of the dangers of smoking. Write or visually design a warning to tell people about the dangers of stereotyping.

#### 5 Gaslighting

Create a Y chart to show what gaslighting looks like, sounds like and feels like. Use the **Y chart** worksheet in the Online Resources to help you get started.

#### 6 It's good to be me

Use the **ReachOut: Self talk** weblink in the Online Resources to help you identify some ways that positive self-talk can assist you to develop your self-esteem. How could this reverse the effects of emotional abuse?

doc-39396

weblink

## 2.5 Exercise

### 2.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 6

##### ■ LEVEL 2

7, 8

##### ■ LEVEL 3

5, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** What factors make a relationship negative and/or abusive? Select all possible answers from the options below.
  - A. Controlling behaviour
  - B. Insults
  - C. Sexual or physical abuse
  - D. Feeling secure and safe
2. **MC** Who can become a victim of abuse?
  - A. Children
  - B. Women
  - C. Men
  - D. Anyone
3. **MC** Identify two examples of emotional abuse.
  - A. Trying to control what you think and feel
  - B. Being possessive
  - C. Giving you compliments
  - D. Introducing you to all their friends

4. Match the type of abuse with the correct description.

Type of abuse	Description
a. Emotional	A. When a person physically harms or uses threatening actions to intimidate another person
b. Sexual	B. When a person uses power to try to control another person
c. Physical	C. Activity such as touching and kissing without the agreement and understanding of both people

5. Teenagers can sometimes be drawn into unhealthy relationships because of fear of social rejection. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **List** features of an unhealthy relationship.
7. **Explain** the idea of ‘an emotional bank account’.
8. **State** three emotions that might be warning signs of an abusive relationship.
9. **Explain** how gender stereotypes contribute to harassment.
10. **Identify** the barriers to stopping or reporting harassment or gender-based violence. **Suggest** some strategies to overcome these barriers.

## LESSON

### 2.6 Consent and being empowered

#### LEARNING INTENTIONS

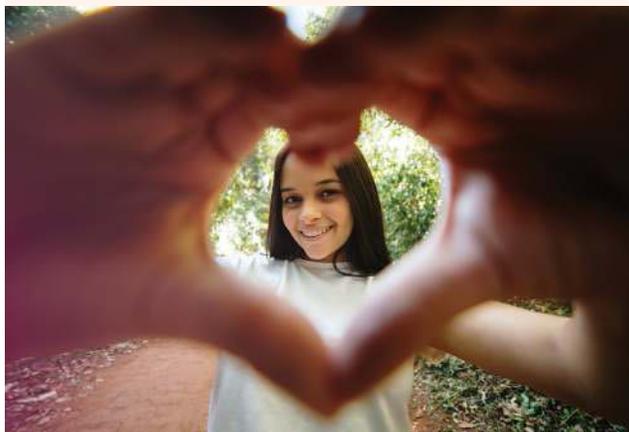
- Understand strategies for assertive communication.
- Examine the roles that respect, consent and empathy play in developing respectful relationships.
- Propose and practise strategies for giving and gaining consent respectfully.
- Identify online and social protocols to enhance relationships with others and protect wellbeing.

#### ENGAGE

‘No one can make you feel inferior without your consent’ — Eleanor Roosevelt (Former First Lady of the United States).

In small groups, talk about this idea. Think about concepts such as self-esteem, dignity, being assertive and being in control of your life.

**FIGURE 2.23** Everyone deserves to feel respected and valued.



## 2.6.1 Communicating assertively

doc-17179

Having a balance of give and take in relationships involves taking responsibility for your own feelings and needs while still allowing close connections and respecting the needs of others. Ideally, everyone would grow up valuing everyone else's needs as equal to their own. Unfortunately, this does not always happen. For this reason, it is essential to be assertive about your own needs in a relationship.

Being **assertive** is not about being **aggressive**. It is feeling confident to share your point of view and stay true to your values. A willingness to compromise strengthens the bond between people. However, if you are making compromises too frequently and being **non-assertive** in your communication, then you may be neglecting your needs.

**assertive** expressing your viewpoint in a way that is respectful and non-threatening

**aggressive** expressing your viewpoint in ways that deny another person's right to be treated with respect

**non-assertive** avoiding expressing your viewpoint because of a lack of self-confidence and a belief that someone else's viewpoint is more important than yours

**TABLE 2.4** Examples of assertive, aggressive and non-assertive communication

ASSERTIVE I win – You win	AGGRESSIVE I win – You lose	NON-ASSERTIVE I lose – You win
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Everyone's needs are important</li> <li>• Actively listening</li> <li>• Compromising</li> <li>• Standing up for yourself</li> <li>• Being clear and confident</li> <li>• Being resilient</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• My needs matter more</li> <li>• Shouting, talking over others</li> <li>• Dominating a conversation</li> <li>• Stating opinions too forcefully</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• My needs don't matter</li> <li>• Not speaking up</li> <li>• Trying to avoid conflict</li> <li>• Not saying what you think</li> <li>• Holding back</li> </ul>

### Steps to being assertive

Why isn't everyone assertive? Part of the reason is based on our personality. Another part is because we pick up habits from what we see or experience others doing around us.

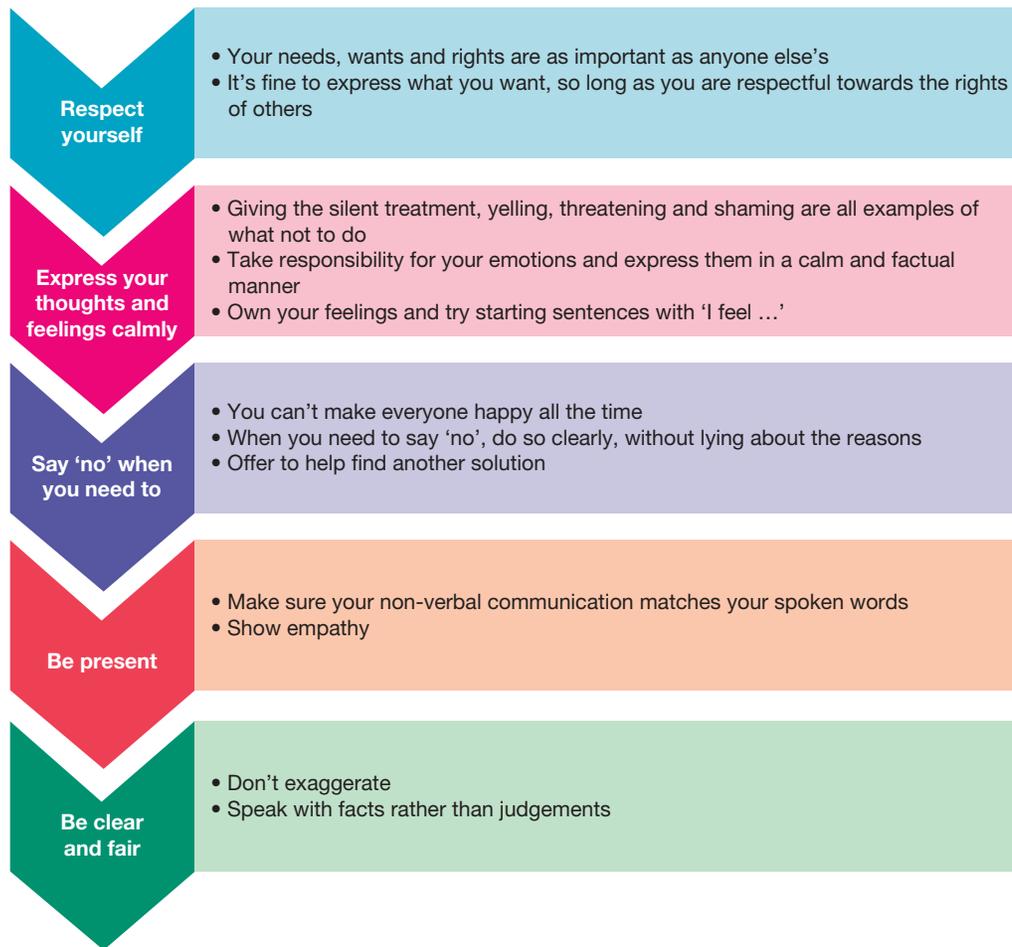
Some people are non-assertive because they lack confidence in themselves or worry too much about pleasing others, being liked or fitting in. They may feel sensitive to criticism or have been hurt in the past when their ideas were rejected.

Some people are aggressive because they lack listening skills and focus too much on getting their needs met and their opinions across. They may not respect other people's views or needs.

**FIGURE 2.24** A technique for assertive communication



**FIGURE 2.25** Steps to assertive communication



## 2.6.2 Consent



Going out with someone or being in a relationship can make you feel many different things, such as happiness, nervousness, excitement and love. Sometimes it can also be confusing, especially when it comes to intimacy and sex. There are no laws about when you can start to have a relationship with someone but there are laws about when you can start to have sex.

### Consent in sexual relationships

Consent is when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen. In a romantic relationship, consent means that everyone involved in a sexual encounter is of legal age and wants to participate. They don't feel pressured, forced or threatened, and they can change their mind at any time.

The law in Australia sets clear age limits for when you can legally have sex. This is called the age of consent. The legal age for consensual sex varies between 16 and 17 years old across Australia.

Asking for and obtaining consent shows respect for you and your partner. It eliminates the power that one partner might feel over the other. It is important to remember that your body and your sexuality belong only to you.

Consent is an essential part of safe and respectful sexual relationships. It's important that you are sure that the person you're with is happy and comfortable because sexual activity without consent (anything from touching and kissing to penetration) is against the law. The emotional consequences of sexual assault can last a lifetime.

Kids Helpline lists the following features that show what consent is when a person agrees to any form of sexual activity.

**FIGURE 2.26** Consent is...



Informed consent cannot be given if:

- you are passed out or unconscious due to drugs, alcohol or a violent assault
- you are asleep
- you are conscious, but you are unable to say what you do or don't want due to the effects of alcohol or drugs
- the other person tricks you into thinking they are someone else
- the other person makes you feel too scared to say no.

## DID YOU KNOW?

**Sexting** (or sending a nude) refers to the sending and receiving of sexually explicit or sexually suggestive texts or images via phone or internet. Sexts might get sent to the wrong person by accident or they can be shared with other people without your permission. They can be used to bully if they are posted online to try to hurt or embarrass someone.

**sexting** sending or receiving sexually explicit or sexually suggestive texts or images via phone or the internet

Sexting is a crime if the photo includes a person under the age of 18. It's never OK for someone to pressure you into sending a nude — you can say 'no'. For people under 18, sexting without consent is illegal.

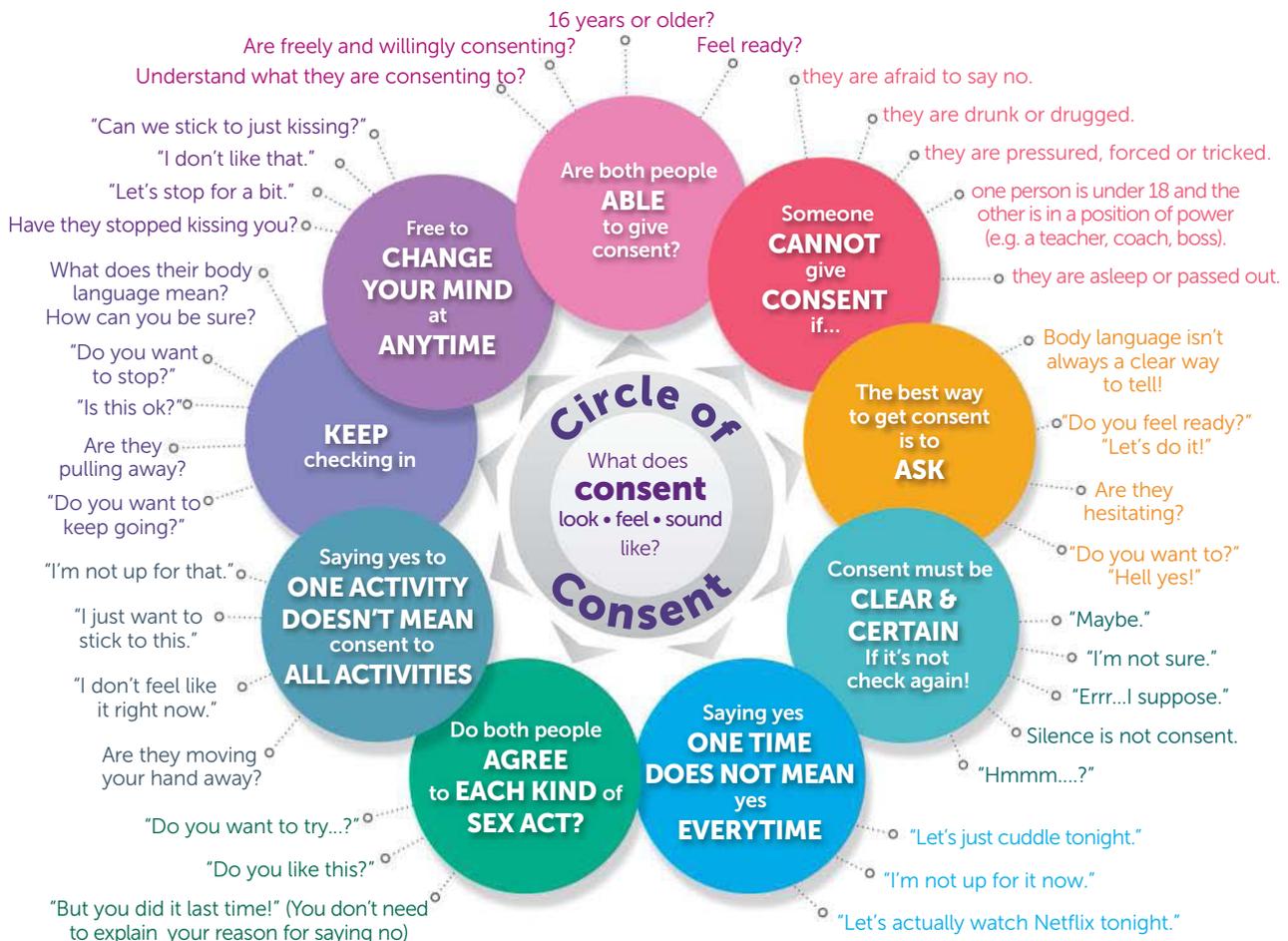
## 2.6.3 Giving and gaining consent

Communication is the key to giving and gaining consent. One of the best ways to determine if someone is uncomfortable with any situation, especially a sexual one, is to ask them. Use clear verbal communication.

Questions you could ask to gain consent include:

- 'Is there anything that you don't want to do?'
- 'Are you happy with this?'
- 'Are you comfortable?'
- 'Do you want to stop?'
- 'Do you want to go further?'

**FIGURE 2.27** Safety and sexual health require informed consent and respect for personal boundaries.



**Source:** Government of Western Australia Department of Health — Talk soon. Talk often

Non-verbal communication also needs to be considered when seeking consent. The look on someone’s face and their body language can communicate how they feel, and often have more meaning than the words they say.

If someone is uncomfortable with what you are doing together, they may:

- push you away
- have an uncomfortable or distressed facial expression
- turn away from you or hide their face
- stiffen their body
- not respond to your touch.

Figure 2.27 outlines the basics of consent and questions to ask yourself.

## 2.6.4 Being safe and respectful online

Feeling like you belong in an online group can be just as important and rewarding as feeling accepted in a face-to-face friendship group. We can use social media to connect with friends and family in a way that can deepen relationships and provide support when we’re unable to be together. With simple ways for others to ‘like’ your posts, social media can have a positive impact on your emotions. However, your self-image can also be affected negatively if the online community is critical of what you post.

**TABLE 2.5** Positives and negatives of using social networking sites

Positives	Negatives
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A place to chat to friends</li> <li>• Build extensive social groupings</li> <li>• Allows for friendships to be developed the world over</li> <li>• Easy to share information and common interests</li> <li>• Keeps you updated on events</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It can be addictive</li> <li>• Anyone might look at your profile</li> <li>• Employers can search for and find you</li> <li>• Faceless bullying</li> <li>• Used at the expense of developing face-to-face friendships</li> <li>• Permanent digital footprint</li> </ul>

### Your digital footprint

Just like you leave a trail of footprints behind you when walking on sand, your **digital footprint** is the electronic evidence that you leave online when you use a digital device. Every time you go online, you are leaving behind a trail of evidence.

**digital footprint** information about you that exists on the internet as a result of your online activity

### Online and social protocols

Like respectful face-to-face relationships, online relationships have rights and responsibilities. Going online makes you a digital citizen. In particular, you are responsible for behaving ethically and respectfully and protecting your own and others’ reputation and privacy. When interacting with people online, think about how your communication can impact on others.

Protocols to follow that will make your online relationships respectful and safe relate to both privacy and behaviour.

Privacy:

- Keep a list of your online accounts.
- Remember that once you share a message, photo or video online, you may not be able to control where it goes or how long it stays online.
- Don’t share your personal information.

- Think before you share something.
- Make sure that only friends you know face-to-face can see what you post by making your accounts private.
- Respect the privacy of others.
- Take steps to avoid viruses and scams.
- Be careful who you trust. Don't 'friend' random people or allow people you don't know to 'follow' your social media accounts, and avoid strangers online. Not everyone is who they say they are.

#### Behaviours:

- Think about how your communication can impact on others.
- Consider how you would feel if someone posted a negative comment on something important to you.
- Ensure posts are free from hateful comments, opinions or gossip.
- Show empathy and appropriate reactions to others to avoid miscommunication.
- Check with reliable sources to distinguish between real and fake information.
- Treat other internet users with respect and avoid inappropriate behaviour.
- Understand the consequences of cyberbullying.
- Avoid too much screen time.



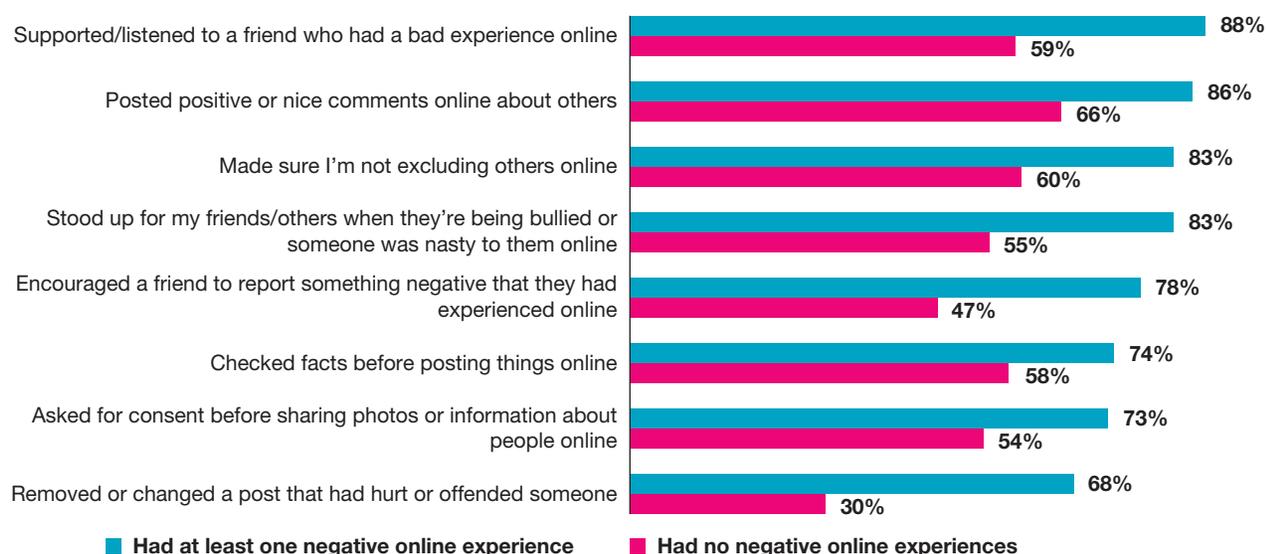
## 2.6.5 Cyberbullying, grooming and image-based abuse

In 2021, the eSafety Commissioner produced a report *'The digital lives of Aussie teens'*. The research is based on a survey of 627 teens aged 12–17 in September 2020. The results below show the percentages for each question. Results from the young people surveyed indicate that even though Australian teens face online safety challenges, they are acting to build a safer and more inclusive online environment. The findings show that young people who had experienced at least one negative online experience were more able to be supportive of their peers than those who had not had negative online experiences.

They were more likely to:

- support or listen to a friend who had a bad experience (88% of those who had a negative online experience compared with 59% who hadn't)
- post positive/nice comments about others (86% compared with 66%)
- make sure that peers are not excluded online (83% compared with 60%).

**FIGURE 2.28** Positive online behaviours young people are taking to create a safe and inclusive online community



Personal strategies to deal with cyberbullying include:



- Don't respond — that's what someone who bullies wants.
- Try to stop checking posts.
- Block the person who is doing the bullying.
- Keep a record of threatening or intimidating messages or take screenshots.
- Contact the police about any threatening or intimidating messages.
- Report the person to the social media platform.
- Report them to eSafety.
- Check your privacy settings.
- Talk to someone you trust about the situation.

Helping a friend who is being bullied could involve:



- going from being a bystander to an upstander
- messaging your friend to see if they are OK
- standing up to the person doing the bullying if you feel confident. Give them a 'thumbs down'!
- getting your friend some extra help from a counsellor or support service
- helping your friend report the bullying.



Complete the **Say NO to bullying** and **Establishing a support network** worksheets in the Online Resources to learn more.

## 2.6.6 Grooming



In online **grooming**, a person builds an emotional connection with you and then uses that connection to pressure or trick you into doing things such as:

- having sexual conversations online or by text message
- sending naked images of yourself, which is sometimes called sexting
- sending sexual videos of yourself
- doing something sexual live on webcam
- meeting them in person.

**grooming** building a relationship with a child in order to sexually abuse them

Online grooming can occur on:

- social networking websites
- instant messaging and live streaming apps
- photo sharing apps and sites, like Instagram
- chat rooms
- dating apps
- online gaming sites.

Online grooming is wrong and against the law.

Be suspicious if an online 'friend' does any of the following:

- asks a lot of questions about personal information soon after meeting
- starts asking you for favours and does things in return
- wants to keep the relationship secret and asks for it to be something 'special' just between the two of you
- contacts you frequently
- asks you things such as who else uses your device or computer or which room you use it in
- compliments you on your appearance or body or asks things like, 'have you ever been kissed?'
- insists on meeting. Tries to make you feel guilty or even threatens you if you are unwilling.

**FIGURE 2.29** You never really know who you are talking with online.



## TAKING ACTION TO PROTECT YOURSELF

It's not easy to know if someone's trying to groom you. If you think you or a friend are being groomed, don't worry about getting into trouble — you haven't done anything wrong. Know that there is support available if you need it and there are things you can do to protect yourself, such as:

1. Ask the person to stop
2. Tell an adult you trust
3. Report it.

Kids Helpline is open 24/7 for a call, email or talk through WebChat about online safety and issues such as sexting and online grooming.

## 2.6.7 Image-based abuse

**Image-based abuse** involves threatening to take or share a nude or sexual image of another person. It is against the law. A person using image-based abuse may share (or threaten to share) intimate photos or videos of a person without their permission so that others, including the person's friends and family, will see them. They may also encourage others to post abusive comments about the image. Blackmail could also be used; they may ask for money to not share the intimate images.

**image-based abuse** when a nude or sexual image of a person is taken or shared without that person's permission

Sometimes the images may be taken with permission in an intimate relationship. It becomes abuse when there is no consent for images to be taken or shared, or when the abuser threatens to share the images with others. Image-based abuse can also be called 'revenge pornography'. This is how it may be spoken about in the news or media, but revenge is not always the reason behind image-based abuse.

Some examples of image-based abuse include:

- taking, sharing or posting a nude or sexual image of another person without their permission
- photoshopping a person's image onto a sexually explicit photograph or video
- taking an image of a woman's breasts or cleavage without her permission
- taking an image up a woman's skirt without her permission
- secretly filming or sharing consensual sexual activity or a sexual assault.

## TAKING ACTION TO PROTECT YOURSELF

Most Australian states have laws that make it illegal to:

- record or capture intimate images without permission
- distribute intimate images without permission
- threaten to record or distribute intimate images.

The eSafety website has the following advice:

1. If you find an intimate image of yourself online, you can contact the website or the social media service and ask to have the images removed.
2. Some sites have an image-removal request form that you can fill out.
3. Facebook uses photo-matching software to detect and prevent the image from emerging again on Facebook after you make a formal complaint. You can also request that a search engine (e.g. Google) has content involving you taken out of internet searches.

The Office of the eSafety Commissioner website provides support and resources on image-based abuse including:

- how to report an image to a social media service or website to request that your image be removed
- information on collecting evidence of the abuse for the police
- how to find and delete online images
- getting the image removed from social media or an app
- getting the image removed from a website.

Image-based abuse is a crime and can be reported to the police. See the weblinks **eSafety: My nudes have been shared** and **eSafety: Unwanted contact** in the Online Resources for more information.

## 2.6 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Communication roleplays – non-assertive, aggressive and assertive

Learning to be assertive in a way that means that everyone's needs are understood and valued equally is an essential skill in developing positive relationships.

Work in groups of three to act out the following roleplay scenarios and complete the discussion questions.

**a.** Non-assertive roleplay scenario

Act out the scene demonstrating non-assertive communication. One student will be communicating non-assertively and the other two students should be persistent but not overly aggressive in their communication.

**Scenario:** *Two classmates are pestering a third classmate to let them cheat from his/her paper during a test. The third classmate does not want to let them cheat and responds in a non-assertive manner to the other two classmates' demands to let them cheat.*

- i.** What did the non-assertive communication look like, sound like and feel like?
- ii.** Was there a positive or negative outcome? Why?
- iii.** How did the non-assertive student feel during the scenario?
- iv.** How did the other two students feel during the scenario?

**b.** Aggressive roleplay scenario

Act out the scene demonstrating aggressive communication.

**Scenario:** *Two classmates are pestering a third classmate to let them cheat paper during a test. The third classmate does not want to let them cheat and responds aggressively towards the other two classmates' requests to let them cheat. The two other classmates become aggressive in response.*

- i.** Why don't aggressive forms of communication work?
- ii.** Why do you think aggressive communication causes an aggressive response?
- iii.** Was there a positive or negative outcome in the scenario? Why?
- iv.** How did each of the students feel during the scenario?

**c.** Assertive roleplay scenario

Act out the following scene demonstrating assertive communication.

**Scenario:** *Two classmates are pestering a third classmate to let them cheat paper during a test. The third classmate does not want to let them cheat and responds assertively to the other two classmates' requests to let them cheat. The other two classmates back down in response.*

- i.** Was the outcome of this scenario positive or negative? Why?
- ii.** What are the benefits of using assertive communication to express your point of view?

**d.** Think about the following scenarios and identify the most effective way to respond to each situation in order to achieve a positive outcome.

- *Your friends are trying to get you to go to a party that you don't really want to go to. They insist that if you are a true friend, you will go. How will you handle this situation?*
- *You agree to meet some of your friends at the train station in the morning to travel together to school. You wait for 20 minutes after the agreed meeting time. You come to the conclusion that they are not coming, catch the next train and end up being late for school. How will you deal with this situation when you see your friends at school during the day?*
- *Your friends are being particularly mean to another student who is not part of your friendship group. You feel uncomfortable with their behaviour and want them to stop. How will you negotiate this?*

### 2 What does consent look and sound like?

Use the information in figure 2.27 to roleplay with a partner what consent looks and sounds like.

### 3 Giving and gaining consent

*Jacinta is 14 and in secondary school. Tomas is 18 and works with Jacinta's father. Tomas came to know Jacinta when he visited her house to help her father. Tomas and Jacinta have started meeting away from her house after school. Sometimes Tomas gives Jacinta a lift home. Recently he has started telling her how much he loves her and saying that he really wants to have sex with her. Jacinta is unsure about her feelings for Tomas or about having sex. Tomas has asked her again several times.*



- a. With a partner, discuss the behaviour and feelings of Jacinta and Tomas in the scenario.
- b. Do you think the Kids Helpline guidelines in figure 2.26 for consent are met? Why or why not?  
What can someone do to be sure that a person who is consenting to sex is doing so freely and in an informed way?

#### 4 Your digital footprint

- a. Use the **Digital footprint** weblink in the Online Resources. Watch the videos and write down the important insights that you identify. Discuss everyone's insights as a class.
- b. Ask yourself these questions in relation to your digital footprint.
  - i. What might somebody think about me from the information I have posted?
  - ii. How might this information affect me in the future, such as when I am applying for a job?

#### 5 Acting on cyberbullying

Use **The cyberbullying virus** and **Think U Know** weblinks in the Online Resources to watch a video and conduct research. In groups of three, discuss the following questions and write as many detailed responses as possible.

- a. Identify and list the pros and cons of social networking.
- b. Identify the important things you should think about before publishing your profile on a social networking site.
- c. Describe the types of content you can put on a social networking site.
- d. Consider what you should think about before uploading content.
- e. Explain what you can do if you experience bullying online or find that people are misusing your content.
- f. A friend you have known since primary school posts some intimate photos on their social networking account. They suggest that you do the same and they keep asking you repeatedly. You are unsure and are worried that your parents will find out or see the images.

With a partner, role play how you could respond to this peer pressure to be involved in sexting. Things you could include in the role play are:

- what might happen to these photos if people at school discover them
- the legal implications of sexting when you are both under 18 years of age
- potential legal issues.

#### 6 Prevention strategies

Access the **Staying safe online** weblink in the Online Resources to learn more about staying safe online.

Consider the types of problems that could arise when you and your friends interact using the internet. Create a class list of problems. Think of some solutions or strategies for dealing with each of the problems.

#### 7 Online protocols

Use the **eSafety: Young people** weblink in the Online Resources to access the keywords filter.

- a. With a partner, apply a keyword filter to access advice on one particular aspect of life online.
- b. Create a fact sheet, flyer, Instagram post or similar to explain an aspect of staying safe online and actions to help you stay safe.



weblink



weblink



weblink



weblink

## 2.6 Exercise

### 2.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 5, 8, 9

##### LEVEL 2

3, 4, 7, 10

##### LEVEL 3

6

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. Match the style of communication with the correct description.

Style of communication	Description
a. Assertive	A. Avoiding expressing your viewpoint because of a lack of self-confidence and a belief that someone else's viewpoint is more important than yours
b. Aggressive	B. Expressing your viewpoint in a way that is respectful and non-threatening
c. Non-assertive	C. Expressing your viewpoint in ways that deny another person's right to be treated with respect

2. **MC** When should you ask for consent?
  - A. The first time you have sex
  - B. Every time you have sex
  - C. The first time you have sex with someone new
  - D. Every once in a while
3. Sexual activity without consent is against the law. True or false?
4. Anything you say or type online becomes public knowledge and stays online forever, even if you believe you have deleted it. True or false?
5. Online relationships have rights and responsibilities just like face-to-face relationships do. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Explain** the difference between being assertive, aggressive and non-assertive in a relationship.
7. **Explain** what you think consent means.
8. **Describe** three things that consent sounds like and three things it doesn't sound like.
9.
  - a. **Consider** what things you should think about before publishing your profile and/or image online.
  - b. **Consider** what types of content you can put on your profile page.
  - c. One of the most important things you can do to protect yourself on social networking sites is to learn how to use privacy settings. **Describe** where the privacy settings are on a social networking site of your choice.
10. **List** and **identify** two important things you can do to protect your online privacy.

# LESSON

## 2.7 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 2.7.1 What have I learned?

- Emotions influence the way we see people and experiences. They determine the positive and negative memories that we attach to a person, experience or relationship.
- Connecting with others and building strong respectful relationship networks improve our wellbeing and our sense of belonging.
- A range of personal and sociocultural factors affect how we relate to others, what emotions we feel and how we express our thoughts and feelings in relationships.
- When we can regulate our emotions, we are better able to cope with stress and be more resilient.
- The way we relate to and communicate with others depends on the type of relationships we share.
- Being in a respectful relationship means that the opinions of both people are valued and there is mutual respect for each other.
- A balance of 'give and take' is essential to maintaining a respectful and meaningful relationship.
- Relationships can be unhealthy, destructive and have a detrimental effect on your overall health and wellbeing.
- It is important to stay true to your values and morals.
- It is important to be able to identify when a relationship is becoming unhealthy.
- Consent is when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen.
- It's important that you are sure that the person you're with is happy and comfortable because sexual activity without consent (anything from touching and kissing to penetration) is against the law. The emotional consequences of sexual assault can last a lifetime.
- One of the best ways to determine if someone is uncomfortable with any situation, especially a sexual one, is to ask them.
- Bullying and harassment can happen at any time, anywhere and to anyone. Both bullying and harassment involve one person exercising their power over another.
- Everyone has a right to feel safe at school and your school has a responsibility to maintain a safe and supportive environment. Everyone within the school community needs to work together to ensure that everyone feels safe.
- A support network is an inclusive space with people who can provide you with advice, guidance and resources. Support networks can be face-to-face or online.
- Social networking sites enable you to make positive connections with many people quickly. However, they can also easily create opportunities for social rejection and bullying.
- Being a digital citizen gives you the responsibility to behave ethically and respectfully, and protect your own and others' reputation and privacy.
- Every time you go online, you leave behind a digital footprint that can be traced.
- Grooming and image-based abuse are against the law. There are ways to get support if you or someone you know is experiencing grooming or image-based abuse.

## ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- What factors affect our emotions and how can we manage them?
- What role do respect, consent and empathy have in respectful relationships?
- How do gender stereotypes influence our relationships?

Evaluate your initial responses to these essential questions now that you have studied the topic.

## Resources

 **Interactivity** Crossword (int-8914)

## 2.7.2 Key terms

**active listening** the ability to engage completely with the speaker, understand their message, comprehend the information, respond thoughtfully and recall specific details

**aggressive** expressing your viewpoint in ways that deny another person's right to be treated with respect

**assertive** expressing your viewpoint in a way that is respectful and non-threatening

**assumption** something that is accepted as true before one gathers any proof that it is so

**belonging** a sense of knowing where you fit and having meaningful relationships

**consent** occurs when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen

**digital footprint** information about you that exists on the internet as a result of your online activity

**diversity** the broad range of differences that exist between people and communities, including in terms of gender, ethnicity, culture, socio-economic status, age, religion, ability and sexuality

**emotional intelligence** the awareness of and ability to control and express our emotions with empathy towards others

**emotional regulation** understanding which emotion you are feeling and when, and expressing it in an appropriate way for the situation

**emotional wellbeing** the ability to understand and accept your feelings and manage emotional challenges for your own happiness and self-esteem

**emotions** strong feelings

**gaslighting** a form of manipulation in abusive relationships in which a person creates a false narrative and makes the target of their gaslighting question their judgements and reality

**gendered expectations** how we are expected to act, speak, dress and conduct ourselves based upon our assigned sex

**grooming** building a relationship with a child in order to sexually abuse them

**harassment** a kind of bullying; any form of behaviour that is not wanted, or is offensive, humiliating or intimidating

**homophobia** an irrational fear, aversion to or discrimination against people who are homosexual or same-sex attracted. It can also refer to stigma arising from social ideologies about homosexuality.

**homophobic bullying** discriminating against people who are, or who are thought to be, same-sex attracted

**image-based abuse** when a nude or sexual image of a person is taken or shared without that person's permission

**need** something that is required

**non-assertive** avoiding expressing your viewpoint because of a lack of self-confidence and a belief that someone else's viewpoint is more important than yours

**physical abuse** using power to be physically violent towards another less powerful person

**power** the ability to do something or make something happen in a relationship

**resilience** the ability to recover or bounce back from challenges and/or difficulties

**respect** recognising and appreciating the differences between people and treating them fairly

**responsibilities** your obligations; for example, you have a responsibility not to harm other people

**rights** something that everyone should have; for example, everyone has the right to feel safe

**same-sex attracted** people who are emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the same sex. They often identify themselves as being gay or lesbian.

**sexting** sending or receiving sexually explicit or sexually suggestive texts or images via phone or the internet  
**sexual abuse** using power to involve another person in sexual activity for which they have not given consent or were not able to give consent  
**social network** the social relationships an individual has developed  
**social rejection** occurs when an individual is deliberately excluded from a relationship or group interaction  
**stereotype** a set of characteristics typically used to categorise a group of people  
**stereotyping** where a set of characteristics is used to categorise a group of people  
**the magic ratio of 5:1** for every one negative interaction or feeling between people, there must be five positive interactions or feelings for the relationship to be positive and in balance  
**transphobic bullying** discriminating against individuals who are transgender; that is, individuals whose gender is not the same as, or who do not identify with, the sex they were assigned at birth

## 2.7 Exercise

### 2.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

##### ■ LEVEL 2

11, 12, 14, 16

##### ■ LEVEL 3

13, 15, 17, 18, 19,  
20

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. In most cases, family relationships are dependable and trustworthy.	
2. Young people always prefer to share information about themselves with adults rather than their peers.	
3. Feeling connected and supported by positive peers and adults is essential to your overall wellbeing.	
4. The way you relate and communicate with everyone is the same.	
5. Giving a conversation your full attention and concentrating on what the other person is saying shows good listening skills.	
6. A positive relationship is one in which the rights and responsibilities of each person are recognised and appreciated.	
7. Assertive communication is all about making compromises.	
8. The fear of social rejection is strong in adolescents because their relationships are essential to their wellbeing and growth into adulthood.	
9. Just as respectful relationships that are conducted face-to-face have rights and responsibilities, so too do those conducted online.	
10. The eSafety website has actions to follow for online personal safety against grooming and image-based abuse.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Describe** the characteristics of a respectful relationship.
12. **Outline** what your rights and responsibilities are in your relationships.
13. **Describe** how we can express our emotions to manage differences in a relationship.
14. **Identify** some effective ways to communicate with and relate to others.
15. **Explain** what the effects are on people who experience abuse in relationships.
16. **Describe** what types of actions are considered to be bullying or harassment.
17. **Outline** what consent looks like.
18. **Compare** the difference between grooming and image-based abuse.
19. **Explain** the value of assertive communication.
20. **Explain** the protocols you can use to stay safe online.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign  
unique tests and exams



Access quarantined  
tests and assessments



Track your  
students' results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# 3 Adolescence — changes and strategies

## LESSON SEQUENCE

3.1 Overview .....	93
3.2 Physical changes .....	94
3.3 Social and emotional changes .....	106
3.4 Intimate relationships .....	115
3.5 Accessing health information and services .....	127
3.6 Rites of passage for adolescents .....	134
3.7 Review .....	140

**FIGURE 3.1** Adolescence is a time of many changes and challenges. Support from friends and family can help you during this time.



# LESSON

## 3.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 3.1.1 A time of change

Adolescence is a time of rapid growth and change. The range of changes and when they occur will differ from person to person. Each person will also deal with these changes quite differently and learn to adjust to their changing bodies, emerging needs and new roles and responsibilities in their own way. An increased need for independence and responsibility is a key aspect of adolescence. Support from families, communities, schools, peers and health services will help young people develop skills that can help them make a successful transition from childhood to adulthood.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- What physical, social and emotional changes occur during adolescence?
- What are some effective strategies and resources that can help you navigate this time of change?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. Describe the physical, social and emotional changes that occur in males and females during adolescence.
2. Explain how your relationships might change as you transition through adolescence.
3. List some tips and strategies to deal with the physical changes associated with puberty.
4. Outline some resources available to you at school, online or within the community to help manage the physical, social and emotional changes that occur during adolescence.



Resources



**Video eLesson** Adolescence — changes and strategies (eles-6020)

# LESSON

## 3.2 Physical changes

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Explain the physical changes that occur during puberty.
- Describe a range of strategies you can use to manage the physical changes of puberty.

### ENGAGE

Adolescence is the stage of the human lifespan between childhood and adulthood.

What are the changes that need to occur during adolescence that enable you to become an adult? Brainstorm the physical changes that occur during this stage of the lifespan.

**FIGURE 3.2** Adolescence is a time of change.

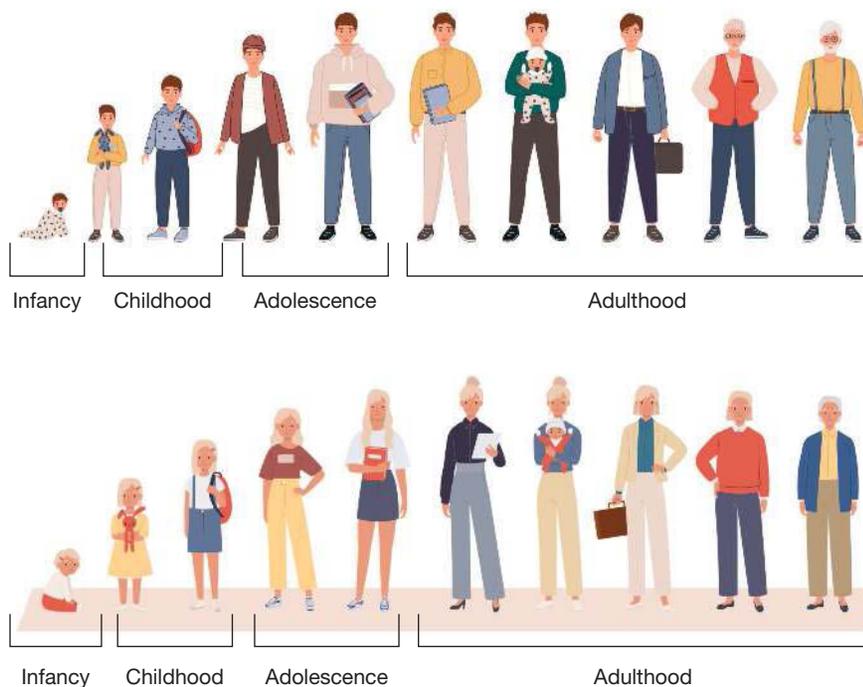


### 3.2.1 Adolescence

Adolescence is a stage of the human lifespan when you mature from childhood to adulthood. It is a time of significant physical, emotional, intellectual and social change. The beginning of adolescence is signalled by the onset of **puberty**.

**puberty** a time of physical, social and emotional change, characterised by the maturation of sexual and reproductive organs

**FIGURE 3.3** Stages of the human lifespan





The pituitary gland triggers the secretion of the female reproductive hormone, **oestrogen**, and the male reproductive hormone, **testosterone**. Oestrogen is secreted by the **ovaries** in females and testosterone is secreted by the **testes** in males. These hormones contribute to the enlargement and maturity of the primary sex organs. For males, their penis and testes grow bigger, and their testes start to produce sperm. Females start to release mature ova (eggs) from their ovaries. The production of sperm in males and mature ova in females are referred to as **primary sex characteristics**.

The release of the female and male reproductive hormones in greater amounts during puberty leads to the development of **secondary sex characteristics**, as shown in figure 3.6.

### Am I normal?

Puberty involves many amazing changes that happen to your body inside and out. The timing of these changes is different for each individual, so it is important not to be concerned if the onset of puberty for you occurs later or earlier than for your friends. In addition to the great variability in the timing of the onset of puberty, the speed at which the changes occur, and the length of time puberty takes to complete also differ greatly. Your particular experience of puberty is part of what makes you unique.

Puberty results in a changing body that may feel out of control. Some of the changes may be a little uncomfortable to deal with at first and may take some time to adjust to. However, they will become a normal part of your life and you will be better able to cope with them over time. The important thing to remember is that, while it can sometimes be challenging, puberty is a brief but important period of transition from childhood to adulthood.

 Visit the **KidsHealth — Am I normal? Girls and puberty** and **KidsHealth — Boys and puberty** weblinks in the Online Resources to learn more.

**oestrogen** female reproductive hormone. It is produced in the ovaries.

**testosterone** male reproductive hormone. It is produced in the testes.

**ovaries** there are two ovaries that make up a female's reproductive system. They produce oestrogen and release ova.

**testes** there are two testes that make up a male's reproductive system. They produce testosterone and sperm.

**primary sex characteristics** the characteristics directly necessary for reproduction; the ovaries and the testes

**secondary sex characteristics** traits arising from changes at puberty. They are not directly related to reproduction and are not present at birth.

**FIGURE 3.5** Many physical changes occur in both males and females as they transition from childhood into adulthood. The timing, rate and way in which these changes take place vary for each adolescent. This is totally normal.



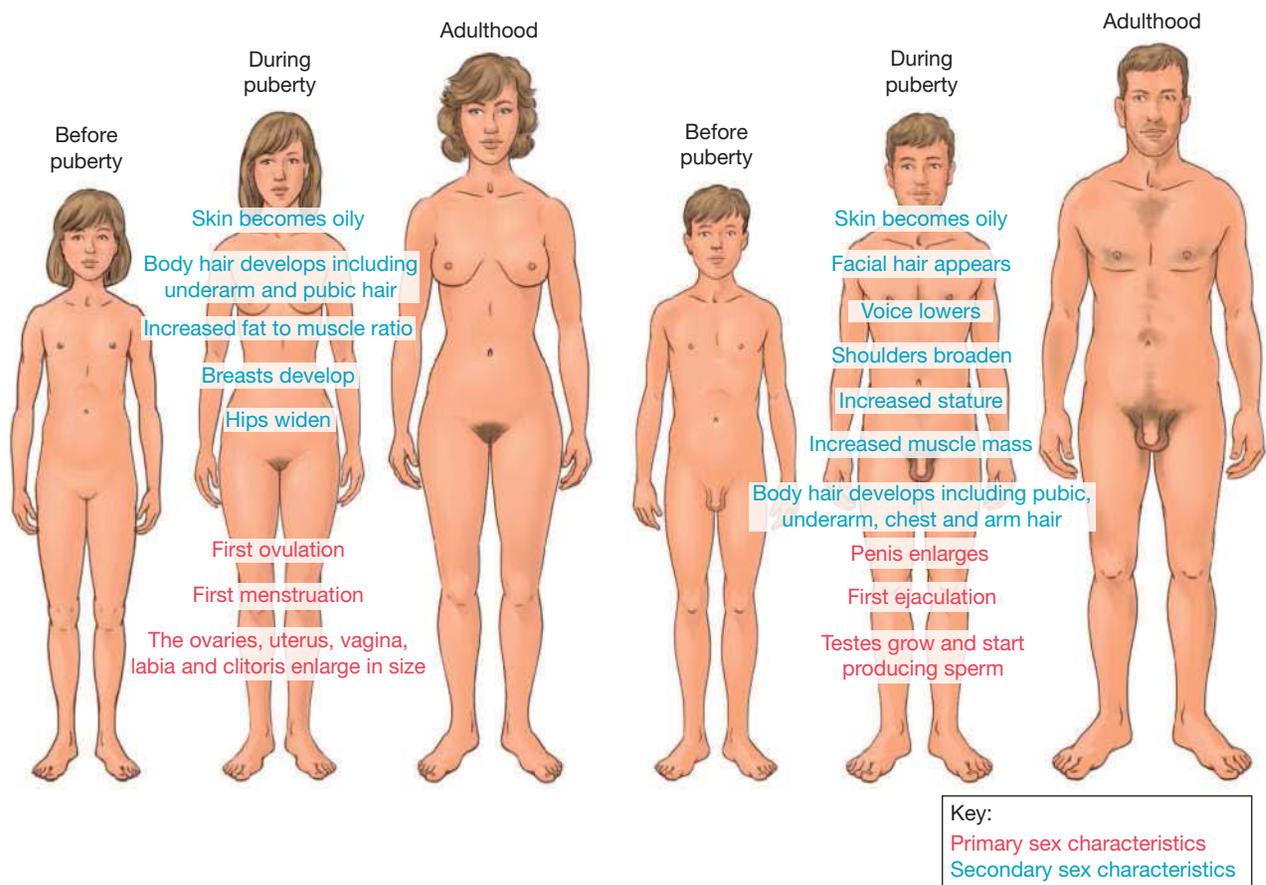
## HEALTH FACT

The growth spurt during adolescence occurs at different rates in different parts of the body. For example, the hands and feet grow faster than the arms and legs, and the arms and legs lengthen before the torso. This explains the feeling of 'gawkiness' that some adolescents experience.

### 3.2.3 Primary and secondary sex characteristics

The changes that occur in the body during puberty can be classified as either primary or secondary sex characteristics. The visible and more noticeable changes that occur during puberty are known as secondary sex characteristics. They are considered secondary because they occur only after the release of hormones.

**FIGURE 3.6** Changes in body composition, and the primary and secondary sex characteristics that develop for males and females as they transition from youth to adulthood



## on Resources

- **Interactivities** Puberty – how our bodies change! (int-5445)
- Reproductive systems during puberty (int-6319)

## 3.2.4 Puberty and females

Puberty usually occurs in females between the ages of 10 and 14, but it may occur as early as 8 years of age. Generally, the first sign of puberty for females is the development of breast tissue; however, it may also be the growth of pubic hair. Breast development starts with small, firm and relatively tender lumps under one or both nipples and then the whole breast starts to get bigger. Underarm hair starts to grow, and pubic hair appears on the **vulva**. A girl's body begins to become curvier as her hips widen. Usually, within one to four years of the start of breast development, menstruation will begin. Go to the **Puberty for girls** and **Puberty for girls video** weblinks in the Online Resources to learn more.



**vulva** the external female genitalia

### Menstruation

**Menstruation** occurs for most individuals who are born with ovaries, a uterus and a vagina. Menstruation is also known as a 'period'. A person starts to menstruate (or get their period) during puberty. It usually happens around two years after the first physical signs of puberty appear. However, because puberty starts at a different time for everyone, the age at which a person gets their period will vary. It will generally occur anywhere between 9 and 16 years of age. The arrival of a person's first period signifies an individual's ability to reproduce; however, sometimes **ovulation** can happen just before the first period, so it is important to be aware that it is possible to become pregnant before having a first period.

**menstruation** also known as a period. It is the shedding of the uterus lining.

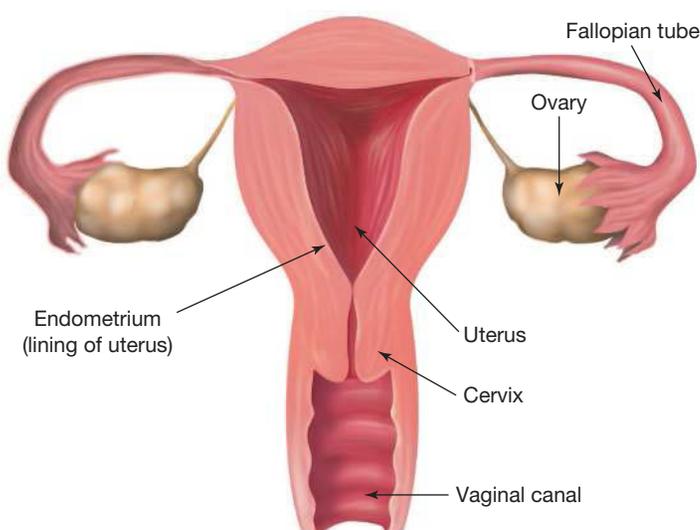
**ovulation** the process of the ovary releasing an ovum (egg)

### The menstrual cycle

A menstrual cycle is about 28 days in length, although the length of a cycle is different for everyone. It is controlled by the release of different hormones that regulate what happens in the cycle. The first day of a period signals the start of the menstrual cycle. A 'period' is the shedding of the uterus lining, which is called the **endometrium**. The lining comes out as fluid through the vagina. This fluid is comprised of the lining of the uterus wall, blood and the unfertilised egg. Once the period is finished — that is, the bleeding stops — hormones direct the body to start building up the endometrium again. The endometrium builds up or thickens to house the egg if it is fertilised by a male's sperm.

**endometrium** the lining of the uterus. It is made of hormones, mucus and blood. When pregnant, it nourishes the foetus.

**FIGURE 3.7** The female reproductive system (front view)



A period usually lasts 3–7 days with bleeding being the heaviest in the first few days. The length and heaviness of a period are different for everyone and can often be irregular for the first few years before settling into a regular cycle. Some people may experience abdominal pain and/or backache when they get their period or in the few days before, while others may experience only minor discomfort.

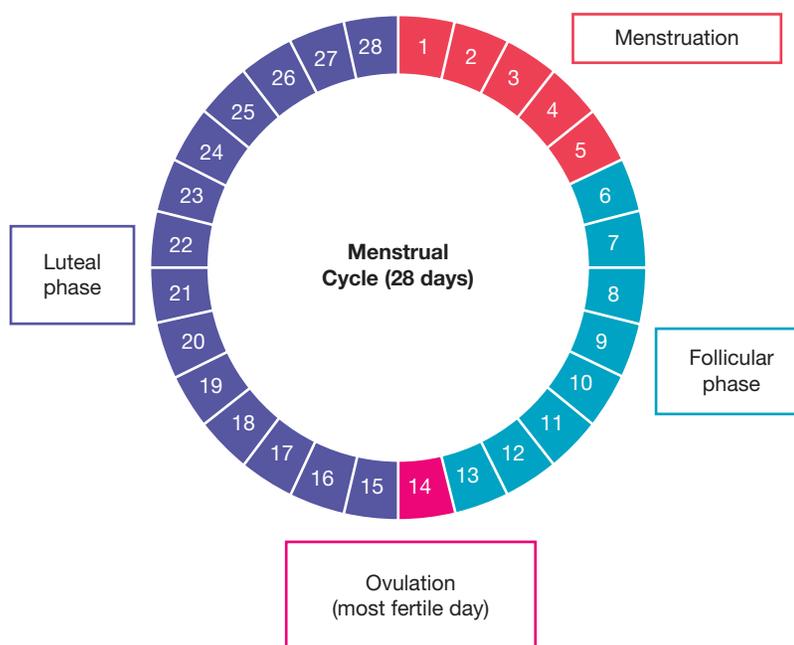
## Stages of the menstrual cycle

The menstrual cycle is controlled by the release of different types of hormones. Each hormone has a specific role to play. The menstrual cycle has four phases:

- the menstruation phase (days 1–5)
- the follicular phase (days 1–13)
- the ovulation phase (day 14)
- the luteal phase (days 15–28).

During the menstrual phase, the thickened lining of the uterus (endometrium), blood and the unfertilised egg flow from the uterus and out through the vagina. This phase is commonly referred to as a period.

**FIGURE 3.8** The menstrual cycle



The follicular phase is the time between the first day of menstruation (period) and when ovulation occurs. At this time, the lining of the uterus begins to thicken again in preparation for the possible fertilisation of an **ovum** and the resulting pregnancy.

The ovulation phase occurs when the mature egg is released from the ovary. Ovulation usually occurs in the middle of the menstrual cycle — that is, on about day 14 of a 28-day menstrual cycle. The lifespan of the egg is around 24 hours and unless it meets a **sperm** during this time, it will die.

The final phase, known as the luteal phase, is approximately two weeks in length. Initially during this phase, the thickened lining of the uterus is maintained.

However, if the ovum is not fertilised by a sperm to create a pregnancy, the lining of the uterus will come away and flow with blood through the vagina as a menstrual period. See the weblink **The female reproductive system** and complete the **Menstruation** eworksheet in the Online Resources for more information.

**ovum** the egg produced by the ovaries. The plural of ovum is ova.  
**sperm** the male reproductive sex cell. It is produced in the testes.



weblink



doc-14649

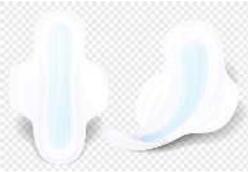
### 3.2.5 Strategies for managing physical changes for females

#### Products for managing menstruation

Many products and resources are available to assist in managing your period. There are a range of different products, and it might take some experimenting to find what is right for you. Table 3.1 shows some of the product options available. The option you choose will depend on personal preference. Many people also switch between products depending on their situation, menstrual flow and the time of day.

Before you start your period, it's useful to carry products such as a sanitary pad in your bag just in case your period starts at school.

**TABLE 3.1** Sanitary products for managing periods

Product	Description	How it works	How to access it	Considerations
Pads (also known as sanitary pads) 	A pad is a rectangle of absorbent material that has an adhesive strip that sticks to the inside of a person's underwear in the crotch area.  Pads can vary in size, thickness and absorbency.  Pads can also have 'wings', which wrap around the edge of the underwear to help the pad stay in place.	Pads absorb the menstrual blood as it comes out of the vagina.  Pads should be changed every 3–4 hours. This prevents the build-up of bacteria and stops odour.	Pads can be purchased at the supermarket. They are often found in the 'personal care' section. You can also buy them from the chemist or convenience store.  Pads are also stocked in your school Health Centre.	Pads are quick and easy to use. They are especially good for when you are new to having periods.
Tampons 	A tampon is a small tube of compressed absorbent material.  Tampons come in different sizes and absorbencies, such as 'super' and 'mini'.	After washing your hands thoroughly, a tampon is inserted/ pushed into the vagina using a finger (or an applicator), leaving the string dangling out so the tampon can be removed later.  Tampons absorb menstrual blood from inside the vagina.  Tampons need to be changed every 3–6 hours.	Tampons can be purchased at the supermarket. They are often found in the 'personal care' section. You can also buy them from the chemist or convenience store.  Tampons are also stocked in your school Health Centre.	It takes practice to insert a tampon, which can take time and may be uncomfortable at first.  Using tampons is beneficial if you are active or want to swim.

Product	Description	How it works	How to access it	Considerations
 <p>Menstrual cups</p>	<p>A menstrual cup is a small silicone cup that is inserted into the vagina and catches menstrual blood as it leaves the uterus.</p> <p>A menstrual cup is approximately 4 cm wide and 6 cm long.</p>	<p>Menstrual cups are made of a flexible material that collapses and can be pushed up into the vagina.</p> <p>Once in place, it returns to its original cup shape.</p> <p>Menstrual cups can be used for up to 12 hours at a time.</p>	<p>Menstrual cups can be purchased from supermarkets or chemists. You can also buy them online.</p>	<p>It takes practice to insert a menstrual cup, which can take time and may be uncomfortable at first. Using a menstrual cup is beneficial if you are active or want to swim. Menstrual cups are cheaper and more environmentally friendly, as the cup is reusable and can last up to 10 years.</p>
 <p>Period underwear/ briefs</p>	<p>Period underwear have a leak-proof cloth pad build into the crotch.</p> <p>Period underwear come in lots of different sizes, styles and absorbencies, such as 'heavy-overnight' or 'light-moderate'.</p>	<p>Period underwear are worn like normal underwear. The special material stops the blood from leaking through.</p> <p>This underwear can also be used in combination with other products, such as a tampon, for extra security.</p>	<p>Period briefs are available at mainstream supermarkets, department stores and online.</p> <p>Specific styles for swimming or exercise are available for purchase online.</p>	<p>Period underwear is reusable but needs to be washed after each use following the care instructions.</p> <p>Prices vary from \$15–50 a pair.</p> <p>You don't have to worry about the disposal of menstrual products.</p>

## Strategies for managing menstruation

Some people may experience discomfort, pain or cramps just before or at the start of their period. Some simple strategies that may help include:

- gentle exercise
- a heat pack applied to the lower abdominal area
- relaxation, including breathing or meditation exercises
- discussion with a parent/guardian around pain relief medication, such as Ibuprofen, which is an anti-inflammatory and can help reduce muscle cramps.

It is also important to know how to dispose of sanitary products, keep track of your period and be prepared for the arrival of your period.

### Disposing of sanitary products

- Don't flush tampons or pads down the toilet as they can block sewerage pipes.
- Wrap used tampons or pads in toilet paper and place them in a sanitary disposal bin (if in a school or public bathroom) or a bathroom rubbish bin or garbage bin (if at home).
- If there are no suitable bins available, wrap the used sanitary product in toilet paper and place it in your pocket or bag to dispose of when you find a suitable bin.
- If at a friend's house, put the used tampon or pad in a zip-lock or paper bag and dispose of it when you get home.
- Wash your hands with soap and warm water after changing and disposing of the used sanitary product.

**FIGURE 3.9** Sanitary products, including pads and tampons, need to be disposed of in a hygienic manner using a suitable bin.



## Keeping track of your period

- Tracking your period can help you predict and prepare for when you will menstruate next, which can reduce stress.
- Use a diary, a calendar or a free downloadable menstrual cycle app to make note of the first day of your period. This is when the blood starts to flow. You should also track the length of your period.
- Your cycle is measured from the first day of bleeding to the first day of your next period. This is 28–32 days on average, but it is very normal for this to be shorter or longer. Everyone is different.

**FIGURE 3.10** People can use a calendar or a free-downloadable app to track their menstrual cycle.



## Preparing a period pack

Before you get your first period, it is a good idea to prepare a period pack and carry it with you. This is a small bag, such as a pencil case, that includes:

- a spare pair of dark-coloured underwear
- a zip-lock sandwich bag for if you need to change soiled underwear
- your choice of sanitary products, such as pads, liners and/or tampons.

**FIGURE 3.11** Have you got your period pack organised? What would you put in it?



## Strategies for managing other physical changes

Table 3.2 contains some strategies for managing the physical changes that come along with puberty.

**TABLE 3.2** Ideas for females for managing physical changes during puberty

Changes	Tips and strategies to manage other changes during puberty
Pimples	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wash your face twice daily with a facial cleaner using warm water. You can buy cleansing products from the supermarket or pharmacy.</li> <li>• Use a toner after cleansing your face as it helps reduce oily skin.</li> <li>• Don't pick or squeeze pimples.</li> <li>• If you wear make-up, remove it before going to bed.</li> <li>• Drink plenty of water.</li> <li>• Avoid consuming excessive amounts of added sugar.</li> </ul>
Sweat and body odour hygiene	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have a shower at least once a day using soap, and shampoo your hair weekly. Don't use soap on your vagina. It has its own cleaning mechanism and soap can upset the chemical balance. Be sure to gently rinse the folds (labia) with warm water.</li> <li>• Change your underwear daily and make sure you dry your genitals properly after showing.</li> <li>• Increased sweat in the underarm region is normal during puberty. In the morning, put on anti-perspirant deodorant. This can help stop sweat and body odour. Anti-perspirant deodorants can be purchased from the supermarket or pharmacy.</li> </ul>

Changes	Tips and strategies to manage other changes during puberty
Vaginal discharge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vaginal discharge, a fluid that comes out of the vagina, is normal. Its role is to clean and moisten the vagina. It might be thick, sticky and elastic, or thick and gooey in texture. This changes over the duration of the menstrual cycle. It should be clear, white or off-white in colour.</li> <li>• Wearing a panty liner can help keep underwear dry.</li> <li>• Cotton underwear are more breathable and prevent bacteria from growing in the vagina. Bamboo underwear are also good.</li> </ul>

### 3.2.6 Puberty and males

Puberty usually occurs in males between the ages of 10 and 16 years. It starts an average of 1–2 years later than for females. Generally, the first physical sign of puberty for males is the enlargement of the testes and penis and also the growth of pubic hair. A male’s limbs, hands and feet often grow faster than the torso and other parts of the body. Their shoulders start to broaden, and they experience an increase in weight and muscle mass, in line with the significant growth spurts that occur. Males may also notice the development of an ‘**Adam’s apple**’ at the front of their throat and their voice may become a little unpredictable. However, by the end of puberty, their voice will be deeper. Males start to grow more hair on their body and also on their face. **Erections** occur when boys are nervous or excited, but also for no particular reason.

**Adam’s apple** caused by the enlargement of the larynx (voice box)

**erection** when blood fills the spongy tissue in the penis. The penis enlarges and stiffens.

#### Ejaculation

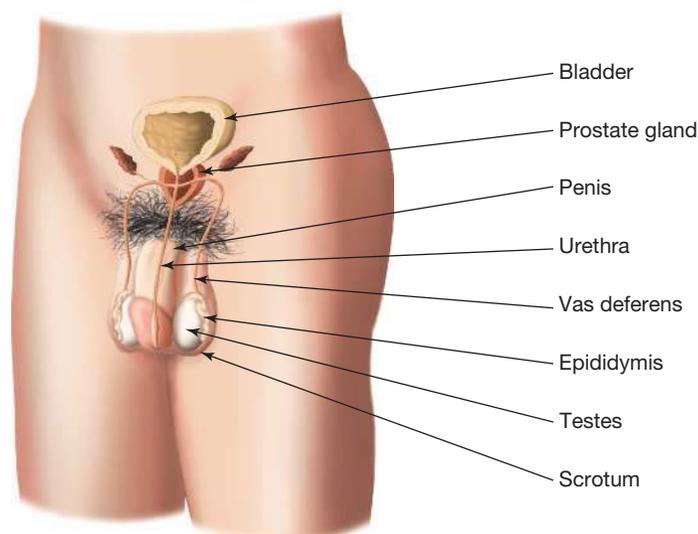
During puberty, males experience their first **ejaculation**, which is the release of **semen** from the penis. Ejaculation usually occurs when a boy masturbates or when he has a **nocturnal emission (wet dream)**. The epididymis is located at the back of the testes. It collects immature sperm from the testes. When the sperm mature, they are released into a tube called the vas deferens. The sperm travel up the vas deferens, where they mix with semen released by glands lining the vas deferens. They then travel through another tube called the urethra, which runs through the penis.

**ejaculation** the release of semen from the penis

**semen** a whitish fluid released by the prostate gland

**nocturnal emission (wet dream)** an ejaculation of semen when a male is asleep

**FIGURE 3.12** The male reproductive system



### 3.2.7 Strategies for managing physical changes for males

 Table 3.3 contains some strategies for managing the physical changes that come along with puberty. See also the weblinks **Puberty for boys**, **Puberty for boys video**, **KidsHealth – Boys and puberty** and **The male reproductive system** in the Online Resources to learn more.

**TABLE 3.3** Ideas for males for managing physical changes during puberty

Changes	Tips and strategies to manage other changes during puberty
Shaving and grooming	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talk to a parent or a trusted male figure to discuss your grooming options to manage increased facial hair.</li> <li>• Grooming products such as shaving cream/gel and disposable razors are available at supermarkets and the pharmacy.</li> <li>• Electric razors are a good option too as they reduce the risk of cutting yourself.</li> <li>• Make a personal grooming 'checklist' with the items you need. Ask your parent or guardian to purchase them for you.</li> </ul>
Pimples	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wash your face twice daily with a facial cleaner using warm water. You can buy cleansing products from the supermarket or pharmacy.</li> <li>• Don't pick or squeeze pimples.</li> <li>• Drink plenty of water.</li> <li>• Avoid consuming excessive amounts of added sugar.</li> </ul>
Ejaculation and wet dreams	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wet dreams are common and normal for males going through puberty. They occur because of increased levels of the hormone testosterone. They can often happen at night when you are sleeping.</li> <li>• Learn how to use the washing machine in case you need to wash your pyjamas or bedsheet.</li> <li>• Take a spare pair of underwear with you if you are sleeping over at a friend's house.</li> </ul>
Sweat and body odour hygiene	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have a shower at least once a day using soap, and also shampoo your hair weekly. Don't forget to clean your genitals, especially if you have an uncircumcised penis.</li> <li>• Change your underwear daily and make sure you dry your genitals properly after showering.</li> <li>• Increased sweat in the underarm region is normal during puberty. In the morning, put on an anti-perspirant deodorant. This can help prevent sweat and body odour. Anti-perspirant deodorants can be purchased from the supermarket or pharmacy.</li> </ul>

**FIGURE 3.13** During puberty, males may experience oily skin, pimples and, in some cases, acne. It's important to wash your face at least once a day using a facial cleaner and warm water.



**FIGURE 3.14** When shaving, shave in the same direction the facial hair is growing. If you shave against the growth of the hair, this can cause razor burn, redness and rashes. Ouch!



## DISCUSS

Discuss what resources, services or strategies schools could implement to assist adolescent students to cope with the physical changes of puberty.

## on Resources

 **Interactivity** The male reproductive system (int-6236)

## 3.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Am I normal?



Using the **KidsHealth** weblinks in the Online Resources, visit the 'Am I normal? Girls and puberty' and 'Boys and puberty' pages and complete the following.

- Watch the video 'Am I normal? Girls and puberty'.
- Read through the 'Boys and puberty' page.
- In pairs, discuss your understanding of 'What is normal?'
- Share your ideas and develop a whole-class understanding.

### 2 Male and female puberty interactivity



- Letter to a sibling**  
Write a letter to a younger sibling telling them what happens to male OR female bodies during puberty and why it is important that people don't compare themselves to their friends during this time.
- Radio interview**  
Follow the weblink to the free audio editor program **Audacity** in the Online Resources to record a radio interview with a friend. The interview should inform people of the changes likely to take place as they enter puberty and reassure other students about their changing bodies.

### 3 Anonymous questions



Use a class question letter box or set up an online poll using the **Poll everywhere** weblink in the Online Resources so that students in your class can ask questions about puberty. These questions will be anonymous so no-one feels embarrassed in front of the class.

## 3.2 Exercise

### 3.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 7

#### ■ LEVEL 2

4, 6, 9, 10

#### ■ LEVEL 3

5, 8, 11

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which hormone causes growth spurts?  
**A.** Testosterone  
**B.** Oestrogen  
**C.** Growth hormone  
**D.** Reproductive hormone
- People go through puberty at different times. True or false?

3. **MC** When does sexual development occur?
  - A. During pregnancy
  - B. During puberty
  - C. During infancy
  - D. When you start having sex
4. **MC** During which phase of the menstrual cycle does a female release an ovum from the ovaries?
  - A. The menstruation phase
  - B. The follicular phase
  - C. The ovulation phase
  - D. The luteal phase
5. **MC** Which of the following is an example of the primary sex characteristics that develop in males and females during puberty?
  - A. Body hair, including pubic and underarm hair
  - B. First ejaculation for males and first period for females
  - C. Oily skin
  - D. None of the above

### Apply your understanding

6. Decide if females and males grow at the same rate. **Justify** your answer.
7. **Outline** the secondary sex characteristics of males and females.
8. Sexual development occurs during puberty. **Explain** what this means and why it happens.
9. **Discuss** the four stages of the menstrual cycle.
10. **Describe** the path of sperm from when they are produced to when they are released during ejaculation.
11. **Propose** the advice you would give a friend struggling with the physical changes of adolescence. Suggest at least four strategies to help your friend cope.

## LESSON

### 3.3 Social and emotional changes

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe how your relationships and emotions change during puberty and propose skills to manage these changes.

#### ENGAGE

As you transition through adolescence, your peer groups will change as you mature. You will also start to develop a range of relationships that can be meaningful and long lasting.

How have your friendships and peer groups changed as you have moved into secondary school and embraced new activities and interests?

**FIGURE 3.15** Peer relationships can be a source of fun and support throughout adolescence.



Many social and emotional changes occur alongside the physical changes of puberty. Understanding and adopting strategies to manage these changes can assist adolescents to achieve a high level of health and wellbeing during this time.

Social health and wellbeing rely on a person's ability to form meaningful and satisfying relationships with others and adapt to different social situations. The nature of both peer and family relationships evolves as a person transitions through puberty. This is an important part of the development of your own identity as an individual, friend and family member. Young people may also develop more intimate relationships during this time.

Emotional health and wellbeing refers to a person's ability to recognise, understand, manage and express their emotions appropriately. The sudden release of hormones during puberty, along with the associated physical and social changes, can cause enormous upheaval for the individual. This has been described as an emotional roller-coaster, and it can be difficult to deal with. As a result, people going through puberty may be experiencing complex feelings and seem a little more emotional and sensitive. Learning how to manage these emotions is a normal part of transitioning into adulthood.

### 3.3.1 Changing relationships

#### Family

As you go through adolescence, you may spend increasing amounts of time with friends and less time with family. Parents and other family members still play an important role in most young people's lives by providing love, support and guidance as they find their way into adulthood.

During adolescence, there are times when you feel like an adult, and you want to be treated as such. However, at other times, you feel like a child and you want the security that your family gives you. Conflict with parents can occur when you want to do things independently. Parents worry because they know that young people sometimes take risks when they are out with friends. Try to work things out with your parents when a conflict arises. Listen to what they have to say, then talk to them about what you need. Communicate with your family your ideas around what you can do to keep safe. By considering the risks and proposing how you might manage them, you demonstrate your growing maturity. Some ideas for how to start can be found in figure 3.16.

In late adolescence, it is common for parents, family and teachers to start to increase their expectations of you. Your parents will expect you to take more responsibility for the freedom that you want, including making decisions for yourself. Some of these decisions will be value based, such as what's right and what's wrong.

People will expect you to take responsibility for your thoughts, feelings and actions. This responsibility includes making decisions and accepting the consequences of those decisions.

**FIGURE 3.16** Clear communication will help your relationship with parents or guardians.

- *I'd like your advice about something. When can we talk?*
- *There's a party this weekend. Can we chat about it?*
- *Hey – now that I'm getting older, can we talk about when our family rules might change?*
- *I need to talk to you about something, but it's quite embarrassing!*
- *I need to talk to you about something. I'm worried about how you might react, but can you hear me out first?*
- *I want to tell you something. I'm not ready to listen to advice yet – can you just listen for now?*

## DISCUSS

Discuss a range of different ways you could initiate difficult conversations with your parents or guardians.

## Peers

Forming a close group of friends who support you and to whom you feel connected can contribute to a positive sense of self. Many young people want to be accepted by their friends and develop peer groups in which they share common interests and values.

**FIGURE 3.17** Friends can provide positive support during adolescence.



Friendships and peer groups may change during adolescence as people develop new interests, establish their values and confirm their own identities. This also means your friendship groups may become bigger or change completely. These changing friendships can be confusing. Changes may occur slowly over time as people drift apart or could be more sudden as a result of a difference in ideas, opinions, experiences, interactions or goals in life.

Experiencing these transitions is normal and can be affirming; however, at the time, they can be disruptive, challenging and may even cause some sadness and grief.

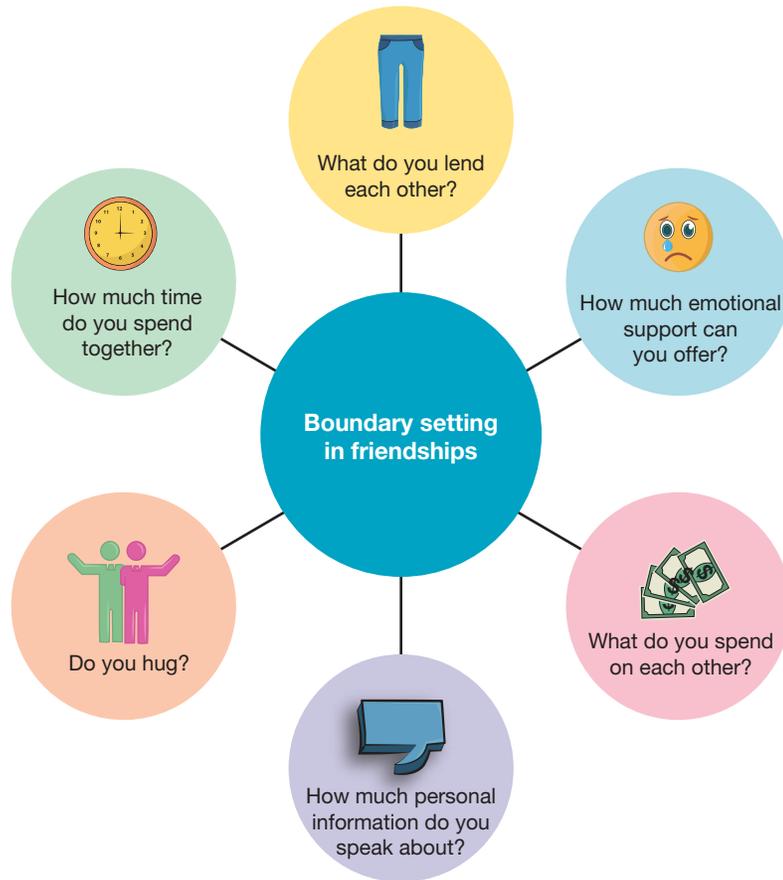
### Developing personal boundaries

Sometimes, your peer group can put pressure on you to adopt certain behaviours and beliefs. This is known as peer pressure. This pressure may be negative, such as the pressure to vape, or positive, such as encouragement to engage in regular physical activity.

Developing **personal boundaries** helps you know what you are comfortable with. Boundaries are important in peer relationships because they help you know your values. They can act as a personal alarm to stop you from getting into situations that are uncomfortable and difficult to manage. Setting clear boundaries in advance can empower you to resist peer pressure with confidence.

**personal boundaries** the limits you set for yourself and your interactions with others to help you know what you are comfortable with

**FIGURE 3.18** Things to consider when setting personal boundaries with friends



### Practising communication skills to assert boundaries

Sometimes, you may find yourself in situations in which you need to have a conversation to assert your boundaries, challenge another person's inappropriate behaviour or even respond to peer pressure.

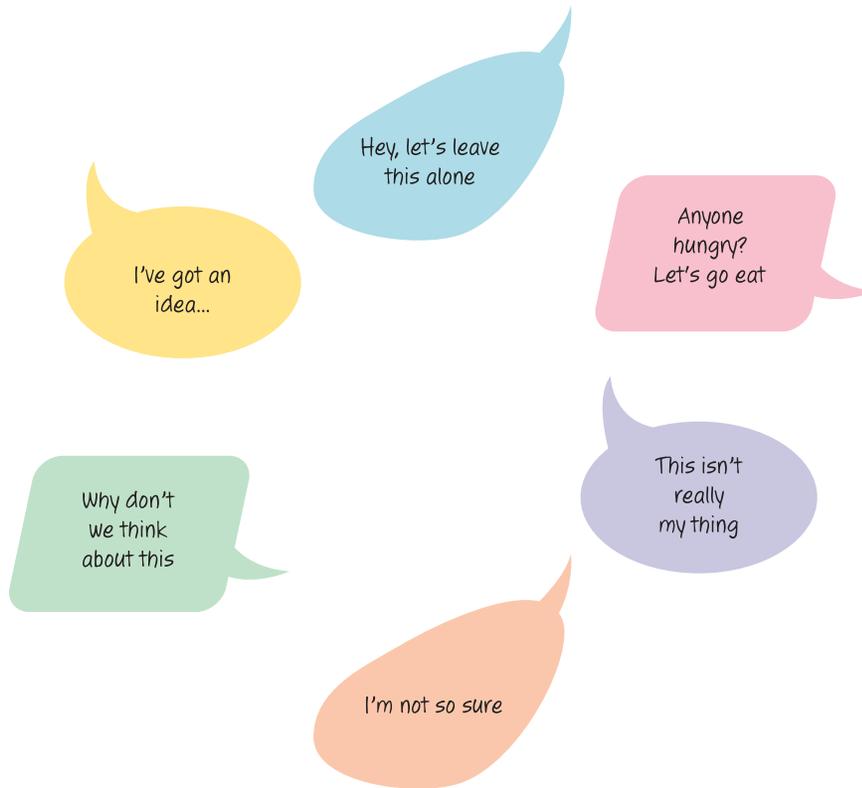
**FIGURE 3.19** Clear communication can help you assert your boundaries in challenging situations.

#### Asserting your boundaries



Thinking about and practising these tricky conversations in advance can improve your communication skills and increase your confidence among your peers. Figure 3.19 contains some helpful phrases to get you started, while figure 3.20 gives some ideas on what to say when facing peer pressure.

**FIGURE 3.20** These phrases can help you assert your boundaries when facing peer pressure.



## DISCUSS

Discuss boundaries you could set in different areas of your life.

How could you positively communicate these to your friends?

## Reaching out

If you are being pressured to do something you don't feel comfortable doing, it is a good idea to talk to someone you trust to try to work out some strategies to deal with the issue. It's normal to talk to your friends; however, they may not always know the answer or give you the right advice. A trusted adult may offer more help. This could be a family member, a friend's parent, a teacher, a sporting coach or someone else who is part of your life and who is safe and respectful. Exploring shared ideas and strategies with a trusted person when unsure of what to do is a mature approach and will help you develop your skill and resilience moving forward.

**FIGURE 3.21** A trusted adult can help you think of strategies for navigating peer relationships.



## Intimate relationships

During adolescence, we start to become more aware of our sexuality. We may develop a desire or sexual attraction for another person, which could lead to an intimate relationship. That other person could be someone of another sex, someone of the same sex or someone with no defined sex. The person to whom you are sexually attracted can change and keep on changing throughout your life. In early adolescence, intimate relationships usually last for a short time. In late adolescence, relationships may last longer and become more significant. Intimate relationships are explored in lesson 3.4.

**FIGURE 3.22** As adolescents become more aware of their sexuality, they may develop intimate relationships.



### 3.3.2 Changing emotions

Developing an understanding of emotions and feelings is part of the emotional change that occurs during adolescence. As you grow and mature emotionally, you become better at understanding and managing your feelings and behaviours. This means you are less likely to lash out at family and peers as you develop the skills to regulate and express a wider range of complex emotions.

Emotional maturity is not about suppressing emotions that may be seen as negative, nor is it only about expressing positive emotions. Emotional maturity is about:

- identifying and understanding your own emotions and feelings
- regulating emotions in an appropriate way
- controlling impulses
- bouncing back after difficult times
- expressing emotions appropriately.

Managing emotions takes practice, time and work. This means you need to think about what you are feeling rather than just reacting. You need to work out positive ways to deal with challenges and cope with difficult situations. However, it's important to remember that you are only human, and you will not always manage and express emotions in the most desirable way. When you are finding it difficult to manage your emotions, don't forget that it can be much easier with the help and support of trusted adults and friends. Try to calmly explain your frustrations to a trusted adult or ask for some personal space. This will give you time so you can process and work out how to best communicate what you are experiencing.



Follow the **Emotions** weblink in the Online Resources to learn more about being aware of your emotions. See also topic 2, lesson 2.2 Relationships and emotions.

### 3.3.3 Managing emotions

Being in tune with your emotional responses is one skill that you will develop as you grow older. In addition to recognising these emotions, it is important to your health and wellbeing to know how to best manage and express them.

## STRATEGY

Measures you can take to help manage your emotions include:

- talking things through with a parent, friend or someone else you trust
- taking time out from the situation that may be upsetting you
- going for a walk, meditating or listening to some music
- writing down your thoughts and feelings
- talking to your school counsellor.

**FIGURE 3.23** Taking time out can help with managing emotions.



## Reducing stress

The following simple strategies can help manage your emotions by reducing stress and minimising **cortisol** levels in your brain. Try them!

**cortisol** the body's main stress hormone

- Engage in regular physical activity: 20–30 minutes of physical activity as regular exercise improves the body's ability to deal with stress, and less cortisol will be released as a consequence. Try cycling, weights, swimming, running to the bus or walking to the shops. Physical activity releases 'feel good' hormones called endorphins, which reduce the effects of stress.
- Practise deep breathing or mindfulness: Shallow breathing is a stress response of the body. Consciously breathing more deeply and slowly can encourage the body to relax and reduce your stress levels. Practising mindfulness — where you focus on what you are sensing and feeling at a point in time — is a good way to help manage your breathing. Use the free **Smiling Mind** app to get you started, following the weblink in the Online Resources.
- Cultivate social connections: although people are more 'connected' via devices than ever before, spending quality time with family and peers seems to foster genuine connectivity. How often do you do this?
- Have fun: laughter has been clinically shown to reduce stress hormone levels. Finding ways to include laughter and humour in your day has a positive impact on stress.
- Listen to music you like: music changes your mood, so try to include some music in your day.



weblink

## DID YOU KNOW?

Your adrenal glands release the hormones adrenaline and cortisol. These hormones cause your heart rate and blood pressure to increase, and activate certain areas in the brain so that the body is ready for 'fight or flight'. This physical response to stress prepares our body for action.

**FIGURE 3.24** Maintaining social connections, including with family, is important when going through the changes associated with puberty.



**FIGURE 3.25** Walking the dog and exercising can provide a way to cope with challenges.



## Positive self-talk

Sometimes, the key to coping with problems or difficult situations is in the way you think about them.

**Self-talk** is your inner voice, the voice in your mind that says things that you don't necessarily say out loud. It's the 'little voice' in your head. Self-talk can have a powerful influence on how you feel about yourself in certain situations. Your thoughts can directly affect your emotions.

**self-talk** the internal statements we use relating to and describing our selves

Using positive self-talk in unfamiliar or new situations, such as when meeting someone for the first time, can help you feel in control and build your confidence. If you give yourself positive feedback more often, you will likely feel more confident about yourself. You can improve your state of mind by changing your thought patterns.

Negative self-talk should be acknowledged and addressed appropriately to improve your self-confidence in situations that you are concerned about. Positive self-talk involves saying things to yourself that are positive while also being realistic. Learn to be compassionate with yourself. Next time you put yourself down, ask yourself this question, 'Would I say this to a friend?' If the answer is no, then why are you saying it to yourself?

Self-talk usually happens without you realising it. Identifying your negative or irrational thoughts can help you to develop the confidence to deal with new situations and generally make you feel better. Positive self-talk can empower you to try new and challenging things and not be afraid of failure.

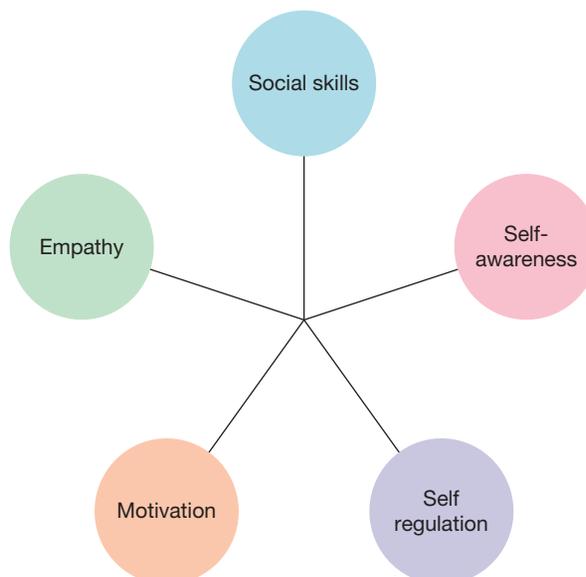
**FIGURE 3.26** Using positive self-talk improves confidence and our relationships with others.



## Emotional intelligence

Emotional intelligence is the ability to recognise and understand your emotions and the emotions of the people around you. Emotionally intelligent people are aware of other people's emotions and can respond to them appropriately, which improves their ability to have productive relationships. According to psychologist Daniel Goleman, having well-developed skills in the areas shown in figure 3.27 is associated with a high level of emotional intelligence.

**FIGURE 3.27** Emotional intelligence involves recognising and understanding emotions.



## DID YOU KNOW?

Your emotional intelligence (EQ) is your ability to understand, use and manage your emotions. Some studies suggest that EQ is more important than IQ (intellectual quotient – a test of your academic ability) when it comes to being successful in life.

## 3.3 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Negotiating a win-win

Use the **Negotiating a win-win** worksheet in the Online Resources to work through the process to reach a positive decision.

### 2 Setting personal boundaries

With a partner, write statements or comments you could use to assert your personal boundaries with your friends. For example, 'I don't think that is funny because...' or 'I am hoping you can respect my opinion or else I will need to leave'.

### 3 Managing stress

Use the **No shame in talking it out** weblink in the Online Resources to find a list of strategies to manage stress. Choose three you can put into practice tomorrow. Try them and see what impact they have on your body and mind.

### 4 Reframing your thinking

Use the worksheet **Reframing your thinking** in the Online Resources to explore ways you can change your self-talk. Positive self-talk can improve your confidence and help you manage your emotions. Work through the examples to practise ways of using positive self-talk.

 doc-14651

 weblink

 doc-17181

## 3.3 Exercise

### 3.3 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 5

■ LEVEL 2

4, 6, 8

■ LEVEL 3

7, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** What is it important to do if conflict arises with a parent?
  - A. Be patient and negotiate a compromise
  - B. Be aggressive
  - C. Be stubborn and rude
  - D. Be submissive and don't voice your opinion
2. Personal boundaries are the limits you set for yourself and for your interactions with others to help you know what you are comfortable with. True or false?
3. **MC** Social changes that occur during puberty could include:
  - A. spending more time with friends and less time with family.
  - B. increased independence to engage in more social activities with peers.
  - C. a growing and changing network of friends.
  - D. All of the above

4. \_\_\_\_\_ is about identifying, understanding and managing our own emotions and feelings in an appropriate way.
5. **MC** When you feel your emotions rising, identify what you can do to calm yourself down.
  - A. Breathe deeply
  - B. Sing or use humour
  - C. Engage in physical activity
  - D. All of the above

### Apply your understanding

6. **Outline** how your parents' and teachers' expectations of you have changed as you have grown from childhood into adolescence.
7. **Identify** five characteristics of an emotionally mature person.
8. **Explain** ways in which you can resolve conflict using compromise.
9. **Describe** why it is important to be patient with your parents if a conflict arises.

## LESSON

### 3.4 Intimate relationships

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Explore sexual feelings, consent and safe sex practices when considering an intimate relationship.

#### ENGAGE

Adolescence is a time of heightened sexual feelings and experimentation. It is a time when you become more familiar with your body and discover what feels good to you. If you decide to start a close or intimate relationship, making good decisions about your sexual health should be a priority.

- What do you think an intimate relationship is? What might it involve?
- What decisions would you need to consider or make before starting an intimate relationship?
- The decision to be sexually active is an individual one. What are some possible consequences, and how might these affect your health, relationship and future plans?

**FIGURE 3.28** The decision to have an intimate relationship is a personal one.



#### 3.4.1 Considering intimate relationships

As you move through adolescence, you may want to form closer bonds and relationships with others. These more intimate relationships can take many forms and may include sexual relationships. Being sexually attracted to other people is something that everyone can experience. Thinking about sex and having sexual feelings is normal. In this lesson, you will explore your rights and responsibilities when in a sexual relationship and learn how to make positive choices regarding your sexual health.

### 3.4.2 It is normal to have sexual feelings

Having sexual feelings is a normal part of puberty. Becoming more aware of your own body, touching your body and thinking about others in a sexual way is okay. You may find that you think or dream about being sexual with someone else. Wet dreams, for both males and females, happen because you can have sexual feelings while you are asleep.

Sex is more than a physical act. It is about feeling closeness or intimacy with someone you are attracted to. As you go through adolescence, you may be attracted to a number of different people. Some might be of another sex, and some may be of the same sex. You may or may not pursue a relationship with any of the people you are attracted to. All these experiences are healthy and normal.

Relationships can vary greatly. Choosing to be in a relationship is your decision, and the level of intimacy you share needs to be agreed on by both people in the relationship.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

**Gender identity** describes which gender people consider themselves to be (e.g., masculine or feminine).

**Sexual orientation** refers to the sex of the person you are attracted to. This can include heterosexual, homosexual and bisexual.

**Heterosexual** describes sexual attraction to people of the opposite sex.

**Homosexual** describes sexual attraction to people of the same sex.

**Bisexual** describes sexual attraction to people of both the same and opposite sex.

### 3.4.3 Setting boundaries in an intimate relationship

Social expectations can put pressure on young people in relationships. People's values, attitudes, behaviours and expectations about sexual activity reflect a range of influences, such as:

- family
- media
- religion
- gender
- culture
- past experiences
- peer groups.

It can be confusing to make sense of all these influences and determine your own boundaries in relation to intimate and sexual relationships.

The level of intimacy or sexual activity you engage in should be your choice. You are in control of your body and should not be pressured into doing things you are not ready to do. This is known as having bodily autonomy. If your partner is not willing to wait until you are ready to have sexual experiences, then they do not respect you. Similarly, you should not be shamed or made to feel guilty for the experiences you choose to have within your own values framework.

The decision to become sexually active is a personal one. It may take time for you or your partner to decide if and when the time is right. You should not feel pressured by your partner or friends to engage in any level of intimacy in a relationship. Remember, having sex does not necessarily mean someone loves you. And it is also possible to enjoy a loving relationship without being sexually intimate.

**FIGURE 3.29** Social expectations in sexual relationships can lead to young people engaging in sexual activity when they are not ready. It is important to know your rights and to be respected in sexual relationships.



## Consent

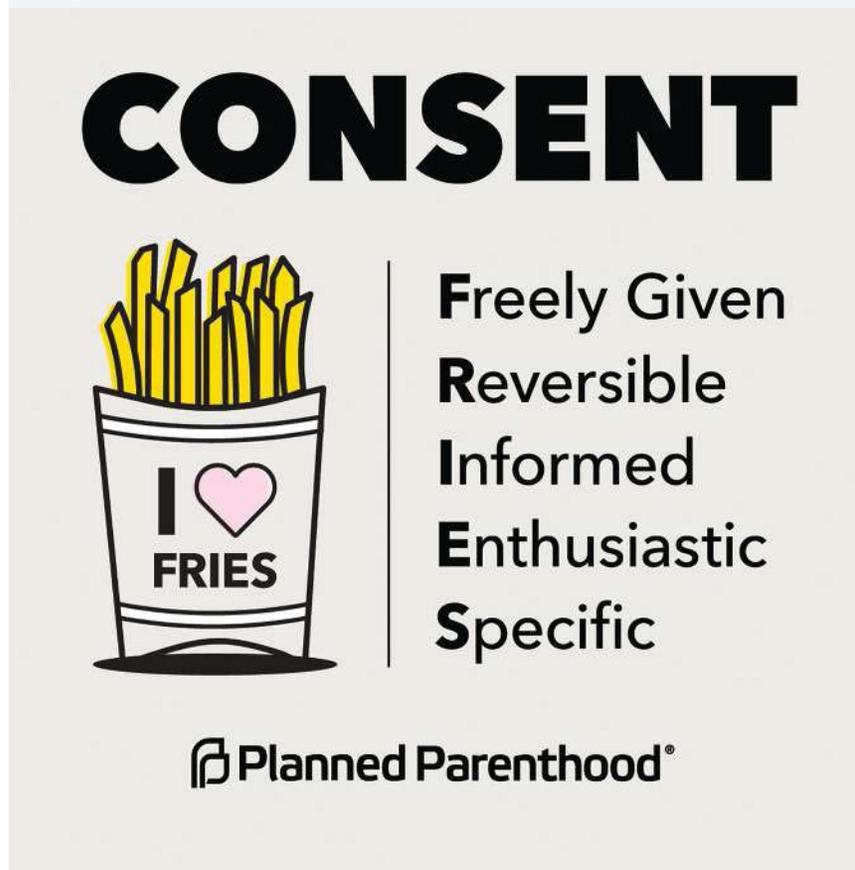
doc-34510

When you give **consent** to engage in sex or sexual touching, it must be freely given, reversible, informed, enthusiastic and specific. Someone cannot assume you give consent based on your silence, previous sexual history or the clothing you are wearing. Permission for any type of sexual activity needs to be asked for and clearly given before proceeding. A person can show that they do not give consent through their body language. They do not have to say anything.

**consent** free and enthusiastic agreement to participate in a sexual activity and an understanding about what is being agreed to

Drugs and alcohol impact the functioning of a person's brain. Specifically, drugs and alcohol affect a person's ability to make decisions and use judgement. This can affect their ability to decide whether they want to participate in sexual activity with someone or not. Alcohol and other drugs can also affect a person's ability to speak and understand others clearly. They can also lower people's inhibitions or make them more aggressive. For these reasons, substance use makes it much more difficult to give consent and determine if consent has been freely given.

**FIGURE 3.30** Consent must be freely given, reversible, informed, enthusiastic and specific.



What does it mean for consent to be freely given, reversible, informed, enthusiastic and specific?

**Freely given.** This means free and voluntary agreement without pressure or manipulation. It can only be given by someone who is not affected by alcohol or drugs.

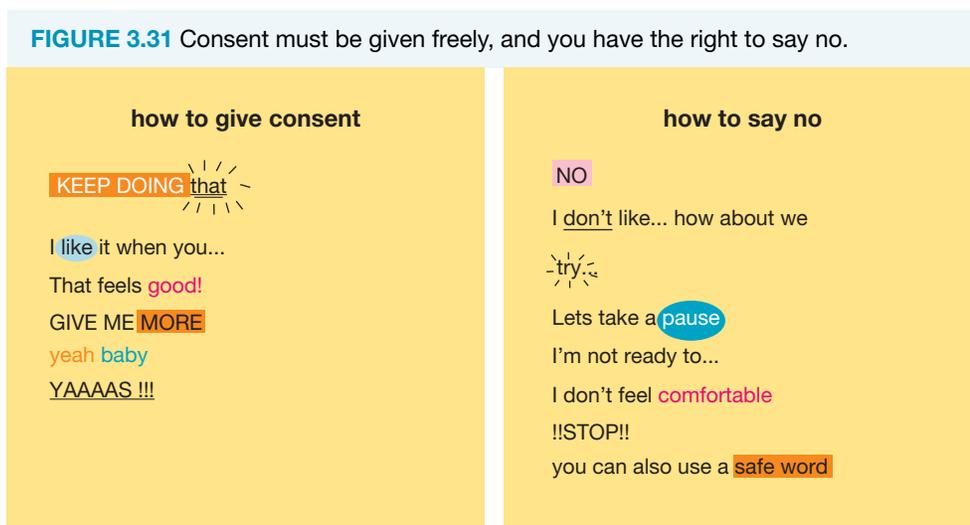
**Reversible.** Anyone can change their mind about any activity at any time, even if they've done it before or they are in the middle of sexual activities.

**Informed.** Everyone understands exactly what they are giving consent to. This requires everyone to be honest.

**Enthusiastic.** All parties should be eager, happy and comfortable. If there is any uncertainty or hesitation in words or body language, then consent has not been given.

**Specific.** Saying yes to one activity does not mean that you are giving consent for other activities. It only applies to acts agreed to at that moment.

Sex without consent is sexual assault. There are personal, social, legal and physical consequences of not gaining consent before engaging in sexual activity. Figure 3.31 gives some ideas of language you can use to give, withdraw and withhold consent.



### 3.4.4 Forms of intimate and sexual activity

Regardless of who you are attracted to, there are many forms of sexual activity besides intercourse that allow you to express your feelings for someone. Holding hands, hugging, kissing, touching, massaging and having oral sex are examples of sexual behaviour that do not involve sexual penetration. When deciding whether you want to be sexually active, think carefully about what you feel comfortable and safe doing. Talk to the other person about what you both want from the relationship and see whether your expectations are similar. This conversation needs to be safe, respectful and constructive, so that everyone involved feels their privacy and level of comfort are being considered.

### 3.4.5 Your rights and responsibilities in intimate relationships

Intimate and sexual relationships can be wonderful when they include respect, consent, equality and open communication. People enter into intimate relationships at different stages in their lives and for a range of reasons such as fun, companionship and pleasure. However, if relationships are just about self-satisfaction, they may be hurtful for both people. Everyone has rights and responsibilities in an intimate and sexual relationship (see table 3.4).

**TABLE 3.4** Rights and responsibilities in sexual relationships

Rights	Responsibilities
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To be loved and accepted for who you are</li><li>• To be respected as a whole person and not just a sexual object</li><li>• To express your thoughts, needs and desires without fear</li><li>• To be safe by making the choice to use protection when having sex and only doing things you are comfortable with</li><li>• To choose not to have sex if you are not ready or when you don't want to</li><li>• To withdraw consent at any time</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To respect the other person's opinions, needs and choices</li><li>• Not to pressure the other person into having sex or engaging in sexual activities they are not comfortable with</li><li>• To discuss what each person wants and establish agreed boundaries</li><li>• To listen to what the other person has to say about their involvement in a sexual relationship and be aware of their body language in relation to this</li><li>• To provide and use protection when having sex</li><li>• To respect the other person by not telling others about your sexual activities</li></ul>

### 3.4.6 Making positive sexual choices — contraception

Making the choice to become sexually active is a very big decision. All actions have consequences, so it is important to make positive sexual choices that will benefit your health. Here, you will learn about contraception and how to be safe should you choose to be sexually active.

#### Unplanned pregnancy

Unplanned pregnancy is one possible consequence of choosing to be sexually active. Although adolescent parents may be able to manage their own and their children's lives, many sacrifices are required and many responsibilities are involved, particularly for the mother. Unplanned parenthood affects schooling, career opportunities, friendships and independence. Young mothers may face put-downs, negative stereotypes and discrimination. Family and relationship conflict can also arise from the additional costs, pressures and responsibilities associated with being a parent, especially when someone does not have the emotional maturity or commitment required for the role.

Other alternatives for unplanned pregnancies, such as a termination or adoption, can be equally difficult. The fact that some young people do not want their family or friends to know they or their partner are pregnant can limit the emotional support that is available. For young people whose religious, cultural or family beliefs conflict with these options, decisions about an unplanned pregnancy can be particularly challenging. There are online, confidential and professional counselling services that can provide assistance and guidance for young people who might find themselves in this situation.

**FIGURE 3.32** The responsibilities associated with parenthood require many sacrifices.



## Contraception methods

If you are considering having sexual intercourse in an opposite-sex attracted relationship and you do not want to fall pregnant or have your partner fall pregnant, you need to use some methods of **contraception**. Contraception refers to any method or device that prevents **conception** and, therefore, a pregnancy. There are many different types of contraception available for both males and females (see table 3.5). You will need to make well-informed decisions about the contraceptive method that is right for you and your sexual partner.

**contraception** any method or device that prevents conception and, therefore, a pregnancy  
**conception** the union of a female's egg and a male's sperm  
**sexually transmitted infection (STI)** an infection that is transmitted through sexual activity

It is important to remember that no contraceptive is 100 per cent effective at stopping a pregnancy — this can only be guaranteed by not having vaginal intercourse. Further, the methods of contraception you choose may not only be about preventing unplanned pregnancy; they may also help you to avoid contracting **sexually transmitted infections (STIs)**, which are explored below.

### HEALTH FACT

The age of consent for engaging in sexual intercourse varies between 16 and 17 years across Australian states and territories. Condoms can be purchased at various retail outlets such as chemists, supermarkets and petrol stations. They are also sometimes available in vending machines located in public toilets and are given away at most family planning clinics. Young women can be prescribed the contraceptive pill when they are 16 years old without needing parental consent. They can also go to a family planning clinic without their parents if they are 14 years or older.

**TABLE 3.5** Contraceptive options for all genders

Description		How it works	Effectiveness	Possible side effects	Suitability	How it is obtained
The pill — a small tablet made up of two female hormones, oestrogen and progestin (a synthetic hormone)		The pill stops an egg from being released from the ovaries each month. It also makes the mucus in the uterus thicker, which stops sperm from getting through. One pill must be taken every day, starting from the first day of the menstrual cycle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protects against pregnancy but not STIs</li> <li>93% effective</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irregular bleeding between periods</li> <li>Sore breasts</li> <li>Nausea</li> <li>Weight gain</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Safe to be used by most women.</li> <li>Women with heart conditions, high blood pressure, liver problems, certain types of migraine or who are heavy smokers should talk to their doctor first.</li> </ul>	It is obtained by prescription after having a medical check-up by a doctor or at a family planning clinic.
Progestin-only pill (POP), or mini-pill — like the pill, but contains only progestin		This pill makes the mucus at the entrance of the uterus thicker so sperm cannot get through it. It also alters the lining of the uterus.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protects against pregnancy but not STIs</li> <li>91% effective</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Spotting between periods</li> <li>Irregularity in menstrual cycle</li> </ul>	Safe to be used by most women except those with cancer of the reproductive organs or those that have had an ectopic pregnancy.	It is obtained by prescription after having a medical check-up by a doctor or at a family planning clinic.

Description		How it works	Effectiveness	Possible side effects	Suitability	How it is obtained
Long-acting reversible contraception (LARC), IUD (intrauterine device) — a small plastic device that is placed inside the uterus		The IUD hampers the sperm's survival in the uterus. It also causes changes in the lining of the uterus so an egg cannot grow in it.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protects against pregnancy but not STIs</li> <li>More than 99% effective</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cramps and bleeding after insertion</li> <li>Period pain and heavier periods</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Can be used by women who have had a baby.</li> <li>It should not be used by people who have more than one sexual partner or who change partners regularly.</li> </ul>	It is inserted and removed by a doctor. A local anaesthetic is often used when it is inserted.
Barrier method, condom — a very thin rubber sheath that goes over the penis when erect		The condom is rolled over an erect penis before any skin-to-skin genital contact or sex, so that semen and the sperm in it are collected inside the condom when ejaculation occurs. The condom is then removed after sex.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protects against STIs and pregnancy</li> <li>80–98% effective, depending on application</li> </ul>	None, except some people may be allergic to latex rubber or the lubricant that covers it.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Can be used by all males.</li> <li>A condom is single use only.</li> </ul>	It can be purchased from various outlets, including chemists, supermarkets, vending machines and sexual health clinics.
Barrier method, female condom (femidom) — a long polyurethane tube or pouch with a flexible ring at each end		It is inserted into the vagina before intercourse to act as a barrier against sperm.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protects against STIs and pregnancy</li> <li>79% effective</li> </ul>	None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Suitable for all women.</li> <li>A female condom is single use only.</li> </ul>	It is available from most sexual health clinics, some women's health centres and chemists.
Long-acting reversible contraception (LARC), Implanon — a small flexible plastic rod containing progestogen. It is inserted under the skin of the upper arm		The slow release of progestin stops ovulation occurring while also changing the uterus lining so an egg cannot grow.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protects against pregnancy</li> <li>99.95% effective</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irregular bleeding</li> <li>Headaches</li> <li>Weight gain</li> <li>Sore breasts</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Suitable for most women.</li> <li>Lasts up to 3 years.</li> <li>Don't have to remember to take something daily.</li> <li>Can be removed at any time and fertility returns quickly.</li> </ul>	It is inserted and removed by a doctor. A local anaesthetic is usually used.

(continued)

(continued)

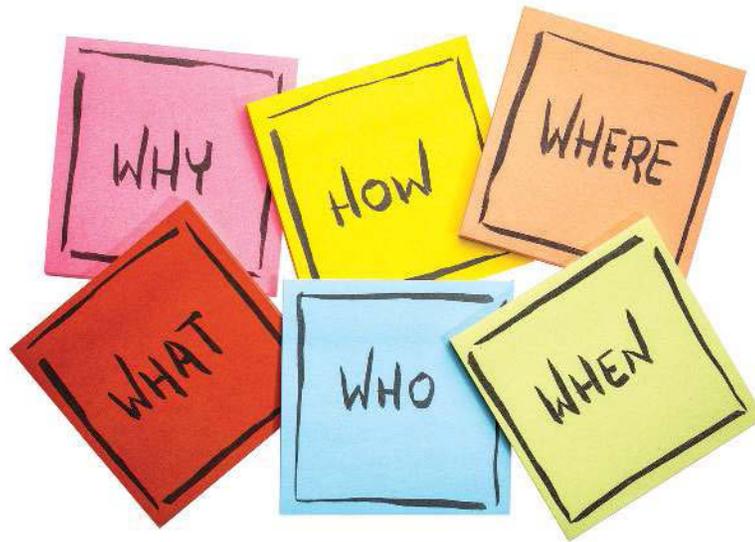
Description		How it works	Effectiveness	Possible side effects	Suitability	How it is obtained
Emergency contraception, 'morning after pill'		The pill should be taken within 24 hours after unprotected sex. However, it can still work if taken up to 72 hours after. It might stop the release of an ovum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Protects against pregnancy</li><li>• 85% effective</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Potential nausea</li><li>• Irregular bleeding</li><li>• Period might come late</li></ul>	It is not a termination or abortion pill.	You can access the 'morning after pill' from the pharmacy with no prescription. The price can range from \$15–50, depending on the brand and type.
Diaphragm — a small rubber dome or cup-shaped diaphragm that is inserted into the vagina		When placed in the vagina, it covers the cervix, so sperm are unable to reach an egg.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Protects against pregnancy</li><li>• 82% effective</li></ul>	A small number of women may be allergic to the rubber in the diaphragm material.	Suitable for any woman who is comfortable fitting and removing it.	The diaphragm needs to be fitted and checked by a nurse.
Fertility awareness based methods — various methods of determining the fertile phase of the menstrual cycle (ovulation) and avoiding intercourse at those times.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Calendar method</i> — recording the dates of one's periods to determine when ovulation may take place</li><li>• <i>Temperature method</i> — recording one's temperature daily to monitor for the changes that occur with ovulation</li><li>• <i>Mucus changes</i> — recognising and recording the texture and appearance of one's cervical mucus to monitor for the changes that occur with ovulation</li></ul>	Natural methods are the least effective contraceptives and should only be used in conjunction with other forms of contraception.	The calendar method can be unreliable, particularly if menstruation is irregular.	Can be used by anyone.	Time, patience and commitment are required to learn how to recognise signs of fertility and calculate 'safe' times for sex. Discipline is also needed by both partners to avoid intercourse at unsafe times.	Advice on how to recognise and record the signs of ovulation should be obtained from a doctor.

## DISCUSS

On a continuum, place the contraceptive methods from most effective to least effective: the most effective being those that prevent pregnancy and STIs. You can write the methods on a continuum or place cards in order.

As a group, justify the placement of each contraceptive method.

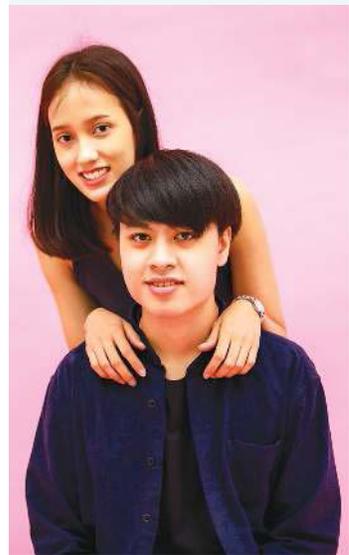
**FIGURE 3.33** The right method of contraception is an individual choice.



### 3.4.7 Sexually transmitted infections

Once you become sexually active, you risk contracting infections and illnesses caused by unsafe sexual activity. Many of these infections have few or no visible symptoms but can cause great damage to a person's health. When people choose not to have **protected sex**, they are at risk of catching an STI. Many infections are transmitted through sexual activity such as penetrative sexual intercourse and oral sex. You can avoid catching many STIs by using a male condom during sex. To prevent blood-borne STIs, such as hepatitis B, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), never share needles, syringes or drug injecting equipment. Table 3.6 gives some more detail about STIs, their symptoms and their treatment. As noted, all can be prevented by condom use.

**FIGURE 3.34** Decisions about sexual activity are a personal choice. You should consider your feelings, level of readiness and safety precautions, including contraception.



**FIGURE 3.35** Talk to your doctor if you have any concerns about your sexual health.



**protected sex** using a condom during sexual intercourse to prevent pregnancy and the spread of sexually transmitted infections (STIs)

**TABLE 3.6** Sexually transmitted infections — symptoms and treatments

STI	Symptoms	Treatment
Chlamydia is a common STI that affects both men and women. If left untreated, it can lead to infertility.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In most people infected with chlamydia, there are no symptoms.</li> <li>• If symptoms are present, they occur 7–21 days after infection and include discharge from the penis, pain when urinating, abnormal vaginal discharge, abnormal vaginal bleeding, pelvic pain or pain during sex.</li> </ul>	Antibiotics
Genital herpes is caused by the herpes simplex virus (HSV). It is contracted through close skin-to-skin contact.	Painful, tingling or itchy blisters or ulcers on the genitals	Antiviral tablets. There is no cure. Once you have the virus, it lies dormant and can cause more outbreaks in the future.
Genital warts are caused by a virus and are transmitted via skin-to-skin sexual contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lumps on the genitals that are cauliflower-like or flatter</li> <li>• Often painless</li> <li>• Much more difficult to see in women because they may be inside the vagina</li> </ul>	Warts can be removed by freezing, burning or laser, or by applying liquid wart paints or creams.
Gonorrhoea can infect the urethra, anus, cervix, throat and eyes of both men and women.	Burning or discomfort when urinating or an abnormal discharge from the vagina or penis	Antibiotics. Sexual contact should be avoided until the infection has cleared.
Hepatitis B is caused by a virus that affects the liver. It is a blood-borne virus spread through sexual activity, sharing of syringes/needles, childbirth, or sharing toothbrushes or razors.	You may have no symptoms, flu-like symptoms or nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain or jaundice (yellowing of the skin).	Resting and avoiding alcohol and other drugs will help in recovery. There is a vaccination that prevents you from contracting hepatitis B.
Non-gonococcal urethritis is an inflammation of the urethra in males.	Slightly clear, white or cloudy discharge from the penis and/or burning or discomfort when urinating	Antibiotics
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is an infection in the uterus or fallopian tubes in females, caused by the bacteria that causes chlamydia.	Abdominal pain, pain during sex, a fever, irregular periods, abnormal vaginal discharge	Antibiotics
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) damages the body's immune system so it cannot fight off disease and infection. AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency virus) is a later stage of HIV infection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Many people will not have any symptoms.</li> <li>• When symptoms occur, they can include flu-like symptoms, unexplained diarrhoea, weight loss, rashes and fever.</li> </ul>	A blood test can determine if you have HIV. There is no cure, but the condition can be managed with medication.

## 3.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Rights and responsibilities

- a. Divide into small groups and create a 'Bill of sexual health rights'. Begin each point with 'I have the right to ...'.
- b. As a class, share your viewpoints.
- c. Is it consent? Identify the examples that include consent from the list below.
  - *Your partner didn't say 'no' to your touching but didn't say 'yes' either.*
  - *You say 'yes' enthusiastically and without feeling pressured.*
  - *Your partner said 'yes' last time.*
  - *Your partner's body language matches them saying 'yes'.*
  - *You change your mind and say 'no'.*
  - *Your partner said 'no'.*
  - *You pushed the other person away.*
- d. Divide into small groups, read the following scenario and answer the questions that follow.

*Andrea is in Year 8. She has experienced early puberty and a rapid growth spurt and looks much older than her age. Ben, who is 17 years old and in Year 11, starts to give her lots of attention and lets her know he is sexually attracted to her. He is treating her as though she is much older than she is. She has never experienced this situation before and doesn't know what to do.*

  - i. What might Andrea be feeling?
  - ii. How does an understanding of the rights and responsibilities that apply in relationships allow Andrea to manage this situation?

### 2 Telling it like it is

- a. Use the **Types of contraception** interactivity in the Online Resources to find out how much you know. Write the correct answers for any questions you got wrong in your workbook.
- b. Create two new questions to add to a quiz and write them on a slip of paper along with the correct answer. Your teacher will then shuffle all the new questions and pose some of them to the class. Take note of the questions you could not answer correctly.

### 3 Sexually transmitted infections

- a. In pairs, research one sexually transmitted infection. Use the internet or the **Information on sexually transmitted infections** and **ReachOut: STIs** weblinks in the Online Resources.
- b. Design a fact sheet about the STI you researched that includes the following information:
  - i. what causes the infection
  - ii. how it affects the body
  - iii. how it is transmitted from person to person
  - iv. who is at risk
  - v. how it is treated
  - vi. ways to prevent contraction.



weblink

## on Resources

 **Interactivity** Types of contraception (int-6320)

## 3.4 Exercise

### 3.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 4, 5

#### LEVEL 2

3, 6, 7, 8

#### LEVEL 3

9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Who is responsible for safe sex practices?
  - All of the people involved in the sexual activity
  - The male
  - The female
  - No one
- Sort the following statements as either rights or responsibilities in a sexual relationship.
  - To be loved and accepted for who you are
  - To respect the other person's opinions, needs and choices
  - To provide and use protection when having sex
  - To choose not to have sex if you are not ready or when you don't want to
  - To be respected as a whole person and not just a sexual object

Rights	Responsibilities

- MC** Identify two ways to ensure your sexual relationships in the future are positive.
  - Do not communicate
  - Clearly speak your boundaries
  - Know your rights and responsibilities
  - Rush into a decision
- Contraception methods and devices are designed to prevent conception and therefore pregnancy. True or false?
- MC** What is the benefit of condoms over other contraceptives?
  - They stop an egg being released from the ovaries.
  - They regulate hormones.
  - They provide protection against STIs.
  - They are free.

### Apply your understanding

- Outline** why it is important to obtain consent before *and* during sexual activity.
- The acronym FRIES is a good reminder of the key elements of consent. **Identify** what each letter of FRIES stands for and explain what each means.
- Choose two rights or responsibilities and **explain** why each is important in a sexual relationship.
- Identify** two types of contraceptives that would be appropriate for young, sexually active people to use. **Justify** your reasoning. Think about the pros and cons.
- Identify** some possible outcomes for males and females who decide to become sexually active at a young age.
  - Discuss** strategies you could implement to promote safer sex practice and interactions.

# LESSON

## 3.5 Accessing health information and services

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Access and evaluate health information to manage the physical, social, and emotional changes and transitions during adolescence.

### ENGAGE

You have learned about the many changes that occur during puberty. It is both an exciting and challenging time. Brainstorm strategies, tips and resources that you can use to help you manage this time of transition. Think about:

- How might you take care of your growing and changing body?
- How important is nutrition, exercise and rest?
- Who are some of the trusted adults who can support you?
- What organisations can give you information and support?

**FIGURE 3.36** The juggling act during adolescence



### 3.5.1 Dealing with puberty

The many changes that occur during puberty can make for a challenging time. It is important to remember that everyone who has reached adulthood has gone through these changes. You don't need to feel alone and there are many strategies and resources available to support you during this time. When things get difficult, remember that this is a normal stage of every person's life, and all your friends are going through similar changes. Be kind to yourself and kind to your friends as you navigate through this time. The following tips can be useful when you are dealing with the changes of puberty (figure 3.37). See also the weblinks **Inside puberty** and **No shame in talking it out** in the Online Resources.



weblink

**FIGURE 3.37** Tips for managing puberty

<b>Read and learn about puberty</b>	Knowing what to expect can help you manage changes.
<b>Talk with family and friends</b>	Discussing any issues can solve them before they become unmanageable.
<b>Get enough sleep</b>	Getting sufficient sleep helps you feel energised and manage your emotions.
<b>Take time to relax</b>	Strategies such as engaging in hobbies, practising meditation, listening to music or hanging out with friends are important to stay connected and to boost confidence.
<b>Be physically active</b>	Staying active every day helps you to manage stress.
<b>Seek help from others</b>	Talking with trusted adults, counsellors or healthcare workers can give you strategies to manage any issues you are concerned about.

### DID YOU KNOW?

Endorphins are chemicals produced by the pituitary gland. They help relieve pain and can provide you with a feeling of happiness. When you exercise rigorously, you stimulate your pituitary gland into producing a lot of endorphins, which in turn make you feel happy. This is one of the reasons why exercise relieves stress and can help you manage your emotions.

## 3.5.2 Accessing healthcare

### Medicare

Medicare is an Australian government service that pays for some or all of the cost of healthcare services for all Australians, including adolescents. Most of the time, simple visits to a doctor will be paid for by Medicare if you present a Medicare card. This is known as **bulk-billing**. You may be listed on your parent or guardian's Medicare card, or if you are over 14 years of age, you may be eligible to apply for your own Medicare card.

General practitioners (GPs) are often the first contact young people have with the healthcare system. GPs provide a range of services, including:

- treatment and care advice about anything from managing acne to coping with symptoms of period pain
- preparation of mental health plans
- referral to the right health professional (including specialists)
- information on contraception and safe sexual practices
- prescriptions for appropriate medicines.

**FIGURE 3.38** Medicare is Australia's universal health insurance scheme. It provides subsidised healthcare services, such as GP consultations.



**bulk-billing** when a health service accepts your Medicare card as payment for the appointment, meaning that the fee will be paid in full by the government

During adolescence, you may move towards ‘health independence’. This is the ability to confidently manage your own health, including seeing a GP on your own, confidentially.

Below is a basic checklist to follow when booking an appointment with a health professional.

1. If you have a Medicare card, find a doctor who bulk bills and book an appointment. You can search for local bulk-billing medical centres or doctors online, or ask when you call to make an appointment.
2. Ring your doctor to:
  - confirm you will be attending without your parents
  - confirm you want the appointment kept private
  - ask for a male or female doctor if you want to
  - ask about payment options
  - ask about nearby public transport options.
3. Prepare a list of questions or current signs and symptoms to discuss with your doctor.
4. Arrive 10 minutes before your allocated appointment in case you need to fill out any forms.
5. Make sure you communicate openly with your doctor and listen to their advice.
6. Consider taking a parent, friend or trusted adult with you for support.
7. Depending on the reason you are seeing your doctor, it might be a good idea to take some time after the appointment to think about your treatment options before you make any commitments.

**FIGURE 3.39** How to make an appointment with a doctor



### 3.5.3 Accessing health information and services

There are a range of community and government services and programs available that specifically target the needs of young people. This includes providing assistance with managing the physical, social and emotional changes of adolescence. These services and programs are generally free, accessible from anywhere, focused on the needs of young people and of high quality.

#### headspace

headspace is the National Youth Mental Health Foundation funded by the Australian government. It provides information, support and services to young people aged 12–25 years and their families and friends across Australia. headspace welcomes and supports young people of any ethnicity, culture, faith, sexual orientation and gender identity and provides a range of services to improve health and wellbeing.

Their services cover four core areas:

- mental health and wellbeing
- physical and sexual health
- work and study support
- alcohol and other drug services.

These services are provided through their website, headspace centres and an online counselling service (ehespace). headspace centres are located across metropolitan, regional and rural areas of Australia. The centres are built and designed with input from young people, so they are youth-friendly and don't have the same look or feel as other clinical services.

At these centres, young people can be assisted to access:

- GPs
- psychologists
- social workers
- alcohol and drug workers
- counsellors
- vocational workers or youth workers.

headspace also has youth-friendly general practitioners (GPs).

**FIGURE 3.40** headspace provides inclusive online, telephone and in-person support and counselling to people aged 12–25 and their families and friends.



## ReachOut

ReachOut is an online mental health service for young people and their parents in Australia. ReachOut provides self-help information, peer-support programs and referral tools to help young people be well and stay well. ReachOut.com offers a range of options for young people aged 12–25, with a focus on supporting their mental health and wellbeing through everyday issues and tough times. The website has articles and information, an online chat and community to connect with. It also has a range of mobile phone apps and tools that can help with health and wellbeing. ReachOut is a free, anonymous, online platform available 24/7. It has no waitlists.

**FIGURE 3.41** ReachOut provides 24/7 online support for young people aged 12–25 and their families.



## Kids Helpline

Kids Helpline is Australia's only free (even from a mobile), confidential 24/7 online and phone counselling service for young people aged 5–25. Qualified counsellors at Kids Helpline are available via WebChat, phone or email anytime and for any reason. The Kids Helpline website also has a range of resources, information and strategies to help with issues like:

- mental health
- identity
- friends
- family and relationships
- safety and other life issues.

They have also launched a mobile app called Niggle, which allows young people to capture their niggles — those feelings that won't go away — and do something about them. The app provides information, videos, podcasts, quizzes and tips to help young people 'tame their niggles'.

**FIGURE 3.42** Kids Helpline offers free and confidential online and phone counselling for young people aged 5–25.



## DISCUSS



Look at the services and apps in figure 3.43. Go to their websites and explore the resources available to young people. Share your findings with the class.

**FIGURE 3.43** There are many sources of health information.



### 3.5.4 Evaluating health information

There are many sources of health-related information on the internet, and influencers, bloggers, social media accounts and many health apps may target adolescents. But how do you know if the information has come from a credible source? You can employ the R.E.A.L. strategy, which will help you evaluate whether your source of health information is reliable (see figure 3.44).

In addition to the large amount of health-related information on the internet, there are many health-related apps available to download onto your devices. Many of these require you to input personal information. When using health-related apps, use the R.E.A.L. strategy to evaluate them. Also find out who developed and funds the app and think about whether they are qualified to provide health-related information. Check if they are linked with a particular product or brand and if they have something to sell. This can mean there is a motive behind the information being provided, and the advice being given may be unreliable.

**FIGURE 3.44** The R.E.A.L. strategy helps you work out if health information is reliable.

<b>R</b> – Read the URL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Non-commercial websites, such as those ending in .org, .edu and .gov, are generally reliable sources.</li><li>● Websites with a URL ending with .com may be commercial sites trying to sell a product, and therefore may not be a reliable source of information.</li><li>● Social media sites that are selling a product will have a buy link and may not be a reliable source of information.</li></ul>
<b>E</b> – Examine the site's content	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Who funds or sponsors the website, blog, social media account or app?</li><li>● Is the material current — that is, recent and not out-of-date?</li><li>● Is the site updated regularly?</li><li>● Are social media sites moderated or managed?</li></ul>
<b>A</b> – Ask about the author of the site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Look at the author, publisher and/or organisation that publishes the website, blog or social media account. What are their credentials?</li><li>● Are they qualified to be providing advice?</li><li>● Can you find the details of the author or publisher if you wish to contact them?</li><li>● If the source is a blog or social media account, what information is provided in the profile?</li></ul>
<b>L</b> – Look at the links and sources from the site or blog	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● What type of webpages are they linking to?</li><li>● Do their web addresses end in .gov, .edu or .org?</li><li>● What sources are used?</li><li>● Are these credible and relevant sources?</li></ul>

### 3.5 ACTIVITIES

#### 1 The challenges of puberty – classroom debate

*'Some young people seem to go through puberty without any problems at all.'*

- Do you believe this statement? Explain why you do or you don't.
- Develop a classroom debate scenario that incorporates both the affirmative and negative sides of this statement.

#### 2 Embracing puberty – classroom display

- Brainstorm the challenges related to the physical, social and emotional changes associated with puberty.
- Using your knowledge of self-care actions and online programs and resources, recommend strategies for each challenge and present these as a poster or pamphlet.
- Make sure you include information on how to access any support organisations and explain the support available.

#### 3 Interview with a trusted adult

Write some interview questions that you would like to ask a trusted adult about their experience of puberty. Some example questions could include:

- What do you remember most about going through puberty?
- How did you learn about puberty?
- What physical, social and emotional changes can I expect will happen? How can I best prepare for those changes?
- What aspects of puberty did you find the most challenging?
- What is one piece of advice you would give young people currently going through puberty?
- What other strategies can we use to navigate through this time together?

## 4 Postcard to a parent or trusted adult

What do you want your parents or a trusted adult to know about supporting you through puberty? Using your knowledge of resources that provide advice on puberty and adolescence, write a postcard telling an adult how they can best support you.

- Include information about at least three webpages or online resources that you feel provide good advice on helping adolescents navigate puberty.
- Make sure you include the URL as a link.
- Provide a short explanation of why you think they should visit that page and read that material.

## 5 Mindfulness

Smiling Mind is a modern meditation tool for young people. It is a unique web- and app-based program developed by a team of psychologists with expertise in youth and adolescent therapy. Smiling Mind is a simple tool that gives you a sense of calm, clarity and contentment using the practice of mindfulness.

Using this self-care tool gives you the chance to reflect and be aware of your emotions. This helps you to manage any stress or confusion. Meditation can be a helpful tool during difficult times, but it is also very healthy to include it in your daily routine. Use the **Smiling Mind** weblink in the Online Resources to explore the benefits of mindfulness for dealing with the changes and challenges of puberty.

## 6 Medicare

All Australians are eligible for a Medicare card to help access subsidised healthcare. You will need to provide your Medicare number if you make an appointment with the doctor. Use the **Youth Law Australia** weblink in the Online Resources to research who can access a Medicare card. Find out how you can apply for your own Medicare card. Create a flow diagram that shows this process.

## 7 How do I feel?

Complete the worksheet **How do I feel about the challenges in my life?**



doc-14652

## 3.5 Exercise

### 3.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

#### LEVEL 2

5, 6, 7

#### LEVEL 3

8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which of the following is an effective help-seeking strategy?
  - Going to a trusted adult for guidance and assistance when you are worried or have a problem
  - Having a chat to your friend about a concert you went to the night before
  - Searching Wikipedia for answers to a problem
  - Chatting to a classmate that you don't know very well about a problem
- Ensuring you get enough sleep, stay active and maintain a healthy diet can help manage some of the physical and emotional changes of puberty. True or false?
- MC** How can you check the accuracy, reliability and quality of health and puberty information online and in social media?
  - Look at the quality of the images and graphics.
  - Identify the organisation, author and funding source behind the site or app.
  - Ask around at school to see if anyone has heard of it.
  - Check to see if the site or app has a large number of 'likes'.

4. Moderate to vigorous physical activity is recommended for adolescents every day to relieve stress and help manage emotions. True or false?
5. Websites such as ReachOut and headspace don't provide online, safe chat spaces for young people to talk about issues and worries. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Outline** the advice you would give to someone who is not coping with the changes they are experiencing during adolescence.
7. **Identify** two people who could help you deal with the changes of puberty. **Describe** the types of advice or support they might offer.
8. If you decided to visit a doctor to get some advice, **outline** the steps you would take to choose a GP and prepare for the appointment. Think about who (if anyone) you would take with you to the appointment.
9. **Describe** the steps you might follow to assess the accuracy, reliability and quality of health and puberty information online and in social media. Would you still look at the information if you didn't completely trust the source? **Explain** why or why not.

## LESSON

### 3.6 Rites of passage for adolescents

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Examine ceremonies and celebrations that support adolescents during a time of transition.

#### ENGAGE

Many cultures, including First Nations Australians, have traditional ceremonies to mark milestones and significant life events.

Consider and discuss the following questions:

- Should the onset of puberty be marked with a celebration? Why or why not?
- What might a celebration of puberty involve? Who should it include and why?
- What knowledge, information and skills might young people want to experience or gain from this celebration?

#### 3.6.1 Taking your place in your community

Adolescence is a time of great change. During this time, young people explore their identity and expand their relationships. They start to develop responsibility and independence by taking their place in their family and their community. This can build their understanding of their roles and responsibilities as adults in their own communities.

#### 3.6.2 Rites of passage

The transition into adolescence is marked in different ways around the world. The cultural influence on young people's development and identity is a large one. In some cultures, the biological changes associated with puberty are celebrated in ceremonial ways to mark the move from childhood into adolescence. In Western culture, this transition is less ceremonial but is still shown in the way adolescents change their dress, appearance and way of interacting with others.

**FIGURE 3.45** Adolescence brings with it an increasing range of rights and responsibilities.



Different cultures all over the world have developed ceremonies, rituals and **rites of passage** to mark the transition from youth to adulthood. These ceremonies and rituals are designed to challenge, inspire and mentor young people into adulthood. This can assist them to develop a sense a connection and belonging to their **culture** and the wider community. Some examples of formal celebrations around the world that mark the transition from childhood to adulthood include:

- The Jewish Bar (male) and Bat (female) Mitzvah
- Tanzania and Kenya — Maasai coming-of-age ceremony
- First Nations Australians have gender-specific ceremonies as children transition into adolescence and are initiated as adults. This includes being given responsibility to hold onto and pass on certain information and practices. This is dependent on their place within the kinship system.
- Hispanic cultures — Quinceañera.

In Western culture, ‘rites of passage’ are centred around increased responsibility and independence. This could include:

- starting a social media account, such as on Tik-Tok
- getting a mobile phone
- graduating to high school, including greater freedom to socialise independently of family
- taking on chores and duties at home to earn an allowance
- getting your L plates to learn to drive
- attending the school formal
- attending a debutant ball
- getting a part-time job
- registering to vote.

**rites of passage** a process that transforms you from one stage of life to the next

**culture** the ethos, values, beliefs and/or philosophies of a group of people

**FIGURE 3.46** Learning to drive is an important milestone for many young people.



Modern Western cultures have lost some of their traditional celebrations and ceremonies and the associated benefits they offered in terms of mentoring young people into adulthood. As a result, many organisations, communities and families are developing their own rituals. These help to support adolescents to safely move towards becoming independent, respectful and knowledgeable members of their families and communities. These rituals help young people to find purpose and meaning and to become more self-confident, active and responsible members of their society. This supports their overall health and wellbeing.

Family and culture are important during adolescence. Some young people live across multiple cultures and are experiencing these changes in the context of all these cultures’ various expectations and customs. For example, a student whose identity incorporates aspects of one or more cultures other than mainstream Australian culture (e.g. because they are a First Nations Australian or because they or one or more of their parents migrated to

Australia) is influenced by these multiple cultures as they transition into adulthood. Their peer culture may be very different from their cultural heritage in terms of language, social expectations and cultural values. This may make it difficult to achieve a sense of belonging and could affect their relationships with friends and family, as well as their overall health and wellbeing.

### 3.6.3 Ceremonies of First Nations Australians

‘Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander cultures are complex and diverse. The Indigenous cultures of Australia are the oldest living cultural history in the world — they go back at least 65,000 years. Indigenous communities keep their cultural heritage alive by passing their knowledge, arts, ceremonies and performances from one generation to another, speaking and teaching languages, protecting cultural materials, sacred and significant sites, and objects. For Indigenous Australians, the land is the core of all spirituality and this relationship and the spirit of “Country” is central to the issues that are important to Indigenous people today.’ — Ngunnawal Elder, Tina Brown

The sharing of intergenerational knowledge from Elders to young First Nations Australians ensures these young people become connected to Country and become custodians of their history and culture.

There are hundreds of First Nations language groups across our vast continent, each of which have their own ceremonies and rituals designed to build a strong connection to Country, culture, history and community. The nature of these ceremonies differs between groups. These ceremonies can be sacred and private, only known and celebrated by members of that cultural group.

Rituals and ceremonies that pass on cultural knowledge are important for young First Nations Australians. They foster their personal identities, connection with family and community and enrich their sense of belonging in their society. Connection to culture may lead First Nations Australian youth to be happier, healthier and more fulfilled in life, promoting their spiritual, social and emotional health and wellbeing.

**FIGURE 3.47** Culture is the foundation upon which everything else is built for First Nations Australians.



**TABLE 3.7** First Nations Australian ceremonies

**First Nations ceremonies**

**Corroboree**

A corroboree is a ceremonial meeting where First Nations Peoples express their culture through ceremony, music, costume and dance. They paint their bodies and participants wear various adornments that are special for the occasion. It is sacred to them, held on Country and is sometimes private.

Corroborees differ between language groups and are held for a range of different ceremonies.



**Smoking ceremony and cleansing**

Burning native plants is an ancient custom among First Nations Peoples.

It involves burning various plants to produce smoke to cleanse and heal places and people, ward off bad spirits, and provide safe passage to visitors on Country.

Those present will generally be invited to walk through the smoke for an individual cleansing.

**Story telling – Dreaming**

Dreaming stories can be delivered verbally, in song and dance and through art. Dreaming stories explain history and culture, such as explaining the origin of the universe, the workings of nature and the cycle of life and death. They shape and structure life by regulating kinship, ceremonial life and even the relationship between the genders with a network of obligations involving people, land and spirits.



**Source:** adapted from King et al. 2009, 'Oxford Studies of Religion', Oxford University Press, South Melbourne.

**Young Mob – First Nations youth program**

Having a strong cultural identity and connection to country is vital to the health and social and emotional wellbeing of First Nations youth. Many First Nations students struggle with their confidence, self-esteem and self-identity, and many don't finish Year 12.

Young Mob is a World Vision program that works with communities where they are invited, with the aim of responding to individual school and local community needs. The program employs, trains and strengthens local First Nations people and supports First Nations youth to increase their knowledge and understanding of their culture and identity. Facilitators of the program range in age, knowledge and skills and have links to the local community, land and culture. The team features staff, Elders and members of the community.

The core method of teaching is yarning. This is a conversational process involving the sharing of stories and communicating in ways that are culturally prescribed, cooperative and respectful. Themes covered by Young Mob include identity, culture, strong spirit, yarning and storytelling, First Nations resilience, social justice, health, goal setting, community contribution and public speaking.

Young Mob is in the city, the regions and out bush. Activities happen at schools, day forums, road trips, camps and exchange trips. Their programs offer experiences to First Nations students from urban NSW and Victoria.

In 2018, the Young Mob program expanded into more schools than ever before, and together with their partner, the First Nations organisation First Hand Solutions, they delivered more camps and trips than in previous years. Participants have built on their life skills, increased their school engagement and are more empowered and excited as they confidently step up and take on opportunities focused on their future. They are now looking towards a brighter future, positively engaging with the world around them. In turn, many schools have increased their First Nations cultural knowledge and understanding of its importance and are more inclusive of First Nations students.

**Source:** <https://www.worldvision.com.au/youngmob>

### Questions

1. Identify some of the skills and knowledge that First Nations Australian youth might learn by participating in the Young Mob program.
2. Young Mob could be considered a rite of passage to help young people transition into adulthood and take their place in their family and culture. Explain why you agree or disagree.
3. Discuss how participating in the Young Mob program might improve the physical, social and emotional health and wellbeing of young First Nations Australians.

## DISCUSS

How could an absence of ceremony in the lives of adolescents lead to difficulty in transitioning to adulthood?

## 3.6 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Puberty rites of passage – research

Different cultures have events that mark puberty as a significant transition in a person's life. Research some of these celebrations. You might like to start with:

- The Jewish Bar (male) and Bat (female) Mitzvah
- Tanzania and Kenya – Maasai coming-of-age ceremony
- Hispanic cultures – Quinceañera.

### 2 Design a celebration of puberty as a rite of passage

In the absence of a formal ceremony to celebrate the beginning of adolescence, many families will mark the occasion with their own rituals and celebrations. This might be a special family meal, a camping trip or a family photo session. Some organisations even hold seminars and camps for you to attend with a significant adult to bond and celebrate this time.

- a. In small groups, plan a ritual or celebration that celebrates this important stage in a young person's life.
- b. Think about the knowledge that might be shared at this event.
- c. What extra responsibilities could you take on as a result of undertaking this ritual?

### 3 Cultural events and health and wellbeing

Being connected to your culture and understanding your cultural history can play an important role in your identity as well as your health and wellbeing. As you transition through adolescence, this connection can become even more important in helping you understand your emerging roles and responsibilities in adulthood.

- a. Use the weblink **First Nations Australians' cultural experiences and events** in the Online Resources to explore First Nations Australians' cultural events.
- b. Think about how events such as these can connect young people to their culture and improve their spiritual and emotional health and wellbeing.



weblink

## 3.6 Exercise

### 3.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**LEVEL 2**

6, 8

**LEVEL 3**

7, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. Adolescence is a time when young people can start to develop knowledge and skills so they can transition into adulthood. True or false?
2. **MC** Which of the following is a common feature of rites of passage ceremonies or rituals that celebrate puberty?
  - A. They involve mentoring by adults to learn about history, culture or skills.
  - B. They use challenges or tasks to show independence.
  - C. They can be unique in a culture or a family.
  - D. All of the above
3. For all cultural groups, including First Nations Australians, having ways of passing on and connecting to culture and history is important for health and wellbeing. True or false?
4. **MC** An absence of ritual or ceremony in Western culture can mean rites of passage involve events like:
  - A. learning to drive.
  - B. attending a school formal.
  - C. enrolling to vote.
  - D. All of the above
5. Australian First Nations Peoples have the oldest continuous cultures in the world. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Discuss** how rituals or ceremonies designed to celebrate the beginning of puberty might affect the health and wellbeing of young people.
7. In the absence of formal rituals to celebrate the transition to adulthood, some young Australians have invented their own ceremonies focused around drinking, risk taking and unsafe behaviour. **Discuss** the impact of these actions.
8. First Nations cultures emphasise the importance of Country, community and culture. **Describe** how this may assist in keeping traditions alive over generations.
9. **Evaluate** how a strong cultural connection can improve the health and wellbeing of First Nations Australians.

# LESSON

## 3.7 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 3.7.1 What have I learned?

- Puberty is the phase of adolescence characterised by many physical changes. It is when secondary sex characteristics develop in preparation for reproduction.
- Puberty is triggered by the release of hormones.
- The pituitary gland controls the release of the growth hormone. This gland also triggers production of the female reproductive hormone, oestrogen, and the male reproductive hormone, testosterone.
- One of the major changes for females during puberty is the start of menstruation. For males, it is the production of sperm.
- Adolescence is also marked by significant social changes. Adolescents start to seek independence from their parents, and their peer relationships take on new importance.
- Exploring and expressing sexual feelings is a part of adolescence.
- Setting personal boundaries is a good strategy to assist with managing the social and emotional changes of adolescence, including coping with peer pressure.
- Making good decisions about whether to engage in sexual activity, knowing your rights and responsibilities in sexual relationships, and taking precautions against unwanted pregnancy and sexually transmitted infections (STIs) will help ensure positive sexual health.
- When you give consent to engage in sex or sexual touching, it must be freely given, reversible, informed, enthusiastic and ongoing.
- Learning strategies to handle your emotions during a time of emotional upheaval is important to maintain positive relationships with others.
- Using positive self-talk in unfamiliar or new situations can help us feel in control and build our confidence.
- The time needed to reach emotional maturity varies between individuals. Some signs of emotional maturity include controlling impulses, managing stress, knowing your feelings and why you are experiencing them, and expressing yourself appropriately.
- Females and males mature at different rates. Females tend to mature earlier than males.
- Physical maturity does not necessarily mean emotional maturity.
- Many self-care strategies are available for managing the physical and emotional challenges of puberty.
- Medical and online resources also provide strategies and supports to manage the challenges of puberty.
- Culture plays an important role and can influence the transition into adolescence.
- Some cultures have rituals and celebrations that share knowledge to assist with the transition from childhood into adulthood.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- What physical, social and emotional changes occur during adolescence?
- What are some effective strategies and resources that can help you navigate this time of change?

Evaluate your initial responses to these essential questions now that you have studied the topic.

## 3.7.2 Key terms

**Adam's apple** caused by the enlargement of the larynx (voice box)

**bulk-billing** when a health service accepts your Medicare card as payment for the appointment, meaning that the fee will be paid in full by the government

**conception** the union of a female's egg and a male's sperm

**consent** free and enthusiastic agreement to participate in a sexual activity and an understanding about what is being agreed to

**contraception** any method or device that prevents conception and, therefore, a pregnancy

**cortisol** the body's main stress hormone

**culture** the ethos, values, beliefs and/or philosophies of a group of people

**ejaculation** the release of semen from the penis

**endometrium** the lining of the uterus. It is made of hormones, mucus and blood. When pregnant, it nourishes the foetus.

**erection** when blood fills the spongy tissue in the penis. The penis enlarges and stiffens.

**growth hormone** a chemical released by the pituitary gland that causes a rapid growth spurt

**hormone** a chemical that is made by specialist cells and released into the bloodstream to send a message to another part of the body. It affects how our bodies work and grow.

**menstruation** also known as a period. It is the shedding of the uterus lining.

**nocturnal emission (wet dream)** an ejaculation of semen when a male is asleep

**oestrogen** female reproductive hormone. It is produced in the ovaries.

**ovaries** there are two ovaries that make up a female's reproductive system. They produce oestrogen and release ova.

**ovulation** the process of the ovary releasing an ovum (egg)

**ovum** the egg produced by the ovaries. The plural of ovum is ova.

**personal boundaries** the limits you set for yourself and your interactions with others to help you know what you are comfortable with

**pituitary gland** a gland located in the brain. It controls the release of a number of different hormones.

**primary sex characteristics** the characteristics directly necessary for reproduction; the ovaries and the testes

**protected sex** using a condom during sexual intercourse to prevent pregnancy and the spread of sexually transmitted infections (STIs)

**puberty** a time of physical, social and emotional change, characterised by the maturation of sexual and reproductive organs

**rites of passage** a process that transforms you from one stage of life to the next

**secondary sex characteristics** traits arising from changes at puberty. They are not directly related to reproduction and are not present at birth.

**self-talk** the internal statements we use relating to and describing our selves

**semen** a whitish fluid released by the prostate gland

**sexually transmitted infection (STI)** an infection that is transmitted through sexual activity

**sperm** the male reproductive sex cell. It is produced in the testes.

**testes** there are two testes that make up a male's reproductive system. They produce testosterone and sperm.

**testosterone** male reproductive hormone. It is produced in the testes.

**vulva** the external female genitalia

## 3.7 Exercise

### 3.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

#### ■ LEVEL 2

11, 12, 13, 14, 15,  
16, 20

#### ■ LEVEL 3

17, 18, 19

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. Generally, females begin puberty earlier than males.	
2. Semen contains sperm.	
3. The endometrium is a part of the male reproductive system.	
4. Menstruation is also known as a period. It is the shedding of the uterus lining and the 'dead' egg if not pregnant.	
5. The contraceptive pill alone can help prevent chlamydia.	
6. The 'R' in the consent acronym FRIES stands for 'reversible'.	
7. A person in an intimate or sexual relationship has a responsibility to put the decision making, choice and use of protection when having sex onto their partner.	
8. Using a condom is still advised when using most other forms of contraception because it increases your protection against unplanned pregnancy and STIs.	
9. Medicare can provide subsidised general practitioner consultations for young people.	
10. When evaluating online health information, it is important to examine the website to ensure the material is current.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Describe** some of the physical, social and emotional changes that young people experience during adolescence.
12. **Explain** the role of hormones during puberty.
13. **Describe** the menstrual cycle.
14. **Explain** why young people mature at different rates.
15. **Explain** the rights and responsibilities people have when they engage in sexual relationships. Why are these important for your health?
16. **Identify** and **explain** strategies that can help you deal positively with the changes and challenges that you will experience during adolescence.
17. **Propose** the advice you would give to someone who is not coping with the changes they are experiencing during adolescence.
18. **Consider** what future changes and challenges you expect in your life and **propose** how you will deal with them effectively.
19. **Identify** an online support service for young people. **Discuss** how it can assist them in managing the changes experienced during adolescence.
20. **Describe** the role of rituals and ceremonies in promoting the health and wellbeing of young First Nations Australians.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign unique tests and exams



Access quarantined tests and assessments



Track your students' results



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

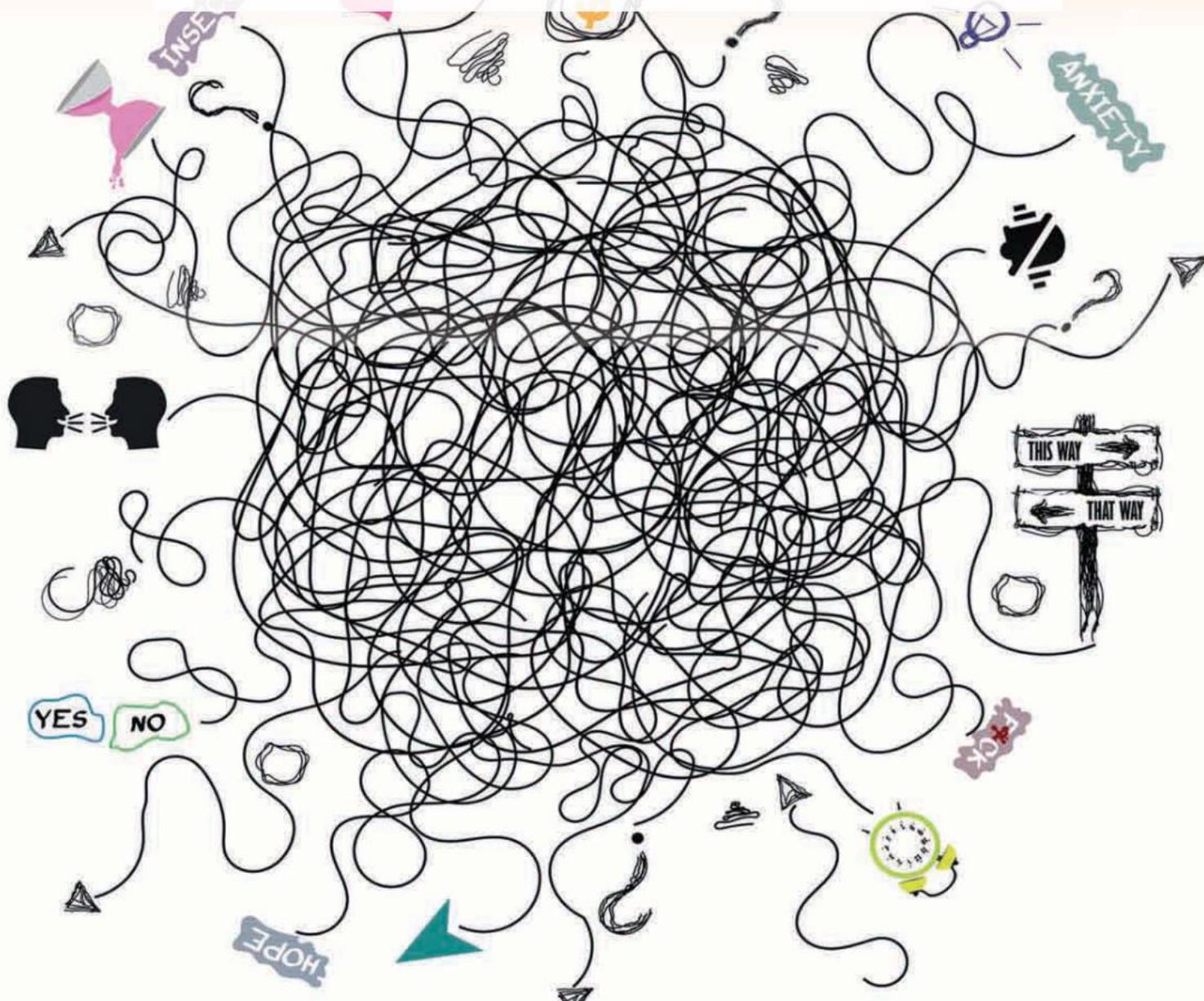


# 4 Protective behaviours and seeking help

## LESSON SEQUENCE

4.1 Overview .....	145
4.2 Mental health: how can we support ourselves and others? .....	146
4.3 Healthy decisions: drugs .....	154
4.4 Drugs and your health: stimulants .....	158
4.5 Drugs and your health: depressants .....	162
4.6 Drugs and your health: hallucinogens .....	167
4.7 How can we keep our relationships healthy? .....	172
4.8 How can we stay safe online? .....	176
4.9 Help-seeking scenarios .....	181
4.10 Review .....	187

**FIGURE 4.1** Seeking help and knowing the right thing to do can be confusing when there are so many options.



# LESSON

## 4.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 4.1.1 Looking after yourself and others

Why do we need to protect ourselves and others? Why does adolescence bring about challenges? These years are exciting and fun, filled with new experiences and opportunities. However, there are also **risks** and challenges, and it's important to know how to respond positively to keep yourselves and others safe. Some of the major health issues affecting adolescents relate to mental health, drug use, relationships and online platforms such as social media. The interactions individuals can have in these contexts can be complex. In this topic, you will explore how a better understanding of these issues can significantly improve your decision-making ability, health and quality of life.

**risk** uncertainty about the effects or implications of an activity; can be positive or negative

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTION

How can I adapt to the challenges that come with adolescence, support others and make the right choices?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. How can you help yourself and others with mental health?
2. What strategies can you use to stay safe?
3. Where can you get help when you need it?



Resources



**Video eLesson** Protective behaviours and seeking help (eles-6021)

# LESSON

## 4.2 Mental health: how can we support ourselves and others?

### LEARNING INTENTION

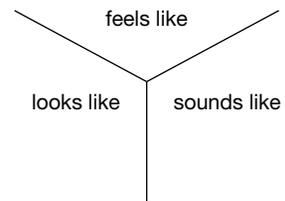
- Identify proactive ways to support your own and others' mental health.



doc-39396

### ENGAGE

1. On a Y chart, like the one shown here, label the three segments 'looks like', 'sounds like' and 'feels like'.
2. Use these categories to brainstorm what looking after yourself and others looks, feels and sounds like.  
List all the situations that could pose a potential challenge for you in your teenage years.



**FIGURE 4.2** In what situations do you need to seek help?



### 4.2.1 What is mental health and why is it important?

**Mental health** refers to the state of a person's mind or brain. It relates to your ability to think and process information. When you experience optimal mental health you are able to:

- positively form opinions
- make decisions and use logic
- manage day-to-day activities with low levels of stress
- think positively
- feel confident
- have high self-esteem.

**mental health** relates to the state of a person's mind or brain and the ability to think and process information

Your mental health will vary day-to-day and year-to-year. Your mental health can be affected by events in your life, such as your parents getting divorced, a friendship break-up or not making a sports team.

Mental health is dynamic, which means it is ever-changing. For example, after your sports team wins the grand final you may be excited and on a high, but after the break-up of a relationship you may be running low and feeling sad.

### DID YOU KNOW?

According to the National Health Survey 2017–18:

- 1 in 5 (20 per cent, or 4.8 million) Australians reported that they had a mental or behavioural condition during the collection period (July 2017 to June 2018).
- Females reported a higher proportion of mental or behavioural conditions (22 per cent) than males (18 per cent).
- Overall, 15–24 year olds had the highest proportion of mental or behavioural conditions (26 per cent) and 0–14 year olds had the lowest (11 per cent).
- Of those participants who had a severe disability, 58 per cent had a mental or behavioural condition compared with 14 per cent of people with no disability or long-term restrictive health condition (ABS 2018).

**Source:** <https://www.aihw.gov.au/reports/australias-health/mental-health>

## Mental health problems

Mental illness affects an individual's thinking, emotions and behaviour. These effects then disrupt the ability to work or participate in day-to-day activities. There is a range of mental illnesses, including depression, anxiety, schizophrenia and anorexia.

### Depression

The number of people experiencing **depression** and **anxiety** is increasing, but it is also becoming more acceptable to speak about mental health. It is important to know what these common mental illnesses are and how we can support ourselves or someone else to seek help.

**depression** a mental illness often characterised by feelings of hopelessness, sadness, isolation and worry  
**anxiety** feeling uneasy or worried

We all experience feelings of unhappiness or sadness at some point in our lives. These feelings are part of a normal and appropriate response to upsetting and painful events, such as the loss of a loved one or the disruption of moving schools. However, when these feelings persist for more than a few weeks, other help is needed.

Depression is a mental illness often characterised by feelings of hopelessness, sadness, isolation and worry. Individuals may feel worthless and may withdraw from normal situations. These symptoms can be long-lasting and stop an individual from participating in normal activities.

### Anxiety

Anxiety is a feeling of being uneasy or worried. These emotions may be brought on by a real or perceived threat to your safety and wellbeing. It may be shortlived or persistent. It may be low level or it could be intense worry and fear about apparently 'normal' everyday situations. Anxiety varies from person to person. For some, it is linked to specific situations, such as a test or social settings. For others, it can be present each day and affect their daily life. Common symptoms include:

- racing heart
- tight chest
- quick breathing
- feeling wound up or edgy
- obsessive thinking
- fear or worry that is too much for the situation
- avoiding situations that could increase the anxious feelings.

This avoidance can impact on a person's study, work or social life.

## Protective factors

Some things in life help promote good mental health. These are known as protective factors. They include:

- developing good social and emotional skills to avoid social isolation
- having positive connections with your family
- having strong cultural connections
- having a strong sense of identify
- being educated about mental health and having strategies to manage it
- being physically active (exercise releases chemicals such as endorphins and serotonin, which improve your mood and reduce stress).

**FIGURE 4.3** Physical activity is a protective factor for anxiety and depression.

### The brain benefits of exercise

- Increases production of neurochemicals that promote brain cell repair
- Improves memory
- Lengthens attention span
- Boosts decision-making skills
- Promotes growth of new nerve cells and blood vessels
- Improves multitasking and planning
- Triggers serotonin production or release which causes feelings of happiness and security, and regulates mood, appetite and sleep patterns
- Triggers the release or production of endorphins that help alleviate depression and anxiety
- Helps give purpose and structure to the day



Sections 4.2.2 and 4.2.3 will look at how you can seek help and help others with their mental health.

## 4.2.2 Health agencies

There are many sources of information about mental illness, including helplines, websites and government mental health information services.



**TABLE 4.1** Health agencies online

<b>Australian Government: Head to Health</b>	A good starting point for resources. This is an Australian Department of Health website that lists trusted digital mental health services from Australian mental health organisations. It brings together apps, online programs and forums, phone services, and a range of digital information resources.
<b>Beyond Blue Support Service – Support. Advice. Action</b>	Beyond Blue provides information and referral to relevant services for depression- and anxiety-related matters.
<b>Black Dog Institute</b>	The Black Dog Institute is a world leader in the diagnosis, treatment and prevention of mood disorders such as depression and bipolar disorder.
<b>Butterfly Foundation</b>	Butterfly provides support for Australians who suffer from eating disorders and negative body image issues and their carers.

<b>Carer Gateway</b>	Carer Gateway provides support services for those who care for a loved one, friend or family member. It gives information about the support services available.
<b>FriendLine</b>	FriendLine is for anyone who needs to reconnect or just wants a chat. All conversations with FriendLine are casual and anonymous and friendly volunteers are ready to talk about anything and everything.
<b>headspace</b>	headspace is the National Youth Mental Health Foundation. Their focus is to help young people who are going through a tough time. They also have physical centres you can visit.
<b>Kids Helpline</b>	Kids Helpline provides confidential and anonymous telephone and online counselling services for young people aged 5–25.
<b>Lifeline</b>	Lifeline is a 24-hour telephone counselling service.
<b>Mensline Australia</b>	Mensline is a dedicated service for men with relationship and family concerns.
<b>Mindframe</b>	Mindframe provides information to Australians about suicide prevention and counselling.
<b>Mi Networks</b>	Mi Networks provides resources for those living with a mental illness and their friends, carers and family. It offers access to relevant, up-to-date information, peer support and connections to local community networks.
<b>1800RESPECT</b>	1800RESPECT is a national sexual assault and domestic family violence counselling service. It provides 24-hour online support for workers and professionals.
<b>QLife</b>	QLife provides Australia-wide, anonymous, LGBTIQ+ peer support and referral for people wanting to talk about a range of issues including sexuality, identity, gender, bodies, feelings or relationships.
<b>ReachOut Australia</b>	ReachOut is Australia's leading online youth mental health service. Its mission is to help young people lead happier lives.
<b>SANE Australia</b>	SANE Australia is a national charity helping all Australians affected by mental illness lead a better life, through campaigning, education and research. It operates a helpline and website.

## Family doctor

Your family doctor is a reliable source of health information and advice and is often the first step in seeking help with your mental health. Developing a care plan with your GP can give you access to subsidised appointments with a psychologist. To access subsidised healthcare, you need to show your **Medicare** card. Until you are 15, you will be listed on your parent or carer's card. Medicare covers some or all of the costs associated with visits to the doctor or other health professionals.

**Medicare** the government scheme that gives Australian residents access to healthcare

### 4.2.3 Supporting others who need help

Everyone can go through a challenging time. As we grow up, we experience different circumstances or conditions that require support from others. Issues such as mental or emotional health, relationships, sexual health, alcohol and drug use, family matters and nutrition can all test our ability to cope and remain positive. Other challenges may involve the changing nature of relationships, including breaking off relationships and moving forward with relationships. An ongoing health condition can also bring associated feelings of anxiety and stress. We should never underestimate the impact that providing support to others can have. It can make the difference between someone feeling they are coping versus not coping.

Sometimes it can be obvious that others need our support because they will ask for it, or we might sense something is wrong or different and ask them if everything is okay. There are a range of ways in which we can support others. These involve communication, social-emotional support and practical actions.

#### Communication skills to support others

Even when you recognise that someone else needs help, it is not always easy to know what to do. A good way to start is through good communication and showing support. This involves strategies such as showing

**empathy**, active listening and reminding others of their character strengths, skills and abilities. Using values such as **respect**, **compassion** and **integrity** in our communication can show others that we are genuine. Sometimes it's as simple as starting a conversation. Sometimes the conversation can be the solution.

Persuading friends to seek help early is a good step towards convincing them to find a solution to a problem so that the situation doesn't get any worse. Do you know how to persuade a friend who is in need of help to become motivated to take positive action? The following communication techniques (see figure 4.5) can be used to persuade someone to seek help.

**empathy** the ability to identify, appreciate and understand another's situation or feelings  
**respect** recognising and appreciating the differences between people and treating them fairly  
**compassion** a feeling of empathy or sympathy towards someone who is going through a difficult time  
**integrity** being honest, fair and trustworthy, and standing up for what you believe in, even if it is not popular or easy

## Social-emotional support

Positive emotions are contagious. If we express positive emotions, it is likely that other people will also be affected positively. Humour and laughter are positive emotions that can help to relieve stress. This doesn't necessarily mean telling jokes; it is more about looking for humour in difficult situations.

Random acts of kindness go a long way to bringing about positive feelings. This means going out of your way to be kind or to help someone. It could be as simple as saying to someone that they look nice today, helping someone carry their heavy sports bag or letting someone in the canteen line ahead of you. A more structured way of helping others is to be involved in service activities at your school or in community-based programs.

**FIGURE 4.4** Showing empathy towards others is vital when you show support for others in a challenging situation.



**FIGURE 4.5** Use these steps to support your friends.

- Step 1** **Start a conversation.** Preferably somewhere private or quiet.  
You could say: *What's up? How you goin'? Haven't seen you for a while. Is there anything that's wrong?*
- Step 2** **Listen without judgement.** Guide the conversation by acknowledging you understand the problem.  
You could say: *How long have you been feeling like this? How has it made you feel?*
- Step 3** **Acknowledge the problem and encourage action.** Sum up the issue and ask what they are considering doing. Encourage them to take the first step. Assist them in finding useful online resources.  
You could say: *What do you think you should do? Have you considered seeing a doctor or teacher to discuss?*
- Step 4** **Follow up.** Ensure that you get back to them soon on how things went.  
You could say: *Did you get a chance to make an appointment? What were some possible solutions? Did you find the information useful?*
- Step 5** **What if they don't want to talk?** Communicate your concern for them and that you would like to help because you care about them. Don't criticise them for not 'opening up'. You could say: *I'll catch up next time to see how you are going. Would you prefer to talk with someone else?*

## Problem solving for support

Using problem-solving strategies can help you to think through solutions and take action when supporting others. For example, if a classmate has a parent who is suffering from a mental health condition, how could you support them? They may require help with home tasks or may need to find new recipes to cook. Putting yourself in the shoes of others helps you to think about their situation and see the full range of possibilities to support them. Going with someone when they seek support from a teacher or school counsellor offers them reassurance about seeking support from others.

## Seeking additional support for yourself

Sometimes you don't know when you need support. You might think it's 'normal' to always be stressed. Being able to recognise your emotions helps protect against anxiety or depression. It also helps to have a good support network — family, friends, teachers, coaches or counsellors — who can help you in times of need. Seeking the support of others is a constructive way of managing your emotions through challenging times.

## 4.2.4 Self-worth and body image

The way we think, feel, behave and view our body is referred to as our body image.

**FIGURE 4.6** Our minds and our bodies affect each other.



Everyone thinks of and treats their body in their own diverse ways. There are a range of reasons for this, including our cultural background, and the influence of society, our family and friends, and the media. All these sources contribute to the formation of our body image.

One of the top three concerns that young girls experience in Australia is having a negative body image. Negative body image is often linked to eating disorders, low self-esteem, depression and anxiety. These mental health problems can also lead to issues such as a lack of confidence. Low confidence can stop you from being social and **assertive**. It can also make it difficult to concentrate, achieve or perform to the best of your ability. It is important to note that it is not only girls who are affected by poor body image; it can affect boys too.

**assertive** expressing your viewpoint in a way that is respectful and non-threatening

When you have a positive body image, you accept, care for and love your body. Having a positive body image is often linked to:

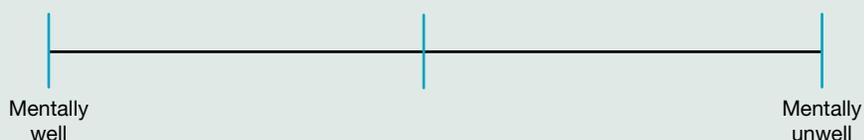
- higher rates of physical activity
- lower alcohol consumption
- fewer negative eating habits
- greater resilience

- improved mood
- higher self-esteem
- overall greater life satisfaction.

This helps you communicate with other people more effectively and boosts your overall mood.

## 4.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Continuum activity



Copy the continuum line above. Using table 4.2, write where you think each word sits on the continuum. For example, is someone who is 'sad' on the very end of mentally unwell, or in the middle? Share your answers with the class. This would work well as a group activity.

**TABLE 4.2** Words to describe wellbeing

Paranoid	Delusional	Overexcited	Insane	Self-assured
Safe	Lost	Isolated	Bubbly	Miserable
Violent	Flirtatious	Pessimistic	Low	Grieving
Sulky	Cheery	Thrilled	Cheerful	Optimistic
Withdrawn	Down	Miserable	Lonely	Lonely
Celebratory	Worried	Bashful	Frightened	Obsessed

### 2 Help-giving

Read the following scenarios and discuss how you could help or what your next step would be.

**Scenario one:** *You have noticed your friend has recently become quite withdrawn. She won't hang out on the weekend and she has stopped playing touch football. What are some proactive steps you could take to help her? Who could you talk to that might be able to offer her further support? Present your group's answers to the class.*

**Scenario two:** *Each time Jerome has a question he finds difficult, he shuts down and refuses to do the work, even though he is quite smart. He panics before every test and assignment at school. What could Jerome be experiencing? How could you help him? Clearly state your plan.*

### 3 Support network display

Create a poster, pamphlet or 15-second 'reel' that could be distributed or displayed at your school. List what you believe are the most helpful supports or strategies for those who are struggling with mental health. Your display needs to be engaging, colourful and easy to read so all students can understand it.

### 4 Body image

Let's work on loving our bodies and building our body image.

- Draw a picture of yourself. Write some things you love about your body.
- Say the following: 'I own my body and my body is for me'. Practise reminding yourself of your worth and to not worry about trying to impress other people or 'fit in'.
- Fill in the following: I am grateful for my body. It helps me to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Try to perform a body scan. Sit in your seat or lie down and close your eyes. Can you feel your heart beating? Is it slow or fast? Are you too hot or too cold? Move your head up and down slowly. Roll your shoulders so they are relaxed. Notice your stomach going up and down as you breathe. Notice your knees — can you

stretch your legs out long? Wiggle your toes. Take five deep breaths and repeat to yourself: 'I am grateful for my body. Thank you for everything you do for me.'

## 5 Positive mindset

Another way to improve your mental health is to work on developing a positive mindset. This means reframing your thinking to focus on the positive things in life rather than the negative things. It's like looking at the bright side of things, even when they don't go as planned.

Mindset coach Ben Crowe has worked with many high-profile athletes, including Ash Barty. He aims to 'inspire the world to learn how to be a good human first and a great athlete second — where an athlete is anyone who plays, has fun and competes in life!'

Use the **Mojo Crowe** weblink in the Online Resources and explore the podcasts and apps that are available on the site. Then explore the **Raising children: Positive thinking** weblink. Identify 1 or 2 actions you could try.



## 4.2 Exercise

### 4.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

#### LEVEL 2

7, 8

#### LEVEL 3

6, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** Out of the following options, select three main sources of health information.
  - A. GP
  - B. The supermarket
  - C. Family
  - D. School
2. Depression can be short or long term. True or false?
3. Anxiety symptoms are the same for everybody. True or false?
4. Use the following words to complete the paragraph.

**Word bank:** understand, empathy, support, communication, problem

When you want to \_\_\_\_\_ others, a key skill to have is \_\_\_\_\_. This will help you to understand the \_\_\_\_\_ the individual is having. \_\_\_\_\_ will also help you to \_\_\_\_\_ the person.

5. When someone comes to you with a problem, you should always keep it to yourself even if you don't know what to do. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Discuss** why you think it is so hard for some people to ask for help. **Propose** some strategies that would make it easier for people to ask for help when they are struggling mentally. You can work in groups or individually.
7. **Describe**, in your own words, what anxiety and depression might look or feel like to an individual.
8. **Identify** support networks in your local area and online that are easily accessible for teenagers.
9. **Apply** the information you have learned and **discuss** how you can be proactive about your own mental health.

# LESSON

## 4.3 Healthy decisions: drugs

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Identify drugs and describe the effects they have.

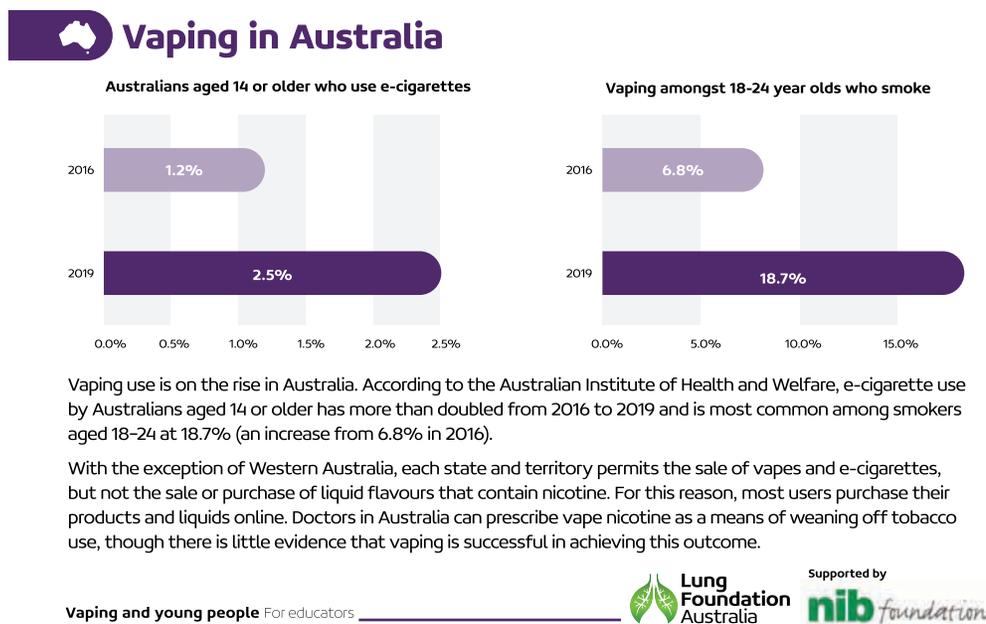
Making good decisions about your health is not always easy to do. Peer pressure, the need to fit in and experimentation are just some of the reasons why young people misuse drugs. In this topic, you will learn about **drugs** and their effects, and why people use, misuse or choose not to use drugs.

**drug** a substance that has a physiological effect on the body; can be legal or illegal

### ENGAGE

Drugs are used for many reasons, including for pain relief, to fight disease, to heal the body and to help manage stress. Some drugs are illegally produced and are specifically made for recreational use rather than medical use. Research shows that drug use is directly related to many health problems in Australia. Of particular note in recent years is the increase in vaping, particularly among adolescents. Selling, possessing or buying nicotine liquid for e-cigarettes without a medical prescription is illegal in Australia.

**FIGURE 4.7** Statistics show vaping is on the rise among teenagers.



As shown in figure 4.7, from 2016 to 2019 the rate of vaping among Australians aged 14 or older doubled, and 18–24 year olds who already smoked also doubled their use of e-cigarettes.

Look at the advertisements used for e-cigarettes in figure 4.8 and identify the:

- target audience
- motive
- effectiveness of the advertisement and why
- techniques that were used to make it engaging.

**FIGURE 4.8** Advertisements for e-cigarettes



### 4.3.1 Why some people take drugs

People take drugs for many reasons, such as:

- to treat an illness
- to improve performance
- as a form of relaxation
- due to curiosity
- due to parent or family use
- to be part of a celebration (e.g. a party)
- to experiment (e.g. to try something new)
- as an act of rebellion (e.g. against parents)
- due to pressure from peers
- to fit in with a peer group.

### 4.3.2 Why people don't use drugs

There are also many reasons people choose not to use drugs. For example:

- Their family values and attitudes are against drug use.
- Using drugs is against the beliefs of their religion or culture.
- Some drugs are illegal.
- Drugs are too expensive.
- They value personal health or are athletes.
- They do not want to feel out of control.
- There are age limits.

### 4.3.3 How drugs affect your health

Drugs affect people differently. Two people can use the same drug at the same time but can experience different effects. How drugs affect a person is influenced by a number of factors, including:

Person-related factors	Drug-related factors
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• height and body weight</li><li>• past experience with the drug</li><li>• mood</li><li>• state of health when taking the drug</li><li>• the environment — whether used alone or with others, at home or at a party</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• how much is used</li><li>• the strength of the drug</li><li>• whether the drug is used on its own or with other drugs</li></ul>

**FIGURE 4.9** Tobacco, like alcohol, is an illegal drug for people under 18 years of age





All drugs, including prescription medicines, have the potential to negatively affect your health if they are not used correctly. Long-term misuse or abuse of a drug can lead to damage to your body and even death. For more information go to the **Drugs facts** weblink in the Online Resources.

### HEALTH FACT

Alcohol is responsible for 13 per cent of all deaths among 14–17-year-old Australians. It has been estimated that one Australian teenager dies and more than 60 are hospitalised each week from alcohol-related causes.

## 4.3.4 The effect of drug use on others

Often, one person’s drug use can affect the health and wellbeing of others, even those who choose not to use drugs. **Passive smoking** can cause cancer in people breathing second-hand smoke and drink-driving can lead to other people being injured or killed.

**passive smoking** breathing in second-hand cigarette smoke

One person’s drug use can affect other people in many ways, including:

- accidents
- health problems, such as cancer from passive smoking
- aggressive or violent behaviour towards others
- domestic violence
- family breakdown
- family financial problems
- sexual assault
- crime, such as break-ins and theft
- injury
- littering and environmental damage (e.g. discarded cigarette butts, needles or bottles).

**FIGURE 4.10** One person’s drug use can affect the health and wellbeing of others.

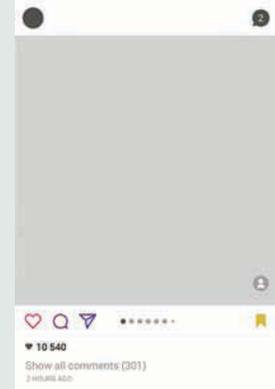


## 4.3 ACTIVITY

### Reasons why young people take drugs

- As a class, discuss the reasons why young people take drugs. List all the reasons on the board.
- As a class, decide which reasons are most relevant to young teenagers, older teenagers and to everyone. Identify the potential consequences of young people misusing drugs.
- As a class, discuss how to reduce drug use among young people.
- Split into groups of four. Using the **Instagram frame** worksheet provided in the Online Resources, design a picture, complete with a short post and hashtags, that could be a helpful strategy to use when you are being offered substances such as a vape, cannabis or alcohol.

**FIGURE 4.11**  
Instagram frame



## on Resources

**Interactivity** Drug classification (int-5455)

## 4.3 Exercise

### 4.3 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4

**LEVEL 2**

5, 6, 7

**LEVEL 3**

8, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Why might young people use drugs? Select all options that apply.
  - To treat an illness
  - To socialise with others
  - Out of curiosity
  - All of the above
- MC** In many cases, drug use can be substituted with healthier alternatives. For example, there are many ways to relax or treat pain that do not involve drugs, such as meditation. Select three healthier alternatives to drug use.
  - Going to lots of parties with other people that take drugs
  - Drinking plenty of water and taking regular breaks to treat headaches
  - Drinking 'mocktails' rather than alcohol at parties
  - Avoiding peer pressure to smoke or vape by spending time with friends in places where smoking is prohibited
- Your body weight and height can impact the effect a drug might have on you. True or false?
- All drugs have a negative impact on your health. True or false?
- Use the following words to complete the paragraph.

**Word list:** family, trusted, addictive, unsafe, short, aware, classification, offered, effects

Drugs are \_\_\_\_\_. Both long- and \_\_\_\_\_-term use of drugs can have health \_\_\_\_\_. It is important to know the \_\_\_\_\_ of the drug you are being \_\_\_\_\_, so you are \_\_\_\_\_ of the effects that may occur as a result of taking the drug. If you feel \_\_\_\_\_, make sure you reach out to a \_\_\_\_\_ friend or \_\_\_\_\_ member.

### Apply your understanding

- Suggest** how the influences on young people to take drugs can be reduced.
- Outline** the factors in your life that have or would influence you to take or not take a drug.
- Explain** the social, mental and physical effects of taking recreational drugs.
- Discuss** whether making a drug illegal is effective in minimising its use. For example, does the legal age of drinking and vaping stop young people using these drugs?
- Predict** what would happen if recreational drugs were made legal, with no minimum age.

# LESSON

## 4.4 Drugs and your health: stimulants

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe a variety of stimulants and how they affect your mental, physical and emotional health.

### 4.4.1 How stimulants affect you

Drugs that speed up your brain and nervous system are called stimulants. People use stimulants such as caffeine or tobacco to improve mental performance and to feel energised. Yet even in moderation, these legal drugs can damage your body. In this lesson, you will learn about a variety of stimulants and how they affect your mental, physical and emotional health.

#### ENGAGE

##### Energy drinks

Like coffee and tea, energy drinks contain caffeine. Energy drinks can also contain sugar, and the mix of both of these on the adolescent brain can have negative effects. The sugar in the drink gives you an immediate burst of energy, but then causes a sugar crash. This can make you feel lethargic, moody and tired.



Research and then compare the amount of sugar in each drink in table 4.3. Use the **Rethink sugary drinks** weblink in the Online Resources to get started.

**TABLE 4.3** Each of these drinks contains caffeine, but all contain a different amount of sugar.



Red Bull 335 mL



Unsweetened black coffee



Black tea with 1 teaspoon of sugar



Coke 330 mL

### 4.4.2 Common stimulants

**Stimulants** are drugs that increase heart rate and blood pressure and make you feel more awake and alert. In large amounts they can make you feel agitated, anxious or aggressive.

**stimulants** drugs that stimulate or speed up your brain and nervous system

Common types of stimulants are:

- caffeine
- tobacco
- amphetamines (speed or methamphetamine)
- ecstasy
- cocaine
- ephedrine.

The effect of a stimulant on your body will vary according to the drug. Generally, the common short-term effects of stimulant use include:

- being alert, excited or agitated
- feeling anxious
- feeling confident
- increased heart rate
- increased blood pressure
- increased aggression
- feeling sick in the stomach
- sweating more.

Each stimulant affects the body differently in the long term. However, the use of most stimulants in the long term leads to:

- a **tolerance** of the drug
- a **dependence** on the drug
- addiction to the drug.

People who use illegal stimulants are also more likely to have relationship, legal, financial and housing problems.

Knowing the effects of a drug, including whether it is addictive, is important for making an informed decision.

**FIGURE 4.12** Coffee contains the stimulant caffeine, which is why many people feel drinking coffee in the morning can energise them.



**tolerance** the higher the tolerance, the more of the drug is needed for the same effect

**dependence** reliance on or needing the drug to function; many of your thoughts, emotions and actions focus on the drug

## DISCUSS

The National Drug and Alcohol Research Centre estimates that the use of crystal methamphetamine ('ice') in Australia has tripled in the past five years. People in rural Australia are using ice at more than double the rate of people in metropolitan areas.

- Discuss why people use ice.
- Discuss why people should not use ice.
- Suggest why rural Australians are using ice at a higher rate than those in metropolitan regions.
- Suggest how using ice negatively affects the wider community.
- Whose responsibility is it to combat the ice problem? Why?

## Smoking and vaping

The key stimulant in tobacco is called nicotine. It is a highly addictive chemical that speeds up nervous system function. Although in Australia it is legal for people over the age of 18 to purchase tobacco, the health risks of smoking are widely known and well-documented.

Many e-cigarettes also contain nicotine, as well as other chemicals dangerous to your health.

- E-cigarettes heat liquids, called e-liquids, into an aerosol that is then breathed in.
- They may contain nicotine, as well as flavourings and a range of harmful and toxic chemicals.
- Although the e-cigarette liquid may say 'nicotine free', research shows that nicotine is often included.
- One e-liquid pod can have as much nicotine as a whole packet of cigarettes.
- The nicotine in e-cigarettes makes them highly addictive.

The long- and short-term effects of vaping are still being studied, although it's been demonstrated they are dangerous to users' lungs.



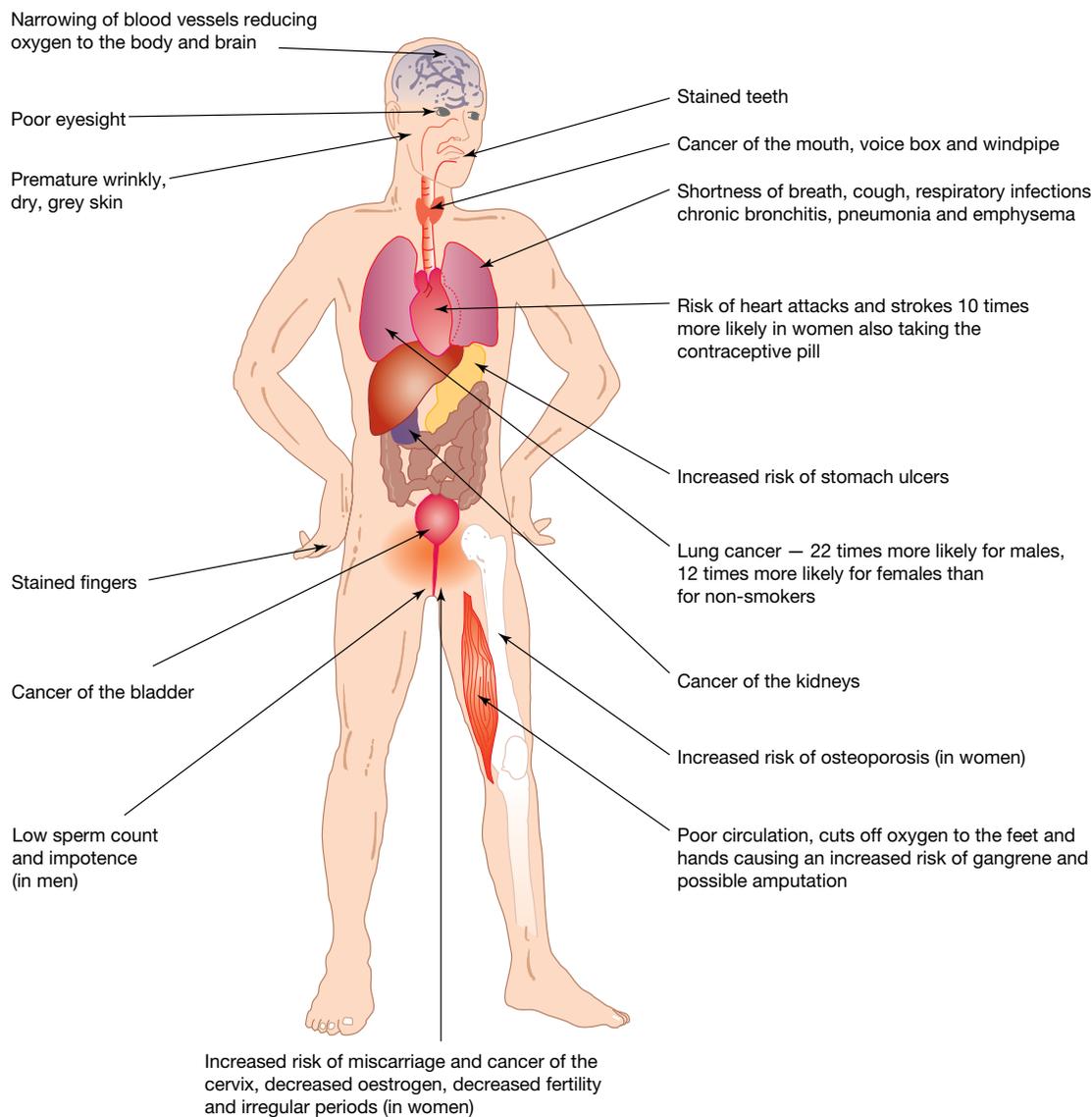
There are both short- and long-term effects of smoking, as shown in table 4.4 and the diagram below. The good news, however, is that when a person stops smoking, the body begins to repair itself and the risk of smoking-related illness decreases over time. It is certainly worth the effort of quitting! See the **Quit** weblink in the Online Resources for more information.

**TABLE 4.4** Effects of smoking

Short-term effects of smoking	Long-term effects of smoking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduced fitness levels</li> <li>• Smelly clothes and breath</li> <li>• Irritated eyes from smoke</li> <li>• More coughing</li> <li>• More prone to chest infections</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancer of the lung, throat, mouth, lips, tongue, nose, sinus, voice box, oesophagus, pancreas, stomach, kidney, bladder, urethra, cervix and bone marrow</li> <li>• Heart disease</li> <li>• Emphysema and/or bronchitis</li> <li>• Peripheral vascular disease — a narrowing of the arteries in the leg, which can cause a blockage and possible amputation</li> </ul>



**FIGURE 4.13** The short- and long-term effects of smoking cigarettes



 **Interactivity** Once a smoker quits, the body begins to repair itself immediately (int-5741)

## 4.4 ACTIVITY

### Stimulant poster

Divide the class into groups of 3 or 4. Your teacher will assign each group a stimulant to research. Make a poster explaining the:

- short-term effects of the stimulant
- long-term effects of the stimulant
- effects the stimulant has on different parts of the body.

Present your poster to the class.

## 4.4 Exercise

### 4.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**LEVEL 2**

6, 7

**LEVEL 3**

8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which one of the following drinks does NOT contain caffeine?
 

<b>A.</b> Green tea	<b>B.</b> Coffee
<b>C.</b> Chamomile tea	<b>D.</b> Cola
- MC** The addition of \_\_\_\_\_ to energy drinks, can cause more harm than good.
 

<b>A.</b> sugar	<b>B.</b> flavour
<b>C.</b> food colouring	<b>D.</b> water
- MC** What do stimulants do to the nervous system?
 

<b>A.</b> Slow it down	<b>B.</b> Make you imagine things
<b>C.</b> Speed it up	<b>D.</b> Shut it down
- MC** Which one of the following is NOT a short-term effect of using a stimulant?
 

<b>A.</b> Feeling anxious	<b>B.</b> Feeling confident
<b>C.</b> Increased heart rate	<b>D.</b> Decreased heart rate
- MC** Which one of the following is NOT a long-term effect of smoking?
 

<b>A.</b> Cancer	<b>B.</b> Increased fitness
<b>C.</b> Heart disease	<b>D.</b> Lung disease

### Apply your understanding

- Suggest** two ways vaping could negatively affect a child's health.
- Identify** two reasons why people choose to use stimulant drugs.
- Analyse** the effect that the use of common stimulants such as caffeine or energy drinks may have on a young person.
- Think about the education you have received on the effects of vaping or smoking. **Evaluate** how effective this information has been in stopping you from taking up vaping or smoking.

# LESSON

## 4.5 Drugs and your health: depressants

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe what depressants are, and explain their effects on the body.

### 4.5.1 How depressants affect your health

While stimulants are used to improve mental or physical performance, depressant drugs are used for their relaxing effects. In this lesson, you will learn about depressants, and the positive and negative effects they can have on your health.

### ENGAGE

Depressants are drugs that make your body relax. In large amounts, they slow your heart rate and breathing so much you can become nauseous, pass out and, in extreme cases, die.

Common types of depressants include:

- alcohol
- cannabis (marijuana or hash)
- sedatives
- barbiturates
- opiates (heroin, morphine, codeine, methadone).

What do you know about the effects of a depressant such as alcohol?

Discuss your answers as a class.

### 4.5.2 The effects of depressants

The short-term effects of **depressants** can include:

- decreased heart rate
- slower breathing
- drowsiness
- loss of sensation
- pain reduction
- relief from anxiety.

In the long term, depressant use can lead to:

- a tolerance of the drug
- a dependence on the drug
- an addiction to the drug.

It is illegal to use, keep, sell or give away certain depressants, such as cannabis. You can be fined large sums of money and/or jailed if you are caught with these types of drugs. In Australia, it is illegal to sell alcohol to anyone under 18 years of age.

**depressants** drugs that slow the activity of your nervous system

**FIGURE 4.14** Alcohol is a type of depressant.



### 4.5.3 Alcohol

Alcohol is classified as a depressant because it slows down the central nervous system. The effects of drinking alcohol vary between people, and they can even differ for the same person, depending on the situation. Your body may react differently, for example, if you drink when angry or upset. Some of the factors that may influence how someone is affected by alcohol include:

- age, weight, body size and biological sex
- the amount of alcohol that is consumed
- how quickly the alcohol is consumed
- whether the person ate before they started drinking
- whether any other drugs have been used while drinking
- how frequently a person drinks
- a person's mood when drinking.

Young people are often more affected by alcohol than adults because their bodies are usually smaller, and they have less experience drinking alcohol. This means their tolerance to alcohol is lower and they generally feel its effects more quickly.

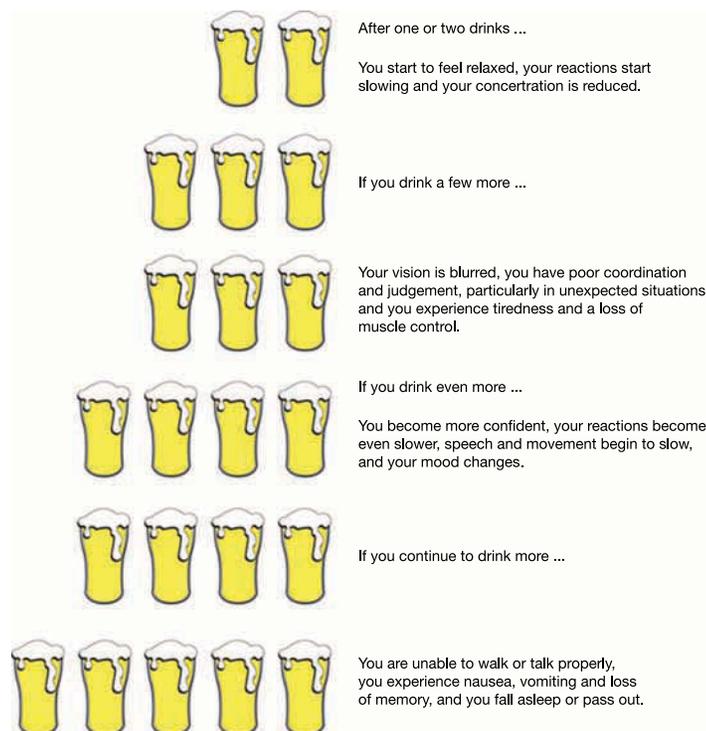
These effects become more obvious and more serious if drinking continues. Drinking too much alcohol can result in alcohol poisoning. This happens when the body is unable to tolerate the high concentration of alcohol in the bloodstream.

Some of the effects of drinking are outlined in figure 4.16.

**FIGURE 4.15** It is a common misconception that a couple of drinks have no effect. Alcohol affects you, even if you cannot feel it.



**FIGURE 4.16** The effects of alcohol increase as more alcohol is consumed.



## Binge drinking

In addition to feeling the effects of alcohol more quickly than adults, young people also tend to drink faster than adults. **Binge drinking** is common among young people and is very unsafe.

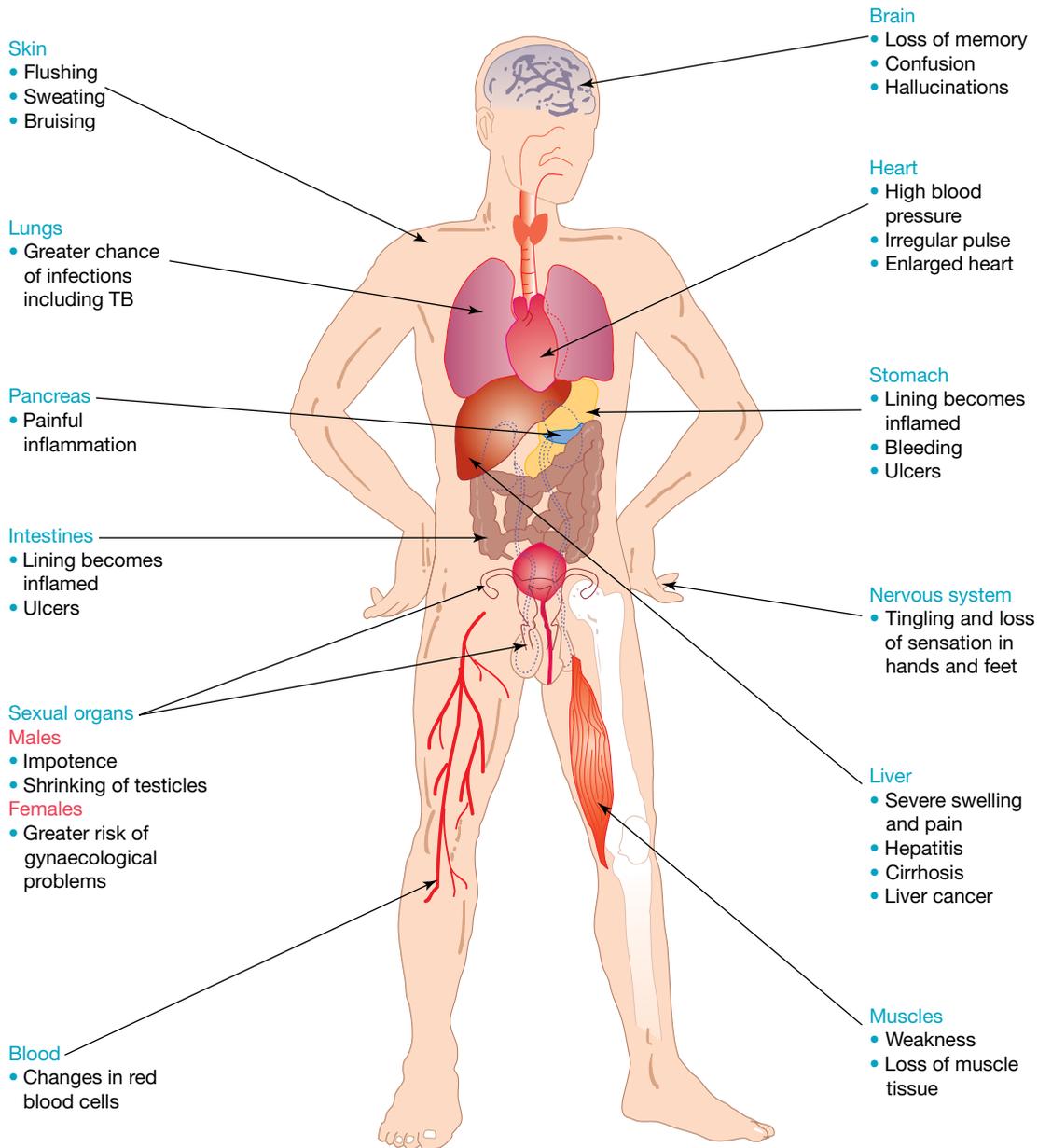
**binge drinking** drinking large amounts of alcohol in a short period of time or drinking constantly for a number of days



Many young people feel pressured to start drinking in unsafe ways. Use the **Alcohol and your peers** weblink in the Online Resources to find out how to resist peer pressure.



**FIGURE 4.17** The long-term effects of alcohol use and abuse



## on Resources



**Interactivities** The long-term effects of alcohol use and abuse (int-5742)  
The effects of alcohol increase as more alcohol is consumed (int-6239)

## 4.5.4 Consequences of alcohol use for individuals and the community

Alcohol use, particularly binge drinking, has many consequences for both the individual and the community. Alcohol is a factor in nearly 18 per cent of all drug-related deaths in Australia and in approximately 50 per cent of drug-related deaths for people under the age of 34.

For young people, these deaths are mostly due to road accidents, violence, accidental drowning and self-harming behaviours that occur after consuming large amounts of alcohol. Alcohol causes feelings of bravado, while also slowing reaction time and affecting concentration. This combination can lead to dangerous pranks and unsafe behaviours that can result in property damage, injuries and criminal charges.

The fact that some young people drink in places away from the supervision of adults, such as in parks or by rivers, adds to the danger. These environments are often poorly lit, isolated and away from immediate help when required.

### HEALTH FACT

In small amounts, depressants such as alcohol can make you feel relaxed. In large amounts, they can slow your nervous system so much you become unconscious, brain damaged or even die.

### Considering all the consequences

Consuming too much alcohol even one time can have serious consequences. For example, a road accident due to drink-driving can lead to:

- injuries (health harms), which may require time off work (financial harms)
- police charges (legal harms) that result in a criminal record, restricting travel and work options (social and financial harms)
- fines and repair costs (financial harms), which may require you to borrow money from family or friends
- feelings of guilt and shame (emotional harms)
- loss of independence and freedom (social harms) due to the loss of a driver's licence or imprisonment.

**FIGURE 4.18** Consuming large amounts of alcohol can have numerous consequences for the individual and the community.



## 4.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Dealing with the consequences of alcohol use

- In groups of four, allocate the following roles to group members.
  - Doctor in the local hospital
  - Chief of the local police
  - Youth worker
  - Principal of the local high school
- In your role, identify your concerns about the harms caused by alcohol use, particularly binge drinking, for individuals and the whole community. Consider the particular harms that you would deal with in your role.
- Prepare your key points as a short speech and then deliver it to the rest of your group. If there is time, some students can present their speeches to the whole class.

### 2 Influences on young people's attitudes to alcohol

- Use the **DrinkWise** weblink in the Online Resources to watch the campaign video 'Kids absorb your drinking'.
- Did the men in this clip have a healthy attitude to alcohol? Explain your answer.
- How did these men pass on their attitudes towards alcohol to their children?
- As a class, discuss the influence that parents can have on children's attitudes to alcohol. In what ways can this be either positive or negative?

### 3 Binge drinking

Complete the worksheet **The day after a big night out** in the Online Resources to further explore issues associated with binge drinking.



weblink



doc-14659

## 4.5 Exercise

### 4.5 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

■ LEVEL 2

6, 7, 8

■ LEVEL 3

9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** What does a depressant drug do to the body?
  - Makes you depressed
  - Slows down the central nervous system
  - Speeds up the central nervous system
  - Makes you imagine things that aren't there
- MC** One lifestyle use for a depressant is to feel
  - excited.
  - sad.
  - relaxed.
  - full of energy.
- MC** Which one of the following is NOT a short-term effect of a depressant drug?
  - Fast breathing
  - Slow breathing
  - Pain reduction
  - Loss of sensation
- MC** Binge drinking refers to drinking a \_\_\_\_ amount of alcohol over a \_\_\_\_\_ period of time.
  - small, long
  - impressive, long
  - small, short
  - large, short

5. **MC** Alcohol is a factor in what percentage of drug-related deaths?
- A. 5
  - B. 35
  - C. 18
  - D. 60

### Apply your understanding

6. **Explain** why there are laws that restrict the consumption of alcohol to people who are 18 years or older.
7. **Identify** the various factors that can influence how alcohol affects you.
8. **Identify** what binge drinking is and how it can affect your health.
9. **Decide**, making your own judgement, whether or not you think young people should be allowed to drink alcohol. Give reasons for your answer.
10. **Explain** how drinking alcohol at risky levels can affect:
  - a. the individual and their relationship with other people
  - b. the community.

## LESSON

### 4.6 Drugs and your health: hallucinogens

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe what hallucinogens are and explain their short- and long-term effects on the body.

#### 4.6.1 How hallucinogens affect your health

Many drugs that have mind-altering effects are illegal in Australia. This is because they can have a wide range of negative effects on people's health, many of which are unpredictable, can cause addiction or are damaging to both physical and mental health.

#### ENGAGE

- In small groups, brainstorm a list of as many different types of drugs as you can think of, including both legal and illegal drugs.
- Share your list with the rest of the class.
- As a class, identify which of these drugs are considered hallucinogens.
- Discuss what you know or have heard about the short- and long-term effects of these drugs.

**FIGURE 4.19** Drugs can be legal or illegal.



**Hallucinogens** work on the brain to cause hallucinations, which influence how a person perceives reality. People often see, hear, smell, taste and feel things that don't exist or perceive them differently from how they really are.

**hallucinogens** drugs that work on the brain to cause hallucinations

Common types of hallucinogens include:

- LSD (acid, trips)
- magic mushrooms
- cannabis
- mescaline.

Hallucinogens are illegal drugs. It is illegal to use, keep, sell or give away hallucinogens. You can be fined a large amount of money and/or jailed if you are caught with such drugs.

## 4.6.2 The effects of hallucinogens

The effects of hallucinogens are unpredictable. They can affect people differently at different times. The short-term effects on a person's body from using hallucinogens include:

- muscle twitches
- feeling weak and numb
- pupils dilating (getting bigger)
- nausea or vomiting
- increased heart rate
- increased blood pressure
- increased breathing rate and deeper breathing than normal
- poor coordination.

Long-term effects of hallucinogen use include:

- developing a tolerance to the drug
- flashbacks — when the effects of the drug are experienced again, perhaps days or weeks later
- damage to memory and concentration
- mental problems for some people.

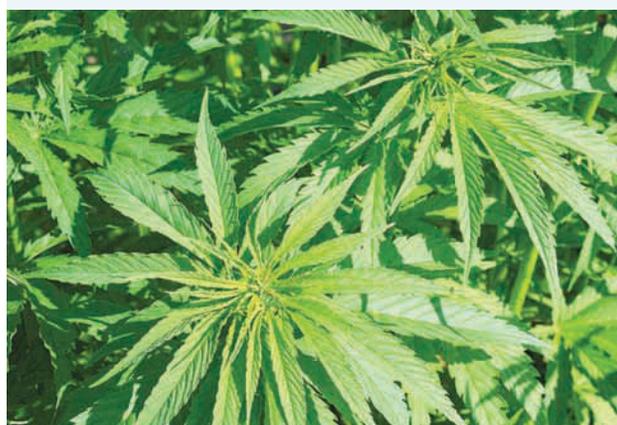
**FIGURE 4.20** Dilated pupils are one short-term symptom of hallucinogen use.



## 4.6.3 Cannabis

Cannabis is the general name for a number of products made from a plant known as *cannabis sativa*. These products include marijuana, which comes from the dried leaves and flowers of the plant, hash and hashish oil. All of these are illegal drugs. A number of different names may be used instead of the term cannabis, including marijuana, grass, pot, dope, mull, hooch and yarndi. It is most commonly smoked in a cigarette, known as a joint, or through a water pipe, called a bong. It can also be cooked in foods and eaten, or drunk as a tea.

**FIGURE 4.21** Cannabis is a type of hallucinogen.



## DID YOU KNOW?

Using, keeping, selling or giving away marijuana is illegal in Australia. This prohibition also covers items used to take marijuana, such as bongos. Penalties can differ between states. In South Australia, for example, the personal use of small amounts of marijuana has been decriminalised. All states and territories now also have laws relating to the use of medicinal marijuana for patients suffering from particular illnesses. The conditions for use vary between states.

## Immediate effects of cannabis use

Although often classed as a depressant drug because it slows the workings of the central nervous system, cannabis is technically a **cannabinoid**. When cannabis is consumed, its main chemical ingredient, tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), attaches to parts of the brain known as cannabinoid receptors. These receptors influence our emotions, memory, pain and our ability to move. THC is also responsible for the feeling of being 'high'.

**cannabinoids** types of chemicals that act on particular receptors in the brain

The immediate effects of using cannabis can vary depending on:

- how much is used
- how frequently it is used
- the THC content of the cannabis
- the way it is used
- the size, health and mood of the person using it
- whether other drugs are used at the same time.

These effects can include feeling more relaxed and less inhibited, being less coordinated with slower reactions, and having poorer memory and logical-thinking skills. An increase in appetite, often called 'the munchies', also occurs.

Depending on the amount of cannabis used, people can also experience hallucinations where they see, hear or experience things differently from the way they appear in reality.

## Consequences of cannabis use

Cannabis use can have a range of short- and long-term health, social, legal and financial consequences.

### Health problems

Smoking cannabis, like smoking tobacco, has the potential to cause lung diseases such as lung cancer and bronchitis after long periods of use. Many of the carcinogens contained in cannabis smoke are similar to those found in tobacco smoke. In fact, the carcinogens are present in even greater amounts. In addition, cannabis smokers tend to inhale more deeply and hold the smoke in their lungs for a longer period of time before breathing out. This means using a bong or joint to smoke cannabis exposes more of the lungs to harmful chemicals for longer.

Long-term cannabis use may also affect fertility and lower a person's sex drive. Males may produce less sperm and females may experience irregular menstrual cycles.

### Accidents and injuries

As with alcohol use, the loss of inhibitions, coordination and decision-making skills that result from cannabis use can cause people to engage in risky behaviours. This can cause accidents and injuries. When a group of young people are affected by cannabis, it can be especially difficult for them to recognise possible dangers and seek help if an emergency arises.

**FIGURE 4.22** Cannabis use exposes the lungs to carcinogens for a longer time than smoking cigarettes. This can cause lung diseases such as bronchitis and cancer.



## School and work

Cannabis use can also affect school and work performance. Regularly using cannabis reduces memory, concentration and the ability to learn. This results in difficulties understanding work, and in being able to study or do homework. These problems can be made worse if the person becomes dependent on cannabis. They may begin to lose interest in other important aspects of their life, such as school, sport or friends.

## Relationship problems

Using cannabis can also cause relationship problems. Friends and family may worry about their loved one's cannabis use. They may also become frustrated if cannabis use starts taking over the person's life. Memory difficulties caused by cannabis use can limit a person's ability to hold a conversation, and affect their reliability and their commitment to relationships.

## Legal problems

All illegal drugs, including cannabis, carry penalties if someone is caught using, possessing, making or selling them. The police choose from a variety of options when determining the penalty that a young person will face after being caught with an illegal drug. These options include formal cautions, warnings and arrests. A criminal record relating to illegal drugs can have significant consequences. For example, a criminal record can:

- limit international travel opportunities, because travellers must declare criminal convictions on visa applications
- reduce work options, because many applications require candidates to state whether they have a criminal record
- restrict a person's ability to be approved for loans or credit cards.

## Cannabis and mental health

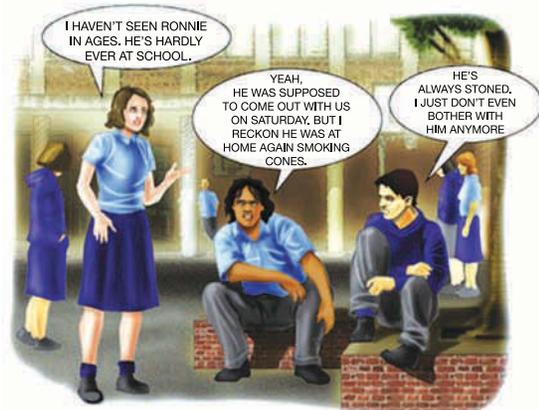
Although some young people may use cannabis as a means of coping with mental health problems, cannabis can make the symptoms much worse. Anxiety, panic, paranoia and hallucinations can make the problems more severe and cause the person to feel isolated and afraid.

For some young people, using cannabis can act as a trigger for mental health problems. This is particularly true when there is a family history of mental illness, such as schizophrenia or depression, or when a person is at greater risk of developing these illnesses.

**FIGURE 4.23** Driving under the influence of a hallucinogen is incredibly dangerous. Australian police now test drivers for recent drug use.



**FIGURE 4.24** Cannabis use can have a negative effect on relationships with partners, friends and family.



**FIGURE 4.25** Some people turn to drugs such as cannabis when they are feeling anxious or upset as a way to escape reality or their feelings.



## 4.6 ACTIVITY

### Highs 'n' lows



- Divide into small groups. Each group should select one of the following drugs: ecstasy, cocaine, LSD, methamphetamine or GHB. Use the **Don't get used** weblink in the Online Resources to create a poster or ICT presentation for the class summarising your selected drug. Your presentation should include: other names for the drug, what category of drug it is considered to be, and the effects and consequences of taking the drug.
- In your group, create a table, poster or other product (e.g. a 'reel' or song) that includes:
  - the reasons a person might take your drug, and why they should not
  - strategies that could be used to say no to using illegal substances.
- Share your group's creation from part **b** with the class. As a class, identify and discuss any similarities and differences across the different drugs.
- Use your findings from parts **a** and **b** of this activity to create a poster, PowerPoint, Prezi, Kahoot! quiz or video presentation to educate your peers about your findings.

## 4.6 Exercise

### 4.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

##### LEVEL 2

7, 8

##### LEVEL 3

6, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Hallucinogens are drugs that
  - speed up the nervous system.
  - slow down the nervous system.
  - make you imagine or feel things that aren't really there.
  - make you run fast.
- MC** Which one of the following is NOT a short-term effect of using hallucinogens?
  - Damage to memory or concentration
  - Increased heart rate
  - Muscle twitches
  - Poor coordination
- Hallucinogens are addictive. True or false?
- MC** One negative long-term effect of smoking cannabis is
  - sleeping better.
  - smelling like cannabis.
  - pain relief.
  - lung disease.
- MC** Using cannabis can make mental health problems worse because it can cause
  - anxiety.
  - paranoia.
  - panic attacks.
  - All of the above

### Apply your understanding

- Explain** why you think the use and sale of cannabis is currently illegal in most of Australia.
- Identify** the potential harms of hallucinogenic drug use to personal relationships and the community.
- Identify** how the effects of hallucinogens can vary from person to person.
- Consider** the possible harms associated with alcohol and cannabis use. **Determine** how these are:
  - similar
  - different.

# LESSON

## 4.7 How can we keep our relationships healthy?

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe strategies for dealing with an imbalance of power.
- Describe how a person's emotions can affect their willingness to seek help.

### ENGAGE

#### Communication Relay Race

- Divide the class into 3-4 groups.
- Each team takes turns writing down a sentence that describes a healthy relationship or good communication.
- The first person on the team will write a sentence on the paper, then pass the paper to the next person in line.
- The next person will read the sentence, then write another sentence that builds on the first one, and so on.
- The goal is to create a relay race of communication and relationship-building sentences.
- Each team has two minutes to complete the task.
- The team that completes the most sentences within the time limit wins.
- As a class, share some of the best sentences each group came up with.

### 4.7.1 Healthy relationships and balancing power

For a relationship to be healthy, both people need to have respect for each other and an equal balance of power. In topic 2 we looked at healthy relationships. You will recall that in order to have an even balance of power, both people's opinions must be equally respected and valued. This is the foundation of a caring relationship characterised by trust, empathy, and effective conflict resolution and negotiation. An uneven power balance will often lead to an unhealthy and destructive relationship. Good communication can help to maintain an even balance of power.

### 4.7.2 Relationship skills

Relationship skills are important for us to develop and maintain positive relationships.

#### Communication

Communication involves both talking (clearly conveying a message) and listening (understanding the message). By using effective communication we can show interest in and respect for others, which is important for building positive relationships. Effective communication allows you to:

- maintain friendships
- be part of valuable family relationships
- limit the misunderstandings that you have with people
- solve problems.

When communicating, your body language conveys non-verbal messages about what you are saying. The way you stand, your gestures, the placement of your arms, the look on your face and the eye contact you make all reinforce the words you use to communicate.

**FIGURE 4.26** Communication involves more than just words.



## Informed consent

In a healthy relationship, partners are able to openly talk about and agree on what kind of activity they would like to engage in. It is important for both individuals in a relationship to fully understand the nature of and agree (also known as **consent**) to participate in the activity. Whether this is holding hands, kissing, touching, intercourse or anything else, it is essential for everyone in the relationship to feel comfortable with what's happening.

**consent** occurs when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen

## Asserting yourself

Assertiveness is the ability to state your case without making someone else feel attacked. Using 'I' statements is a good way to express your feelings about an issue. Using 'I' statements allows you to outline your view or feelings, while encouraging further discussion. For example, you might state your opinion in this manner:

'When (a particular event happens), I feel (a certain feeling). What I'd like is (possible solution).'

In relationships, we often need to take a stance on an issue we feel strongly about. For example, standing up for yourself if someone asks you to do something that makes you feel uncomfortable.

Asserting a stance on an issue is a skill that takes practice; however, with practice you can:

- allow both sides to be heard
- not be judgemental
- maintain confidentiality
- move forward in a positive way
- not take sides or lay blame
- attempt to achieve an outcome that is acceptable to both parties.

Being assertive is an important skill in a positive relationship. You can use this skill to ensure your own needs are being met. You can also speak up for the rights of others. Young people can get themselves into unsafe situations, particularly when they are under the influence of alcohol or drugs. They often need a friend to step in and say 'no' for them or support them in saying 'no'.

## Conflict resolution

There is some amount of conflict in all relationships. We are all individuals with our own thoughts, ideas, needs and wants. People grow, adapt and clarify their beliefs and values by learning to resolve conflict.

Conflict may cause heightened emotions. When you are confronted with conflict you may feel upset, disappointed, angry or frustrated. The ability to resolve conflict and achieve the best possible outcome requires a lot of skill.

It is a good idea to work through a process to resolve the conflict. For example:

- Establish the rules.
- Identify the conflict.
- Offer solutions.
- Make an agreement.
- Review the agreement.

**FIGURE 4.27** We all experience conflict and can learn skills to help deal with it.



### 4.7.3 Emotions, relationships and seeking help

Do your emotions affect you day to day? How do your character, emotions and decision making affect your ability to seek help?

If you are upset, or feeling sad or angry, you are more likely to make a decision that is unhelpful, or you may shut people out. This limits your ability to seek help.

People who are shy or introverted might not have the confidence to ask for help. People who are confident or extroverted can also struggle with seeking help. They may not want to be seen as 'weak' or show signs that anything is wrong.

Some people might be hesitant to seek help if they don't meet gender or cultural norms. If they don't feel their community would be supportive of their choices, they may not know who to turn to for help. This can lead them to keep their feelings inside. For example, someone who feels they may identify as transgender might not feel comfortable seeking someone to talk to. They may not fit the cultural norm of a heterosexual relationship and may pretend to be someone they are not. To avoid being seen as different or feeling like they don't fit in, they may keep their sexuality and emotions hidden. Over time, this could cause them to develop anxiety and/or depression.

It's important to encourage everyone to develop the skills and confidence to ask for help. This is especially important for people who are in a relationship that they are unhappy in.

Happy, positive emotions can help a relationship thrive. By contrast, negative emotions can sometimes lead to emotional, financial, mental or physical abuse.

It is important to seek help when needed. It is especially critical to ask for help if you are being treated poorly in a relationship. When seeking help it is important that the person you turn to is supportive. This might be a friend, family member, trusted adult, counsellor or coach.

#### 4.7 ACTIVITIES

##### 1 Your support network

Think about what makes a person supportive. Make a list of people you think you could ask for help.

##### 2 Communication and help-seeking scenarios

Discuss the following scenarios.

- a. *Michelle really likes to please people. She is extremely anxious and doesn't like to let anyone down or hurt anyone's feelings, even at the risk of her own happiness. She has been going out with Jake for a few months, but she doesn't want to continue dating. She doesn't know how to tell him this or act upon it because she doesn't want to hurt him. Provide some proactive advice for Michelle.*
- b. *You are sad because you had to move to a new town. They don't even have a football team for you to play in! You miss your friends and hanging out with them on the weekend. Your parents keep telling you to think how lucky you are to be close to the ocean, but it just doesn't help. How can you talk to your parents about how you are feeling? Who else do you think you could talk to?*
- c. *Bianca is a quiet girl. Some girls have been picking on her at school and she just wants to be left alone. She doesn't want to draw attention to herself because she thinks that will make it worse. How might her quiet nature affect her ability to seek help? If she doesn't seek help, what will happen?*

## 4.7 Exercise

### 4.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

##### LEVEL 2

5, 6

##### LEVEL 3

7, 8

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which one of the following is a characteristic of a positive relationship?
  - Feeling worried
  - Controlling who you speak to
  - Allowing different opinions
  - Lack of support
- MC** Define 'assertiveness'.
  - Having confidence when expressing an opinion
  - Expressing an opinion in a confrontational manner
  - Allowing others to determine your opinion
  - Lacking confidence when expressing an opinion
- Consent means pressuring someone to get what you want. True or false?
- All relationships will experience conflict at some stage. True or false?
- MC** If you want to end a relationship you should
  - ghost the other person.
  - be assertive when communicating what you want.
  - get your friend to break up with them for you.
  - wait for them to end it first.

### Apply your understanding

- Describe** the difference between being assertive and being aggressive within a relationship.
- Propose** how you can look after your own and others' health and safety in unhealthy relationships.
- Sophie is very shy, but her boyfriend is one of the most popular people in the year. At school, he makes fun of her and doesn't always include her. When they are alone, he is kind and caring. Sophie is very upset and wants to break up with him but she is worried she will be further socially outcast if she does.*

**Identify** the emotions you think Sophie would be feeling. **Describe** how that would impact her ability to seek help. **Propose** advice you could give to Sophie. **Identify** what support networks might be available for her.

# LESSON

## 4.8 How can we stay safe online?

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Explain how we can ensure our time spent online is a positive and how we can encourage a safe supportive space for all users.

### ENGAGE

As a class, discuss ways to stay safe online and while using devices. Create a mind map.

**FIGURE 4.28** There are many tools to use to help stay safe online.



### 4.8.1 Connecting online

Social media connects us to our friends, peers and family in a virtual world. It also connects us to people we don't know. Our online profile is site-specific (e.g. your Tik Tok profile). When we are online we create a digital footprint. This is all your activity online (a trail of evidence about what you have done). The decisions we make about what we share online are the foundation of our digital reputation. This is your own digital footprint as well as what others say about you online.

### 4.8.2 Managing your digital identity

Everything you do on the internet will be there forever. Think about your most recent posts or 'likes'. In ten years, will you be happy for a potential employer to see these? Your digital reputation is defined by your behaviours and by the content you post about yourself and others. The things you do online shape how you are perceived by others online and offline, both now and in the future.

#### Privacy

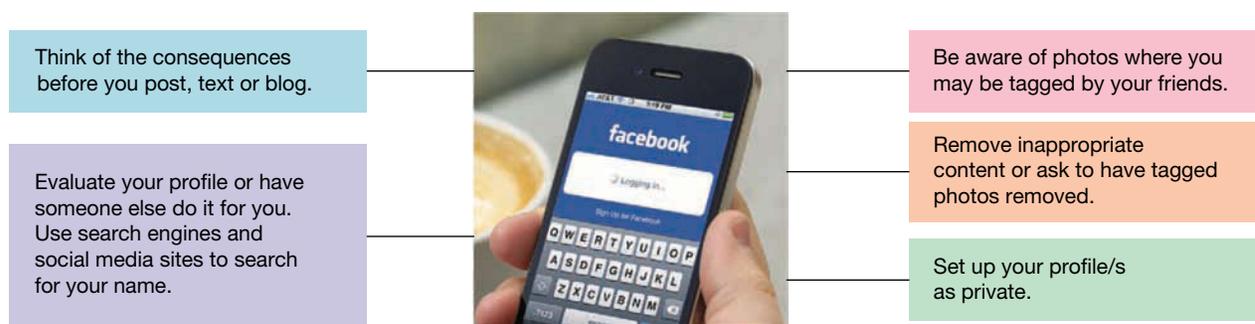
It is always important to manage your own identity, as well as respect the identity of others. There are times when it is appropriate to comment or open a discussion with someone online, but this needs to be carefully monitored. A good rule is if you wouldn't say something to your parents or a respected adult, then it isn't appropriate to post online. Not only are there potential legal issues, it is inappropriate to criticise or belittle

someone online. The ability to ‘tag’ people in online formats has been generally positive; however, this can create issues with unwanted attention.

Some general tips for tagging online are:

- Ask permission to tag friends prior to doing so.
- Don’t ever tag children, even if you are friends with them or their parents.
- Don’t use tagging to promote products or events.

**FIGURE 4.29** Some simple steps to manage your online profile



### 4.8.3 Strategies for keeping safe online

Online safety is not only about understanding issues such as your digital identity, privacy, cyberbullying and sexting. It is also about engaging positively online by being aware of your own behaviour, respecting others and knowing what action to take to protect yourself and others.

As discussed in topic 2, sexting is the act of sending explicit images or videos to someone. Image-based abuse happens if someone shares a nude image or video of you online without your consent. This is illegal. If this happens to you, report it straight away and eSafety can help get it removed. See the weblink **eSafety: My nudes have been shared** in the Online Resources for more information.



weblink

Unwanted contact (also known as grooming) occurs when an

online contact crosses boundaries and makes you feel uncomfortable or unsafe. If this happens, it needs to be reported. See the weblink **eSafety: Unwanted contact** in the Online Resources for help on what to do.



weblink

Cyberbullying is the act of using technology for the purpose of bullying a person or group of people. Bullying is repeated oppressive behaviour and, in an online context, can include:

- sending abusive texts or emails
- spreading rumours
- excluding someone from a group.

If you are the victim of cyberbullying it’s OK to seek help from others. If you know someone who is being bullied, let them know you are there to support them, and encourage them to report the bully. It is important to show your support for victims of bullying so they are aware they aren’t alone and they have someone backing them up. Taking action when you see bullying will change you from a bystander to an upstander. Your actions can help make online spaces more safe for everyone.

**FIGURE 4.30** Support others who may be the target of cyberbullies.

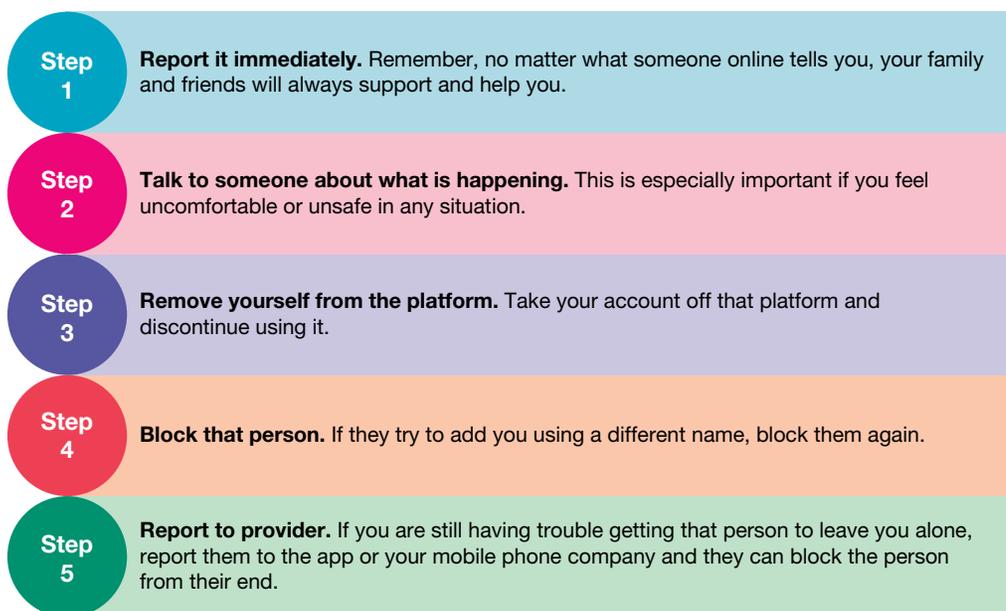


The following strategies can be used if you are being cyberbullied yourself, or if you are a bystander and are seeing the bullying happen online.

- standing up and speaking out
- telling someone you trust, such as a parent, teacher or counsellor
- not responding to bullying messages
- blocking the cyberbully
- reporting bullying to the relevant social media site
- keeping evidence of the content of text or emails
- reporting violent threats to the police.

 Topic 3 includes more information about protecting yourself from bullying. For advice about reporting inappropriate online behaviour, go to the **Report cyberbullying** weblink in the Online Resources.

**FIGURE 4.31** If you experience online abuse or bullying, here are some steps you can take.



## Healthy digital use

Staying safe and healthy online also means setting healthy patterns for your digital use. This means being aware of how much and how often you use your digital technology. It's also important to have strategies for taking a break from social media.

A first step is to track your screen time and aim for no more than 2 hours a day. Suggestions include:

- switch your phone to silent
- use the 'do not disturb' mode
- turn off notifications.

You can choose certain times when you do this (e.g. during dinner, while doing homework). Experts also recommend keeping your phone out of your bedroom at night, so your sleep is not disturbed.

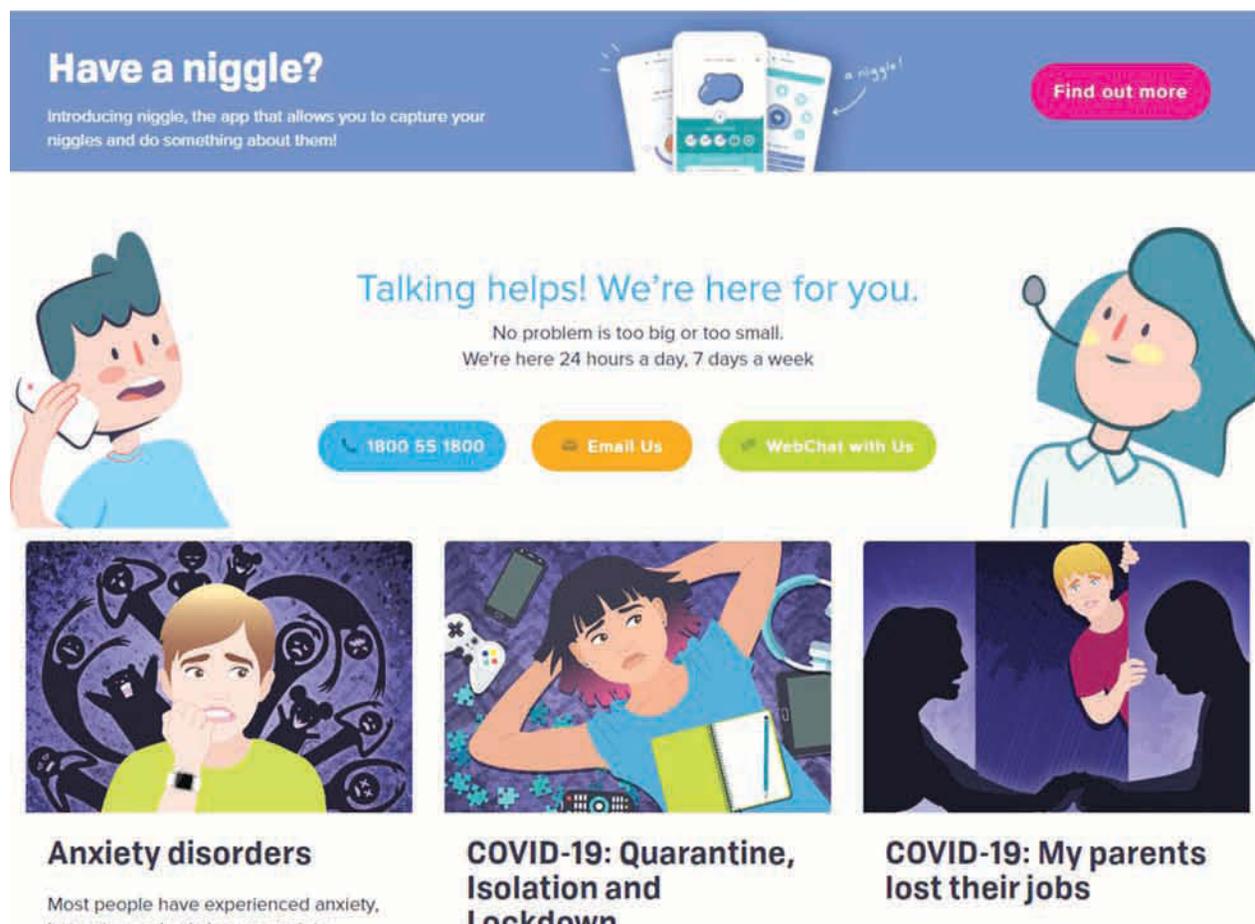
### 4.8.4 Resources for seeking help

Remember there are many ways to get help, and there are lots of good online places that offer help if you are being bullied or abused or feel unsafe.

## Kids Helpline

 Kids Helpline offers both a phone service and an online service where you can talk to people who might be going through the same stuff as you or have experienced it before.

**FIGURE 4.32** Kids Helpline offers a range of services to support you with whatever you are going through.



The screenshot shows the Kids Helpline website with a blue header. The main heading is "Have a nigggle?" with a subtext: "Introducing nigggle, the app that allows you to capture your niggles and do something about them!". There are three smartphone icons showing the app interface. A pink button says "Find out more". Below this, a central section says "Talking helps! We're here for you." with the text "No problem is too big or too small. We're here 24 hours a day, 7 days a week". There are three buttons: "1800 55 1800", "Email Us", and "WebChat with Us". At the bottom, there are three panels: "Anxiety disorders" with a person looking thoughtful, "COVID-19: Quarantine, Isolation and Lockdown" with a person looking stressed, and "COVID-19: My parents lost their jobs" with a person talking to a silhouette.

## eSafety Commissioner

 As mentioned, the eSafety Commissioner website provides a lot of useful advice for staying safe online. You can find out how to protect yourself online, how to block people and about some unsafe behaviours to watch out for. Visit the **eSafety Commissioner** weblink in the Online Resources for more information.

## 4.8 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Staying safe online

 Use the **Staying safe online** weblink in the Online Resources to access tips for protecting yourself online. In pairs, think of some strategies to stay safe online. Share these with the class.

### 2 Being respectful

Develop a list of how we can be respectful of others when sharing content online.

### 3 Assessing risks online

In pairs, discuss the following scenarios. Identify the risks, assess the level of risk and make an informed decision.

- Ahmed received an email from a person he didn't recognise. They claimed to be a friend from primary school and provided a photo of themselves. They asked Ahmed to reply with his photo. He didn't want to be rude, so he sent a photo of himself.
- Tomika is completing her assignment on her mother's computer when a pop-up appears on the screen. It says she has won a laptop. She clicks on the pop-up to see what she has won.
- Kim bought a dress online one month ago. She used her parents' credit card to pay for it. The dress was supposed to be delivered within two weeks, but after one month, it still hasn't been delivered.
- Jay met a girl online and they have been chatting for over three months. She wants to meet him in person but Jay posted a photo of someone else on his profile.

### 4 Setting limits

Audrey has checked her screen time and it is at eight hours a day.

- Working with a group, create a list of strategies that Audrey could use to reduce her screen time.
- What practical steps could she include in her daily routine to make sure she isn't on her phone so much?

## 4.8 Exercise

### 4.8 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 5

■ LEVEL 2

4, 6, 7

■ LEVEL 3

8, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** What are acceptable behaviours when communicating on the internet? Select all options that apply.
  - Set strong passwords to protect your personal details in online accounts.
  - Use spam filtering software available from your email account provider.
  - Open emails from people you do not know.
  - Give out your email address or mobile phone number.
- Use the following words to complete the paragraph.

**Word bank:** consequences, highlight, anyone, digital identity, digital footprint

Your \_\_\_\_\_ advertises who you are online. It should \_\_\_\_\_ your interests, skills and/or goals. Anything you post online is added to your \_\_\_\_\_ and could be viewed by \_\_\_\_\_ now or in the future. You need to make sure all posts are appropriate and think of the \_\_\_\_\_ before you post.

- There is nothing you can do if inappropriate images appear on one of your online profiles. True or false?
- Use the following words to complete the sentences.

**Word bank:** sexting, cyberbullying, digital footprint, digital reputation

The trail of evidence about what you have done online is called your \_\_\_\_\_.  
Your \_\_\_\_\_ includes your own digital footprint as well as what others say about you online.  
Sending explicit images or videos to someone is called \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ is the use of electronic communication to bully a person.

- Hanging out with your friends but staying on your phone the entire time is an example of healthy phone use. True or false?

## Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** how many digital identities you have. If you have more than one, **explain** why you need more than one identity.
7. **Explain** how you maintain your online security and privacy.
8. **Create** an image with a catchy hashtag on how to ensure you have a healthy pattern of use with your phone. The image should include things like using do not disturb, activating sleep mode and maintaining a low screen time.
9. **Outline** how you would offer support to someone who is experiencing bullying online. **Explain** why it is important that bystanders show support.
10. **Create** a list of behaviours that demonstrate positive online communication skills.

# LESSON

## 4.9 Help-seeking scenarios

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe where and when you can seek help in a range of scenarios.

### ENGAGE

Young people can reduce the potential for harm and keep themselves safe by adopting safe attitudes. Safe attitudes include:

- being concerned about your health and safety
- being concerned about the health and safety of others
- taking responsibility for your health and safety by thinking about potential risks and making plans to keep safe
- not assuming that 'it won't happen to me'.

Can you think of any other safe attitudes?

**FIGURE 4.33** Finding out important information can help you make smart decisions about your health.



You can reduce risk and minimise potential harms by thinking about a situation, finding out important information and planning ahead. In this lesson, you will examine how dealing positively with peer pressure and conflict situations, and knowing how to solve problems, can help you and your friends stay safe.

## 4.9.1 Skills to reduce risks

Making informed decisions in different situations is critical to reducing the risk of harm. Finding out relevant information will help you make better decisions. For example, before coming into conflict with a peer at school, think about the consequences for you from the school as well as your parents, and how this conflict could damage your long-term relationship with your peer. You can then make an informed decision. You might decide to seek advice from your teacher to help you resolve the conflict.

It is important that you recognise the impact of your behaviour. Your choices not only affect you, they can also affect others. Consider your attitudes about taking risks. What do you do when you find yourself in risky situations? Do you recognise the potential for harm? Do you think about how to keep yourself safe? Do you consider the safety of others? If you answered 'no' to any of these, then you are likely to be at greater risk of harm.

## 4.9.2 Keeping safe

The following skills are important for young people to learn to keep themselves and their friends safe in risky situations.

- Conflict resolution — resolving a situation so that both parties express their thoughts and feelings, and a reasonable solution is found without aggression or violence.
- Assertiveness — expressing your needs and thoughts without being aggressive.
- Problem solving — anticipating or identifying a problem, and applying strategies to overcome the problem and find a positive solution.
- Refusal — stating clearly that you don't want to be involved.

**FIGURE 4.34** Being assertive in unsafe situations can help keep you safe.



## 4.9.3 Dealing with risky situations

There are three steps to minimising the risk of harm in risky situations.

1. Recognising — the ability to realise the situation has the potential to become unsafe or cause harm. Taking notice of how you feel and your body's warning signs, such as a racing heart or sweaty palms, will help you recognise whether you feel unsafe. Being alert to your surroundings may also help you. If it doesn't feel right, it probably isn't.
2. Reacting — the ability to respond to situations that feel unsafe by developing strategies or a plan of action. Developing decision-making and assertiveness skills helps to keep you safe.

3. Reporting — the ability to report what you consider unsafe situations to an adult is very important. Develop a network of people that you can share your concerns with and who can provide the help that you may need.

As you grow up there are increasing opportunities to spend time with your friends and meet new people. These opportunities come with responsibilities to keep yourself and your friends safe. This requires good communication skills and planning to ensure that you minimise any risks.

Minimising harm in any environment is about planning ahead. Before you go to the beach, you pack sunscreen and a hat to minimise the chance of sunburn. Similarly, going out with friends should involve a plan. Planning ahead for your safety will help you respond in a positive way and make the occasion more enjoyable. Here are some points to consider for celebrating safely.

- Going out with friends who respect and value your company is a good start to staying safe.
- Never go out alone.
- Ensure you tell your parents where you are going and who you are going with.
- Stick with your friends and never leave a friend on their own.
- If you do end up on your own, make sure you have a designated safe meeting place to return to.
- Ensure you carry your phone and have the numbers of your trusted friends.
- In the case of an emergency, mobile phone apps such as the Emergency+ app, can provide your location if you are unsure.
- Discuss the options for getting to and from a party. Decide who is driving you, where you are being dropped off and who will pick you up and at what time.
- Avoid changing plans, but if it does occur, communicate these to your parents and your friends.
- Trust your instincts — if you don't feel safe, you probably aren't.
- If you are leaving a party, make sure you tell your friends.
- If a friend is seen leaving with someone new, make sure they are alright.
- If you don't want to drink alcohol, have some statements prepared to refuse politely.
- Remember that drugs and alcohol impair your judgement and result in poor decision making.
- Use your assertiveness skills to express your needs if you're being forced into doing something you don't want to do.

**FIGURE 4.35** Looking after your friends and sticking together will help you celebrate safely.



For information about myths around alcohol consumption and to know the law about underage drinking, use the **Safe party guide** weblink in the Online Resources.

### DID YOU KNOW?

The proportion of young people aged 12–17 years choosing not to drink rose from 63.6 per cent in 2010 to 72.5 per cent in 2019. That's up from 29 per cent just 12 years before (2007).

## 4.9.4 Help-seeking scenarios and strategies

**TABLE 4.5** Other situations you may come across and suggested responses

Topic	Issue you may encounter	How to deal with the situation
Substance use	Friends or family using and/or abusing drugs and alcohol	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Educate yourself on the dangers of substance use so you can make your own choices.</li> <li>Be assertive and say no when offered drugs or alcohol.</li> </ul>
Mental health issues	You or your friends experiencing a mental health issue, such as depression, anxiety or an eating disorder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reach out to the individual and show your support.</li> <li>If you are still concerned, talk to a trusted adult and they can provide further help.</li> <li>Seek online help (e.g. from Kids Helpline or Beyond Blue).</li> </ul>
Risk taking	Any risky situation, such as drinking, stealing, reckless driving or swimming in unsafe areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Be assertive.</li> <li>Educate yourself so you know the risks you are taking and how to make good choices to encourage positive outcomes.</li> </ul>
Sexual health	Being pressured to have unsafe sex	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Be assertive.</li> <li>Tell them you will not engage in any sexual behaviour without protection.</li> </ul>

### 4.9 ACTIVITIES

#### 1 Reducing risk through smart decisions

Read the following scenario and answer the questions that follow.

*Ross was bored because school had finished for the year. He and his mates decided to ride their bikes out to the river. Two of his friends decided they should all go for a swim. They pressured Ross to join them. Ross wasn't a strong swimmer and didn't think it was a good idea. It had rained heavily the day before, and the river was high and running swiftly. They had been warned about swimming in the river after heavy rains. Ross's friends said nothing would happen to them, so he dived with them into the water and they started racing to the other side. Ross was caught by the strong current and dragged under. His friends didn't notice because they were trying to beat each other to the other side.*

- Identify the factors that influenced the boys' decision to swim in the river.
- Were the boys' attitudes safe? Explain.
- Outline the information that was essential to know in this situation to reduce the risk of harm to Ross and his friends.
- How could Ross have influenced his friends not to swim in the river?
- Considering the options that Ross had and the potential risk to Ross and his friends, what decision should Ross have made in this situation?

#### 2 Developing strategies

- In pairs, discuss each of the following scenarios. Identify the possible risks, assess the level of risk and suggest how the person could stay safe.
  - A boy is diving into a waterhole at a friend's property. He has never swum there before.
  - A girl suffering from depression is being bullied at school by her peers.
  - A child is allowed to move around in the car freely while his dad is driving.
  - A group of girls at a party are leaving their drinks on a table while they dance.
  - A boy is riding his bike. He takes his helmet off when he is out of sight of his parents.
- Share your responses as a class.

### 3 Identifying risks

- In groups of no more than four, divide a large sheet of poster paper into two columns.
- In the left-hand column, list the concerns a person might have about going to a party.
- For each concern, in the right-hand column, write a solution or action to remain safe.
- Share your group's work with the class.

Use the **Safe party guide** weblink in the Online Resources to find more information.



### 4 Making decisions

Making the right decision is not always simple. You are often torn between what you want to do and what you feel is right. Consider the following scenarios to identify the factors that influence decision making and explore the pros and cons of these decisions.

- You and three friends have been at a party for two hours and you don't really know anyone. You get a message from a friend that shows an image of them having a good time at a party a few blocks away. You and your friends are really keen to leave this party by taxi and check out the other. When you all arrive at the new party, you can't find your friend, who had been drinking heavily. What do you do?*
- Your dad drops you and a friend at a party at 9:00 pm. You ask him to pick you both up at 11:30 pm for a sleepover. You told him there would be no alcohol at the party. By 10:30 pm, your friend is so intoxicated that she can't stand up and is crying. You didn't know she pre-loaded before arriving at your house. You are afraid that she'll vomit in your dad's car when he arrives to take you all home. You are also worried that he'll think that you lied about there being no alcohol at the party. What do you do?*

### 5 Group activity

Design a safe partying Instagram or TikTok ad that outlines how to be safe at parties to minimise risk to yourself and others. You can either use the **Instagram frame** provided in the Online Resources, or TikTok at your teacher's discretion.



### 6 Minimising harm

Complete the **Minimising harm** in risky situations worksheet in the Online Resources to devise strategies to minimise harm and to protect your own and others' health.



**FIGURE 4.36** Why is it dangerous for children to move around in the car while it is in motion?



## 4.9 Exercise

### 4.9 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 3, 4, 5

#### LEVEL 2

2, 6, 7, 8

#### LEVEL 3

9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Why do young people take risks? Select all options that apply.
  - They are being pressured by friends.
  - They want to rebel against authority.
  - They feel depressed, isolated or ignored.
  - All of the above

2. **MC** You've been feeling down for a few weeks and can't seem to shake the feeling. You should
  - A. keep it to yourself and hope it goes away.
  - B. talk to a trusted friend or family member.
  - C. ignore it and distract yourself with other activities.
  - D. post about it on social media to get attention.
3. Saying 'it won't happen to me' is a safe attitude. True or false?
4. **MC** You're considering riding your bike down a steep hill without a helmet. You should
  - A. do it, it's a fun thrill.
  - B. wear a helmet and take the necessary precautions.
  - C. ride the bike down the hill backwards for an extra challenge.
  - D. not ride down the hill at all.
5. Conflict resolution means you need to keep physically fighting until you find a solution. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Define** 'conflict resolution' and provide an example.
  7. **Explain** why problem solving is an important part of help-seeking strategies.
  8. **Describe** three skills that are important in helping young people stay safe.
  9. **Discuss** what peer pressure is and reflect on how it can influence a young person to participate in risky behaviour.
-

# LESSON

## 4.10 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 4.10.1 What have I learned?

- Young people can make better decisions about their health when they are provided with accurate information.
- Young people can use advocacy to improve their own health and the health of others.
- Mental health issues are prevalent among teenagers of all genders.
- Our body image is linked to our self-esteem and can affect our mental health.
- It is OK to ask for help. Mental health illnesses are very common.
- Young people can help support their friends during tough times by listening, giving emotional support and helping them find professional help.
- Often, the most important role your family and friends can play is to help you understand the problem, seek out sources of help and evaluate the information.
- The use and misuse of drugs can have a negative impact on your health.
- Drug use can affect people in a variety of ways, not just their physical health.
- It is important to have a balance in your relationships to keep them healthy.
- Communication, informed consent, being assertive and conflict resolution are all important relationship skills.
- Emotions can have an impact on our relationships.
- Emotions can affect our ability to seek help.
- It is important to develop and maintain support networks.
- It is important to develop skills to stay safe online.
- There are a variety of strategies to deal with antisocial online behaviour and manage our online identities.
- There are a variety of skills we can use to reduce our risk, keep safe and deal with risky situations.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTION REVIEWED

How can I adapt to the challenges that come with adolescence, support others and make the right choices?

Evaluate your initial answer, now that you have more information.



Resources



Interactivity Crossword (int-8916)

## 4.10.2 Key terms

**anxiety** feeling uneasy or worried

**assertive** expressing your viewpoint in a way that is respectful and non-threatening

**binge drinking** drinking large amounts of alcohol in a short period of time or drinking constantly for a number of days

**cannabinoids** types of chemicals that act on particular receptors in the brain

**compassion** a feeling of empathy or sympathy towards someone who is going through a difficult time

**consent** occurs when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen

**dependence** reliance on or needing the drug to function; many of your thoughts, emotions and actions focus on the drug

**depressants** drugs that slow the activity of your nervous system

**depression** a mental illness often characterised by feelings of hopelessness, sadness, isolation and worry

**drug** a substance that has a physiological effect on the body; can be legal or illegal

**empathy** the ability to identify, appreciate and understand another's situation or feelings

**hallucinogens** drugs that work on the brain to cause hallucinations

**integrity** being honest, fair and trustworthy, and standing up for what you believe in, even if it is not popular or easy

**Medicare** the government scheme that gives Australian residents access to healthcare

**mental health** relates to the state of a person's mind or brain and the ability to think and process information

**passive smoking** breathing in second-hand cigarette smoke

**respect** recognising and appreciating the differences between people and treating them fairly

**risk** uncertainty about the effects or implications of an activity; can be positive or negative

**stimulants** drugs that stimulate or speed up your brain and nervous system

**tolerance** the higher the tolerance, the more of the drug is needed for the same effect

## 4.10 Exercise

### 4.10 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9

##### ■ LEVEL 2

7, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17

##### ■ LEVEL 3

14, 18, 19, 20

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. A person with health concerns should seek information or assistance from others.	
2. Government organisations or departments usually provide the most credible health information.	
3. All drugs increase your heart rate and give you a 'high'.	
4. The short-term pleasure that might be associated with drugs is far outweighed by the short-term and long-term consequences of taking drugs.	
5. Men should have all the power in a relationship because they are generally bigger.	
6. If you are feeling unhappy in a relationship you should stay in it until the other person ends it.	

Statement	True or false
7. Positive online behaviours include respecting the rights and privacy of others.	
8. By setting your social media sites to 'private', you don't have to worry about what you post online.	
9. When going to a party, planning ahead isn't needed if you go with your good friends.	
10. You should always do what your friends want you to do so you fit in.	

### Apply your understanding

11. **Outline** two ways you can support others when they are having a challenging time.
12. **Identify** four good quality websites for mental health information and support.
13. **Explain** why tobacco and alcohol are so widely abused in our society.
14. Other than physical effects, **describe** what effects drugs can have on your body.
15. **Explain** what it means to have a balance of power.
16. **Outline** the skills that are essential to maintain a positive relationship.
17. **Summarise** how you maintain your online security and privacy.
18. **Discuss** what behaviours demonstrate positive online communication skills.
19. **Elaborate** on why young people take risks.
20. **Evaluate** which communication skills assist you to stay safe in risky situations.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign unique tests and exams



Access quarantined tests and assessments



Track your students' results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# 5 Influences on health, safety and wellbeing

## LESSON SEQUENCE

5.1 Overview .....	191
5.2 Influences on the health of young people .....	192
5.3 Health campaigns targeting First Nations Australian young people .....	197
5.4 Accessing health information .....	201
5.5 Making informed decisions .....	205
5.6 Nutrition and the media .....	209
5.7 Review .....	214

**FIGURE 5.1** What do you think influences your health, safety and wellbeing?



# LESSON

## 5.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 5.1.1 Making healthy decisions

Being healthy comes from making healthy decisions. Our decisions, especially during adolescence, are influenced by many factors. The more we understand these influences and the positive and possible negative outcomes of our decisions, the easier making healthy choices will be, both during adolescence and throughout life. To make healthy decisions, we need to develop health literacy so that we know where to find health information and how to judge if it is reliable. Health literacy means understanding information about health and health care, how to apply that information to our lives and how to use it to make health decisions. In today's society, the media plays an important role in spreading health messages. Health messages can be positive, such as health campaigns targeting First Nations Australian young people, or negative, such as those in food advertisements that promote unhealthy eating. It is essential for young people to not only develop health literacy but also media literacy so that they have the skills to make positive and informed health decisions.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- What are the major influences on my health decisions?
- How do I know who to believe and how do I access accurate and reliable health information?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. What major influences affect the decisions you make about your health?
2. How do you access health information, products or services?
3. How do you know if health information is credible and relevant to you?
4. What skills do you need to make informed health decisions?



Resources



**Video eLesson** Influences on health, safety and wellbeing (eles-6022)

# LESSON

## 5.2 Influences on the health of young people

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Explain how the health of young people is influenced by the people around them and the media.

### 5.2.1 What influences you

#### ENGAGE

Using the word cloud in figure 5.2, identify what influences:

- what you wear
- what you eat
- what you do outside of school
- where you go for health information
- what you like
- what you don't like.

**FIGURE 5.2** What influences you?

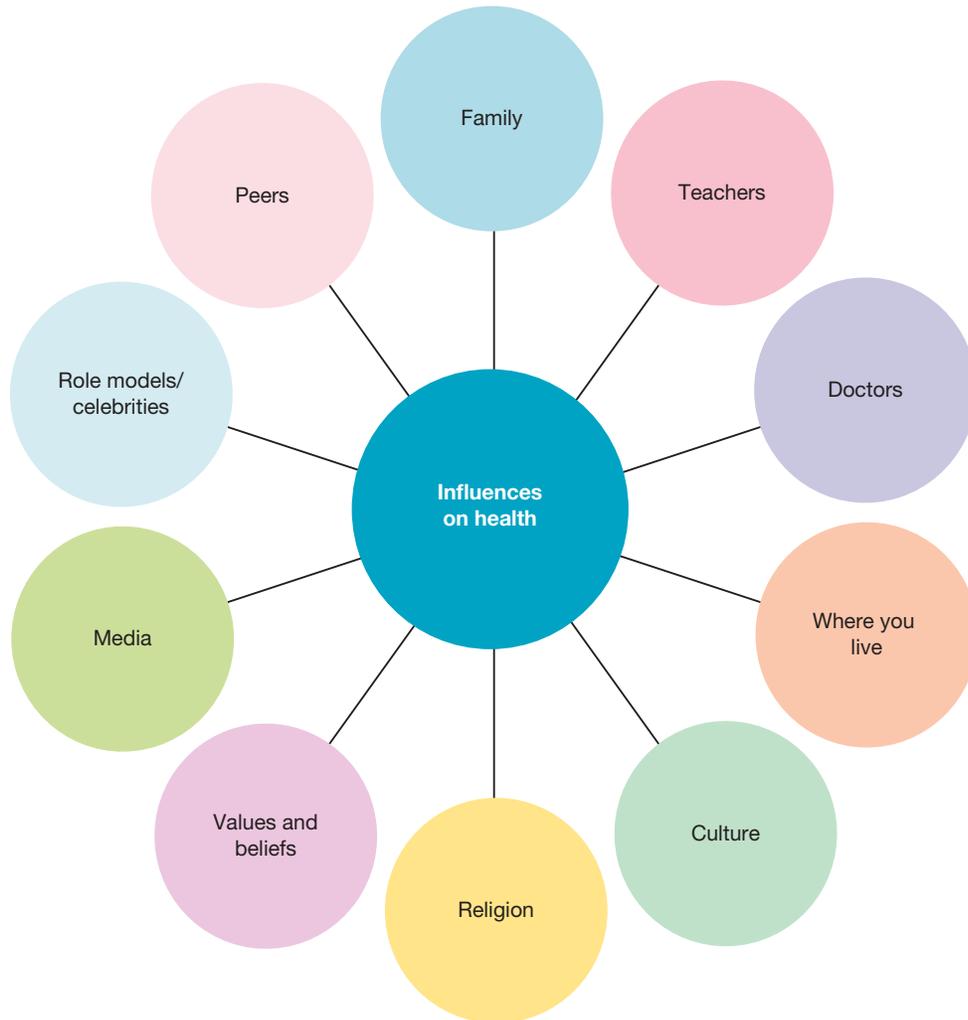


### 5.2.2 How people influence the health of young people

Many people influence the decisions you make in life. These people might change over time and might differ depending on the choices you are making. For example, when we are young our family are often the most influential people in our lives. However, as we move into adolescence, friends and peers may have an increased influence over our choices.

It is important to be able to recognise who or what influences our attitudes, beliefs, decisions and behaviours, particularly in relation to health and wellbeing.

**FIGURE 5.3** There are many things that influence the health of young people.



### 5.2.3 How the media influences the health of young people

**Media** is a broad term that includes:

- social media
- television and movies
- newspapers and magazines
- influencers and bloggers
- radio and music
- billboards and other advertisements.

**media** a broad term that can include many areas such as social media, television, print media and radio

The media can have both a positive and negative impact on the health of young people. For example, it can impact you positively if you follow an influencer who posts healthy food recipes and workout ideas on social media. This could encourage you to become healthier. However, the media can also negatively influence young people's food and lifestyle choices through clever marketing campaigns.

FIGURE 5.4 Various forms of media



## 5.2.4 How sexual relationships are portrayed in the media

Messages related to sexual relationships are portrayed in all forms of media:

- TV shows
- music videos
- social media posts
- billboards
- movies
- YouTube clips
- video games
- novels and magazines.

Young people are particularly vulnerable to this sexual content because their gender roles, sexual attitudes and sexual behaviours are still being shaped.

The sexual relationships presented in the media often do not reflect reality. For example:

- Sexual relationships are presented as almost exclusively **heterosexual** in nature.
- Women are often advertised as being sex objects and presented in **sexualised** ways.
- Sexual activity is often between unmarried partners.
- Movies and TV shows rarely address consent and often show unprotected sexual intercourse with little discussion around the potential risks involved.

FIGURE 5.5 Sexual relationships are often portrayed in the media unrealistically.



**heterosexual** emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the opposite sex  
**sexualised** to make something sexual or attributed to sex

Social media also has a significant influence on young people’s attitudes and behaviours towards relationships. The pressure to share one’s relationship status on social media has increased, and relationships may not be considered legitimate unless they are ‘Facebook official’. Relationships on social media are often presented through a positive lens that shows a perfect life and perfect relationship. Posts with accompanying hash tags such as ‘Relationship goals’, ‘Couple goals’ or ‘Insta couples’ can lead young people to feel dissatisfied with their own relationship or lack of one. This can make them feel inadequate and lonely. Young people in unhealthy relationships may also apply a positive lens to their posts and photos in an attempt to appear happy in their relationship. This can stop them getting help when they need it.

It is important that young people have the skills to recognise and challenge the unrealistic sexual messages promoted in the media. This will help them to maintain their own values, beliefs and behaviours rather than feeling pressure to conform to the fake stereotypes found in the media.

## DISCUSS

Which people in your life do you feel have the biggest influence on your health and why? Which aspect of the media do you feel has the biggest impact on the health of young people both positively and negatively?

## 5.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Comparing influences

- Interview someone of a similar age and someone who is significantly older than you.
- Ask your interviewees:
  - who the major influences on their health and wellbeing are
  - who or what had the most significant influence on their current health and why.
- Compare the responses from both interviews. Were the influences similar or different? How? Does age affect what influences health?
- Collate your findings into a presentation using an ICT program or app of your choice.

### 2 Analysing the impact of the media

- Watch 30 minutes of television between 5pm and 8pm. In addition, view an online news source such as Nine News or ABC News.
- Using these media sources, identify some examples of:
  - health messages
  - sexual messages.
- Using an example from the sources you viewed, discuss how the media can:
  - positively impact adolescents’ health
  - negatively impact adolescents’ health.

### 3 Group work

In small groups, complete the following activities.

- Provide an example of how each of the following factors influences the health of young people.

Influence	Example of the impact on the health of young people
Peers	
Family	
Teachers	

(continued)

(continued)

Influence	Example of the impact on the health of young people
Doctors	
Where you live	
Culture	
Religion	
Values and beliefs	
Media	
Role models/celebrities	

- In groups, discuss the influences that you believe have the biggest impact on the health of young people. Which has the least influence? Rank them from 1 to 10, with 1 being the biggest influence on health and 10 being the least.
- Share your order with the other groups in the class. Were they similar or different?
- As a class, discuss why you think they were similar or different.

## 5.2 Exercise

### 5.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

##### LEVEL 2

5, 6, 7

##### LEVEL 3

8, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which of the following is least likely to influence an adolescent's health decisions?
  - Family
  - Friends
  - Pets
  - Religion
- MC** Which influence does not come under the media banner?
  - Newspapers
  - Influencers
  - Social media
  - Teachers
- MC** A person's values and beliefs can influence their health. Values and beliefs are often shaped by:
  - past experiences.
  - family's morals and values.
  - religion and culture.
  - all of the above.
- The media showing fast food advertisements for burgers and chips is a positive influence for young people because they love that type of food. True or false?
- The biggest influence on the health of young people now will also be the biggest influence on them later in life. True or false?

## Apply your understanding

6. **Outline** five influences on the health of young people.
7. **Explain** how it is possible for the media to be both a positive influence and a negative influence on young people.
8. The increased use of social media has become very common in our society. **Propose** whether or not the increased use of social media has a positive or a negative influence on young people and provide examples to support your judgement.
9. For each of the following age groups, **list** three different influences on their health. **Discuss** why there are differences.
  - Primary school children
  - Young people
  - Adults
10. Consider if you think there are differences between the major influences on health for adolescent boys as compared to adolescent girls. **Justify** your answer.

# LESSON

## 5.3 Health campaigns targeting First Nations Australian young people

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe health campaigns that are designed to enhance the health of First Nations Australian young people.

### ENGAGE

Do you know of any health campaigns that target First Nations Australian young people? What strategies do they use to promote and enhance health and wellbeing?



## 5.3.1 First Nations identity and its influence on health

**First Nations Australians** have a strong sense of identity that is connected to the land. The spiritual connection with Country is highly important as it contributes to an individual's sense of belonging and is a key factor in identity.

The First Nations Peoples of Australia inhabited Australia for more than 65 000 years before European colonisation. Their cultures and spirituality are linked to the landscapes that they live in. Connection to Country and respect for Elders, as well as the **Dreaming**, are a key part of this. These factors are all major influences on the health of First Nations Australian young people and affect their attitudes, beliefs, decisions and behaviours.

Many health campaigns have been designed to foster and promote these cultural customs and traditions. Their aim has been to enhance the health of First Nations Australian young people, which they do effectively through the messages and strategies they promote. Three such health campaigns include:

- Deadly Choices
- Don't Make Smokes Your Story
- Yarn Safe.

## 5.3.2 Deadly Choices

The Deadly Choices campaign was first released in 2010. In First Nations Australians slang, 'deadly' means 'very good'. The campaign aims to empower First Nations Australians to make healthy choices for themselves and their families. Some key messages and strategies promoted through the campaign are to:

- stop smoking
- eat healthy food
- exercise daily
- complete an annual 'health check'.

In order to promote their health messages, Deadly Choices use ambassadors to help increase awareness of and engagement with their goals. Ambassadors are often past and present famous First Nations Australian athletes from a range of sports, or even whole sports teams.

Some ambassadors include:

- former rugby league players Preston Campbell and Petero Civoniceva
- Olympic beach volleyballer Taliqua Clancy
- the North Queensland Cowboys
- the Brisbane Broncos
- the Cronulla Sharks
- the Parramatta Eels
- the Brisbane Lions
- the Gold Coast Suns
- the Hawthorne Hawks
- Essendon Football Club.

**FIGURE 5.6** Culture and identity affect health decisions and behaviour.



**First Nations Australians** the traditional custodians of the land; at the time of European colonisation, they had already been inhabiting Australia for at least 65 000 years

**Dreaming** in First Nations spirituality, the (non-linear) time when the Earth took on its present form and cycles of life and nature began; explains creation and the nature of the world, the place that every person has in that world and the importance of ritual and tradition; Dreaming stories pass on important knowledge, laws and beliefs; also known as Dreamtime

**FIGURE 5.7** Deadly Choices run annual sporting competitions to get First Nations Australian young people more involved in sport.



These ambassadors help promote and enhance the health of others because they live healthy lifestyles and actively encourage others to do the same. They lead by example in their public and private lives and strive to make a difference within the First Nations Australian community.

In order to get young First Nations Australians more physically active, Deadly Choices runs annual touch football, rugby league and netball sports competitions for young people to take part in. These events are cigarette, alcohol and sugar free.

### 5.3.3 Don't Make Smokes Your Story

The Don't Make Smokes Your Story campaign originally launched in 2016 and continues to gain momentum and achieve great results. It is an anti-smoking campaign targeting First Nations Australians. The campaign uses television commercials, radio, print media and online advertisements to reach its target audience. Research by the Australian Government Department of Health found that 86 per cent of First Nations Australian smokers and recent quitters were aware of the campaign. This shows that the strategies the campaign uses to promote its messages are effective.

Don't Make Smokes Your Story features a First Nations Australian man, Ted, who reflects on his experiences of smoking and the benefits of quitting.

The campaign then promotes resources to assist people to quit smoking, such as the Quitline number. The campaign's messages are specifically aimed at smokers, recent quitters and their families.

The key objectives of the campaign are to:

- encourage quit attempts among current smokers
- encourage people to keep trying to quit if not successful the first time
- direct people to support resources, including Quitline, quit smoking apps and the campaign website
- communicate the risks of smoking
- show the benefits of quitting for smokers and their families
- encourage family members and service providers to support the campaign.

This campaign effectively enhances the health of First Nations Australian young people because it discourages them from taking up smoking. It also gives them the necessary resources to encourage family members to quit.

**FIGURE 5.8** Don't Make Smokes Your Story aims to reduce smoking among First Nations Australians



#### DISCUSS

Why do you think it is important to have campaigns targeting First Nations Australian young people?

#### 5.3 ACTIVITIES

##### 1 Yarn Safe

In small groups of 2–3, research the campaign known as 'Yarn Safe' using the **Yarn Safe** weblink in the Online Resources. Then, complete the following questions:

- Identify when the campaign was first started.
- State the organisation responsible for creating this campaign.



- c. Identify and describe the key messages promoted throughout the campaign.
- d. Explain the strategies used to help promote the messages and enhance the health of First Nations Australian young people.
- e. Justify why your group believes this is an effective campaign.

## 2 Foundations and charities

Research a foundation or charity established or supported by a First Nations Australian sporting hero. Then, answer the following questions:

- a. Name the First Nations Australian athlete involved in the foundation or charity you researched.
- b. Identify whether they created the charity or foundation, or if they are an ambassador.
- c. Provide an overview of the charity, foundation or program.
- d. Identify the key health messages promoted through this platform.
- e. Explain why these messages are important.
- f. Discuss the influence this foundation or charity has on First Nations Australian communities.

## 5.3 Exercise

### 5.3 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

■ LEVEL 2

5, 7

■ LEVEL 3

6, 8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** Which influence has had a significant impact on the health of First Nations Australians?
  - A. Campaigns targeting First Nations Australians
  - B. Doctors
  - C. Newspapers
  - D. Religion
2. Dreaming stories pass on important knowledge and beliefs. True or false?
3. **MC** Deadly is a slang word used by First Nations Australians to mean:
  - A. risky.
  - B. great.
  - C. bad.
  - D. negative for one's health.
4. First Nations Australians are the traditional custodians of Country throughout Australia. True or false?
5. Health promotion campaigns work best when they target the whole population of Australia. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Describe** why it is important to have health campaigns that are culturally appropriate for First Nations Australians.
7. **Identify** the best First Nations health campaign that you have seen. Why do you believe it is the best?
8. **Outline** the reasons why you think the 'Don't Make Smokes Your Story' campaign was started.
9. **Discuss** three positive messages for young people promoted by health campaigns targeting First Nations Australians.

# LESSON

## 5.4 Accessing health information

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Explain different ways you can access accurate health information.

### ENGAGE

There are so many health products and services available today. What health services and products have you used before? Who influenced you to use those products or services? Which products or services are you interested in trying?

**FIGURE 5.9** Why did you choose the health product you last used?



### 5.4.1 Be informed

Our optimal health is the best health we can achieve. This varies from person to person. To maintain optimal health, we need to know how to access reliable **health information** and be able to act on it accordingly. Accessing health information and finding the right answers can sometimes be a challenge for us as **health consumers**. The most important aspect of consumer health is being able to evaluate and act correctly on health information. A wide range of **health products** and **services** are available. Although many are safe, others, such as 'miracle cures' or rapid weight-loss diets, can damage our health. Who, then, do we believe?

**health information** knowledge about a health product or service you may need, want, buy or receive

**health consumers** people who buy health products or use health services

**health product** a produced or manufactured item that is designed to improve a person's health, such as toothpaste, sunscreen or vitamins

**health service** something that helps people maintain or improve their health, such as ambulance services, internet advice or healthcare hotlines

### 5.4.2 Family and friends

Our family and friends are often helpful and convenient sources of health information. Older family members might be able to refer us to general services, such as doctors and dentists, and can usually help us with minor injuries, such as cuts. However, they may not have expertise on specific health matters, such as anxiety disorders. Similarly, our friends may be able to empathise, but they lack the expertise to help treat the problem. The most important role our family and friends can play is to help us understand the problem, seek out sources of help and evaluate information.

**FIGURE 5.10** Family and friends can help you seek out sources of health information.



### 5.4.3 School

Your school is an excellent resource because your health teachers and counsellors have a good understanding of adolescent problems. They can provide you with reliable information, including about available products and services. Health lessons are a good place to discuss health problems. You should feel free to discuss any concerns you have in class, or with your teacher. Your teacher can then provide guidance on where to find further information if needed.

### 5.4.4 Health organisations

Many health products and health services are available from **health organisations**. Health organisations include hospitals, doctors, pharmacists and organisations such as the Heart Foundation, St John Ambulance Australia and the Cancer Council. Health organisations answer our calls, give advice, provide pamphlets and generally work to improve the health of all Australians. It is up to each of us, however, to make health choices that are in our best interests. How well we do this depends on our judgement and decision-making ability. Changes and challenges in adolescence can create stress and lead to mental health issues such as anxiety and depression. There are many health organisations that help young people deal with changes and challenges, including ReachOut, Kids Helpline and Beyondblue.

**FIGURE 5.11** Hospitals are health organisations that provide emergency care to people in need.



**health organisation** a group that assists in matters relating to health by providing services, products and information

### 5.4.5 The internet

The internet is now the most extensive of all sources of health information, providing access to a large range of health products, suggestions, information and advice. It should be noted, however, that many internet sources may not be reliable and can even provide harmful advice. You should be very cautious when using unrecognised internet sources for health-related information. Some of the best websites for health information are ones that have .org or .gov at the end. A list of these is shown in table 5.1. These are all available as weblinks in the Online Resources for you to check out for yourself.



**TABLE 5.1** Reliable health websites

Support for alcohol and drug dependence	Support for nutrition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Better Health Channel</li> <li>• Be the Influence</li> <li>• Alcohol and Drug Foundation</li> <li>• Youth Support + Advocacy Service (YSAS)</li> <li>• Drug and Alcohol Research and Training Australia</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancer Council</li> <li>• Nutrition Australia</li> <li>• National Heart Foundation</li> <li>• Better Health Channel</li> <li>• Health Direct Australia</li> <li>• Health departments in each state or territory</li> </ul>
Support for physical activity	Support for safety
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Australian Sports Commission</li> <li>• Physical Activity Australia</li> <li>• Department of Health</li> <li>• Smartplay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Heart Foundation</li> <li>• Red Cross</li> <li>• St John Ambulance</li> <li>• State Emergency Services</li> <li>• Salvation Army</li> </ul>

Support for mental health	Support for relationships and sexual health
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lifeline</li> <li>• Youth Beyond Blue</li> <li>• Black Dog Institute</li> <li>• headspace</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kids Helpline</li> <li>• Centre Against Sexual Assault (CASA)</li> <li>• eheadspace</li> <li>• Family Planning in each state</li> <li>• Better Health Channel</li> <li>• MensLine</li> <li>• Relationship Australia</li> <li>• ReachOut</li> </ul>

## 5.4.6 The media

The media is very influential, both in promoting health products and communicating health messages. We see some television commercials promoting healthy food and others marketing junk food. Most magazines and newspapers advertise health products, promote new diets, include features such as ‘health tips for the week’ and sometimes include entire health sections. Often these health articles address issues relevant to young people, such as sexuality, relationships, skin problems and weight control. The information is usually reliable because it has been written or checked by people in the medical profession. However, we should be aware that just because health advice appears in print, this does not mean that it is reliable. It also may not be the appropriate answer to our own problem and should be considered as **general advice** only.

Bloggers, influencers and social media advertisements are a relatively new form of media from which many people seek out health information. Unlike some of the other sources previously mentioned, the health information that **bloggers** and **influencers** post has not been checked by medical professionals or professionals in the industry. Instead, it is just the personal opinion of the blogger or influencer. It can also be an opinion that they were sponsored (paid) to give. This information should be reviewed cautiously as it is not always true or credible. When reviewing social media advertisements, it is important to check that they have come from a **reliable source** such as a government website like VicHealth or a reputable organisation such as Beyond Blue.

## 5.4.7 The family doctor

Your family doctor is probably the most reliable source of health information and advice. General practitioners (GPs) are highly qualified and deal with health problems every day. They are aware of new products and are trustworthy in their evaluation of the latest health information. Always feel free to discuss any health concerns with them. Tell them what you have read and the advice you have already received, and then listen carefully to their assessment of your concerns.

**FIGURE 5.12** There are many sources of health information, but not all are reliable.



**general advice** information that is meant as a general guideline or suggestion. It is not specific to an individual’s unique needs or circumstances.

**blogger** a person who regularly writes material for a blog

**influencer** a person with the ability to influence potential buyers of a product or service by promoting or recommending the item, usually on social media

**reliable source** a source of information that provides a thorough, well-reasoned theory, argument or discussion based on strong evidence

### DISCUSS

How old do you need to be to go to see a doctor without your parents? At what age can you get your own Medicare card?

## 5.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Inside health

In small groups, discuss each question and report back to the class. Summarise the responses on the board.

- Explain why you purchased or used the last headache tablet that you took. How did you know the medication was safe? Would you choose this brand again?
- Identify what made you or your parents choose the doctor you go to. Do you feel comfortable asking them questions? Are things explained to you fully when you visit?
- Do you regularly read websites or social media advertisements on health? If you do, identify what topics you find interesting. How do you know the information is correct? Do you use the information to diagnose or treat your own problems?

### 2 Influencers' health messages

Using the internet, find a post from an influencer or blogger that is promoting health information or products. Answer the following questions.

- Identify the health information or message they are promoting.
- Describe how they are promoting the product, service or information.
- Identify the marketing tactics they use.
- Analyse how credible you think their information is. Why?
- Share your findings with the class.

## 5.4 Exercise

### 5.4 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3

■ LEVEL 2

4, 5, 6, 8

■ LEVEL 3

7, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Out of the following options, select two main sources of reliable health information.
  - Supermarket
  - Doctors
  - Children
  - School
- Use the following words to complete the sentence.

**Word bank:** information, understand, sources

The most important role our family and friends can play is to help us \_\_\_\_\_ the problem, seek out \_\_\_\_\_ of help and evaluate the \_\_\_\_\_ we receive.

- We must treat the things we read by bloggers as general advice only. True or false?
- MC** The internet can be an extensive source for health information that:
  - can sometimes be misleading — you need to be cautious when using unrecognised sites.
  - always has the correct information.
  - is always produced by health professionals.
  - All of the above

5. **MC** Which one of the following is not a credible health organisation?
- A. Heart Foundation
  - B. Facebook
  - C. St John Ambulance
  - D. The Cancer Council

### Apply your understanding

6. **Explain** the main sources of information you can consult when seeking out health advice.
7. **Evaluate** which two sources of health information you think are the most reliable. Why?
8. **Explain** why we must treat the things our friends tell us as general advice only.
9. **Describe** four concerns you could talk to your family doctor about.

## LESSON

### 5.5 Making informed decisions

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Analyse the skills you need to make informed, health-related decisions.

#### ENGAGE

The health products and services industry brings in billions of dollars every year.

- How do you know who to believe?
- What does health literacy mean?
- What skills do you need to make informed health choices?
- Where can you go to get accurate and reliable information?

**FIGURE 5.13** Can you believe all the claims on a health or wellbeing product?



#### 5.5.1 Health literacy

**Health literacy** involves people understanding information about health and health care, and being able to apply that information to their lives, use it to make decisions and act on it. Every day, everyone is required to make many decisions. Some are more significant than others. Being informed when making decisions about health not only makes the process easier, it can also increase the chances of positive outcomes.

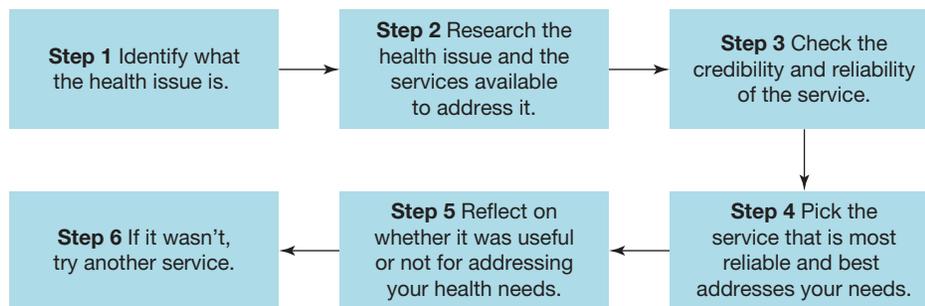
**health literacy** understanding information about health and health care, and how to apply that information to our lives and use it to make health decisions

## 5.5.2 Evaluating and analysing health information

Once you have researched health information, products and services, you should analyse and evaluate the situation. Can you tell whether using the product or service is in your best interests? Many products may be useful or beneficial for some people but not for others. It is essential that you develop the skills needed to evaluate information about the health products and services you may be interested in.

Figure 5.14 shows the steps that you can take when evaluating and addressing health information.

**FIGURE 5.14** How to evaluate health information



## 5.5.3 Skills needed to make informed decisions

To evaluate information successfully, we need to develop certain skills so that we can make the best decisions for ourselves.

Asking ourselves the following questions before we buy health products or use a health service will help us be more informed consumers.

- Which product or service is best for my issue?
- Are the promised health benefits reasonable and realistic?
- Can I find information from other sources (e.g. family or GP) to support or contradict the claims?
- Is the person promoting the product or service a qualified health professional or a credible source?
- Are there any health risks or side effects I need to be aware of?
- Are there similar products or services that are cheaper, more effective or have fewer health risks?
- If I am not satisfied with the product or service, what other services can I try?

We can assume that information from teachers, doctors and government organisations such as VicHealth or well-known organisations like the Heart Foundation are reliable. However, we should be cautious of health information that comes from less trustworthy sources, such as:

- word of mouth (e.g. from friends)
- radio and television
- the internet
- print media (e.g. magazines)
- bloggers
- social media
- influencers.

**FIGURE 5.15** There are so many health products to choose from. How do we decide?



**FIGURE 5.16** Advertisements for alcohol can suggest the only way you can have fun with friends is if you consume alcohol.



Sometimes young people can be targets of media campaigns that spread false or misleading information. This is because they might not have developed the health literacy skills required to understand the messages from these sources and make informed health-related decisions. For example, some companies use clever marketing campaigns to advertise alcoholic beverages to young people. They might show images of young people having a great time while drinking alcohol. These campaigns send false messages that alcohol is healthy and the only way you can have fun with friends is if you drink.

## DISCUSS

What are the major influences on a young person's health literacy? Why do you think it is important for young people to develop health literacy?

## 5.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Factors impacting health decisions

Despite the large amount of health information, products and services that are available, accessing them can be a challenging task.

A number of factors can stop young people from accessing health information or making informed decisions about health services and products. Some groups of people in particular might lack the skills to make informed decisions. For example:

- people who live in poverty
- people who are less educated
- First Nations Australians
- people who live in isolated rural communities
- people with English as an additional language
- people with mental or physical disabilities.

In pairs, select one group from the list above and answer the following questions.

- Explain why the group may have difficulty accessing health services and making informed decisions.
- Identify some negative consequences of them not being able to make informed decisions.
- Consider the advice you would give the group on how to make informed health-related decisions.
- Propose ideas to make health information more accessible for them.

### 2 Put your skills to the test

In small groups, research and locate two pieces of health information that come from one of the following categories. You need to find one piece of health information that is accurate and reliable and one that is not.

- Mental health
- Nutrition
- Drug use
- Sexual health
- Road safety

Answer the following questions and present your information to the class.

- Identify the skills you used when analysing the health information.
- Explain how you know that the first piece of health information you found is accurate and reliable.
- Identify what makes your second piece of health information not accurate or reliable.
- Provide a list of reputable sources to use when accessing health information in your category.

## 5.5 Exercise

### 5.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 4, 5, 6

**LEVEL 2**

2, 3, 7, 9

**LEVEL 3**

8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which one of the following is not an important reason to assess or evaluate our health information, products and services?
  - To seek out sources of help
  - To know what our other choices are
  - So that we can access the same services as our friends
  - To know if there are any side effects of the product or service
- If a website is trying to sell a product, it is more likely to focus on the positive aspects of the product and ignore the negative aspects. True or false?
- MC** Select two reasons why the internet is a valuable resource for finding health information, products and services.
  - It is convenient and efficient.
  - It is always correct and reliable.
  - It is always specific to each individual's circumstances.
  - It can be used to assess a wide range of products and services.
- MC** Which of the following is NOT an important question when evaluating health information?
  - Is the information enjoyable and does it have pictures to support the written information?
  - Who prepared the information?
  - Is the information up-to-date?
  - What is the purpose of the information?
- Education does not influence access to good health. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

- Define** 'health literacy'.
- State** two credible health support organisations for:
  - nutrition
  - mental health.
- Explain** why it is important to assess and evaluate health information, products and services.
- Identify** three questions you should ask when assessing health information.
- If you are lacking in energy, does this mean you should take health products that promise to improve your energy levels? **Justify** why or why not.

# LESSON

## 5.6 Nutrition and the media

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Examine how the media portrays messages related to food and how they impact decision making.

### ENGAGE

A recent study by The University of Adelaide found that Australian children are exposed to twice as many unhealthy food advertisements as healthy food commercials.

Do you think junk food advertisements are more common than ads promoting healthy food? What are the consequences of viewing junk food advertisements?

**FIGURE 5.17** Young children can be exposed to many media messages about junk food.



### 5.6.1 The media's influence on food choices

Through both the electronic (television, radio, internet, social media) and print (newspapers, magazines, billboards) media, we are subjected constantly to advertising that aims to influence our choice of food. The Australian food industry spends more than \$1 million a day on advertising. Food companies produce food and advertising aimed at particular demographics, often children and adolescents, who can be easily influenced by strong media campaigns. Special promotions are often part of a media campaign to promote particular products, such as fast food promotions directed at children. Companies and products also often align themselves with special events or sports programs, such as by sponsoring professional sports teams.

**FIGURE 5.18** Promotions, discounts and huge billboards all draw attention to junk food choices.



More positively, there are many organisations that use the media to promote healthy eating campaigns directed towards young people. Jump Rope for Heart is a national campaign that encourages school-aged students to develop a positive attitude towards exercise, healthy eating and heart health. Vic Kids Eat Well is another initiative that uses the media to promote healthy messages. This organisation provides simple and achievable steps to make healthy food and drink options available in places like schools and community organisations.

## 5.6.2 Laws in relation to advertising unhealthy food

In Australia, the only law in place regarding food advertisements directed towards young people is the prohibition of advertisements that contain any misleading or incorrect information about the **nutritional value** of foods or beverages. There is no law that limits the volume of unhealthy food advertising directed towards children on TV, social media, radio, billboards and other forms of media. There is clear evidence that children's exposure to unhealthy food advertising influences their food choices. This can contribute to unhealthy eating, being overweight and **obesity**. Despite Australian children's high rates of being overweight and obese, there are few laws that protect young people from being constantly exposed to clever **marketing campaigns** that encourage and promote unhealthy eating. Therefore, it is essential that young people develop the necessary skills to evaluate the messages about food that they see in the media.

**nutritional value** the nutrient content of a food; varies from food to food

**obesity** a state of being substantially overweight

**marketing campaign** an organised course of action to promote or sell a product or service

**media literacy** the ability to access, analyse, evaluate and communicate information in a variety of forms

## 5.6.3 Media literacy skills in relation to food choices

**Media literacy** can be defined as the ability to access, analyse, evaluate and communicate information in a variety of forms, including print and non-print messages. It is important for young people to establish skills in media literacy in order to increase their knowledge about healthy food choices and decrease the impact of unhealthy food advertisements. Young people should be educated about the techniques used by companies to attract attention and make a product seem more desirable. These include:

- jingles and catchy music
- catchy slogans
- giveaways, offers, prizes and competitions
- cartoon characters
- famous people endorsing the product
- images of fun, happiness and excitement
- suggesting that the product makes you super or superior to others
- leaving out key health information (e.g. saying that a food is low in fat but leaving out that it is very high in sugar).

Being educated about these techniques helps young people to critically analyse the advertisements they see. Instead of being persuaded by the tricks used by the advertisers, they can instead identify the marketing tactics used and make informed decisions.

Having knowledge about healthy food choices is also important. Using the traffic light system outlined in table 5.2 can help with those decisions.

Media literacy, coupled with education about which foods are healthy, will enable you to make healthier decisions in relation to food choices.

**FIGURE 5.19** It's important for you to develop skills to assess the messages about food that you see in the media.



**TABLE 5.2** Nutritional traffic light system

Traffic light colour	Description	Examples
<p>Green</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Healthier choice foods or everyday foods</li> <li>• Good sources of important nutrients</li> <li>• Lower in saturated fat, added sugar and/or salt</li> <li>• Lower in energy (kilojoules)</li> <li>• Higher in fibre</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Grain (cereal) foods, mostly wholegrain and/or high cereal fibre varieties</li> <li>• Vegetables and legumes/beans</li> <li>• Fruit</li> <li>• Milk, yoghurt, cheese and/or their alternatives (mostly reduced-fat)</li> <li>• Lean meat and poultry, fish, eggs, tofu, nuts and seeds and legumes/beans</li> <li>• Water</li> </ul>
<p>Amber</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OK choice</li> <li>• 'Select carefully' foods to be eaten only occasionally because they are mainly processed foods with added fats, sugar and salt</li> <li>• Contribute to excess energy (kilojoule) intake</li> <li>• Contain moderate amounts of saturated fat, added sugar and/or salt</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Some grain (cereal) foods, such as savoury breads, scrolls, focaccias, twists and cereals that don't fit into the green category</li> <li>• Fruit and vegetables that are canned or stewed with added sugar (e.g. in syrup or jelly), dried fruit in serving sizes up to 30g or marinated vegetables</li> <li>• Regular fat milk, yoghurt, cheese and/or their alternatives</li> <li>• Meat and poultry that have visible skin or fat, are processed with reduced salt, such as roast beef, chicken or turkey</li> </ul>
<p>Red</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Less healthy foods</li> <li>• Not to be actively promoted and to be eaten very rarely because they are not consistent with the Dietary Guidelines for Australians</li> <li>• High in energy (kilojoules)</li> <li>• High in saturated fat, added sugar and/or salt</li> <li>• Lacking in important nutrients such as fibre</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confectionery (e.g. chocolate)</li> <li>• Saturated and trans fats, and oils (e.g. butter)</li> <li>• Fried foods (e.g. hot chips)</li> <li>• Frozen ice confections (e.g. slushies)</li> <li>• Sugar-sweetened drinks (e.g. soft drinks)</li> </ul>

### 5.6.4 Reading food labels

Knowing how to read the nutrition panel of products is a key health literacy skill. The food label appears at the back of the package and is called a nutrition information panel (see figure 5.20). It includes information about the levels of energy (kilojoules), carbohydrate, fat, protein, sugar, sodium (salt) and other nutrients in the product. There are usually two columns. One shows the amount per serve (e.g. 30 grams) and the other shows the amount per 100 grams. Knowing the amount per 100 grams allows for easy comparison between products, as serving sizes can vary by brand. For example, the serving size for one brand may be 30g, while for another it is 40g. More information about healthy nutrition can be found in topic 6.

**FIGURE 5.20** Knowing how to read the nutrition panel of products is a key health literacy skill.

Typical values	100ml contains	250ml contains	%GDA*	typical adult
Energy	199kJ 47kcal	500kJ 120kcal	6%	2000kcal
Protein	0.5g	1.3g		
Carbohydrate	10.5g	26.3g	29%	90g
of which sugars	10.5g	26.3g		70g
Fat	trace	trace		
of which saturates	trace	trace		
Fibre	trace	trace		
Sodium	trace	trace		
Salt equivalent	trace	trace		

\* Guideline daily amounts

**Vitamins/Minerals**

100ml contains 62.5mg (104% RDA)

## DISCUSS

When have you been persuaded to eat something after seeing a food advertisement? What marketing tactics were used that made you want to eat the food?

## Resources

 **Interactivity** Reading nutrition panels (int-6237)

## 5.6 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Healthy snacks

Survey the class on what snacks they have had in the past 24 hours.

You may wish to present your findings in a graph.

- Using your knowledge about nutrition, evaluate the nutritional value of the most popular choices. Do they fit in the green, amber or red category of the nutritional traffic light system?
- Discuss why these snacks were chosen by the people who consumed them.
- Suggest at least five nutritious snack alternatives.
- Create a poster or presentation to encourage your classmates to make healthier choices when choosing their snacks.
- Produce a self-help guide for students to make healthy food choices.

### 2 Food advertisements

- Survey the television advertisements on a weeknight over a 1-hour period. List all the advertisements that relate to food and drink.
- For each advertisement, identify:
  - the product being advertised
  - the target market

- the main selling point (e.g. good for your health)
  - the tactics used to persuade the target audience to eat the food.
- Categorise the type of food or drink advertised as either red foods, amber foods or green foods.
  - Present your results as a graph.
  - What types of food or drink were advertised the most? What types were advertised the least? Give possible reasons for this.

### 3 Voice your concerns

You have been asked to speak at an upcoming conference that is investigating the messages portrayed by the media in relation to food and how these impact the decisions made by young people. Prepare a speech that highlights:

- the various messages that are portrayed by the media regarding food
- the impact that these messages have on the choices that young people make when it comes to food
- the long-term effects that these decisions can have on health and wellbeing
- strategies that can help address the problem.

## 5.6 Exercise

### 5.6 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

2, 3, 5, 6

■ LEVEL 2

1, 4, 9

■ LEVEL 3

7, 8

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- Australian children are exposed to 10 per cent more unhealthy food advertisements compared to healthy food commercials. True or false?
- MC** Which of these foods is considered a 'green' food?
  - Hot chips
  - Processed meats
  - Full cream cheese
  - Wholemeal bread
- MC** Which of the following is NOT a marketing tactic used by the media to promote food?
  - Important information about the lack of nutritional value of the food
  - Catchy music and jingles
  - Famous people promoting the food
  - Images of fun, happiness and enjoyment
- Health literacy and media literacy are similar. True or false?
- MC** Which of the following points is true regarding laws associated with food advertising directed towards young people?
  - There are many laws protecting young people in relation to food advertisements.
  - There are very few laws that protect young people from unhealthy food advertisements.
  - There don't need to be any laws regarding food advertisements.
  - There used to be laws regarding food advertising but they have been removed.

### Apply your understanding

- Outline** the three factors that affect adolescent food choices.
- Explain** why it is so important for young people to develop skills in media literacy in relation to food choices.
- Analyse** some of the consequences of regular poor nutritional choices.
- Identify** three instances when you have purchased a food or drink item because of the influence of media advertising. In each case, name the food or drink and **describe** the advertisement that influenced you.

# LESSON

## 5.7 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 5.7.1 What have I learned?

- Many factors influence the health of young people, including family, peers and the media.
- Health campaigns targeting First Nations Australian young people play an important role in promoting and enhancing their health.
- The more information you have, the more informed your decisions can be.
- Young people can make better decisions about their health when they are provided with accurate information.
- Being able to access, evaluate and act correctly on health information is extremely important for consumer health. This is known as health literacy.
- Often, the most important role your family and friends can play is to help you understand the problem, seek out sources of help and evaluate the information.
- Your health teachers and counsellors have a good understanding of adolescent problems. They can provide you with reliable information and knowledge, including about available products and services.
- The internet is the largest source of health information but it also contains some unreliable and even harmful advice. You must carefully evaluate information found on the internet.
- Your family doctor is probably the most reliable source of health information and advice available to you.
- Having the skills to make informed health decisions is essential for a healthy life.
- The media portrays nutrition and sexual relationships in a range of ways, not all of which are accurate.
- Young people need media literacy skills so they can make positive food choices and not be persuaded by unhealthy food advertisements.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- What are the major influences on my health decisions?
- How do I know who to believe and how do I access accurate and reliable health information?

Evaluate your initial response to the essential questions now that you have studied the topic.



#### Resources



**Interactivity** Crossword (int-8917)

## 5.7.2 Key terms

**blogger** a person who regularly writes material for a blog

**Dreaming** in First Nations spirituality, the (non-linear) time when the Earth took on its present form and cycles of life and nature began; explains creation and the nature of the world, the place that every person has in that world and the importance of ritual and tradition; Dreaming stories pass on important knowledge, laws and beliefs; also known as Dreamtime

**First Nations Australians** the traditional custodians of the land; at the time of European colonisation, they had already been inhabiting Australia for at least 65 000 years

**general advice** information that is meant as a general guideline or suggestion. It is not specific to an individual's unique needs or circumstances.

**health consumers** people who buy health products or use health services

**health information** knowledge about a health product or service you may need, want, buy or receive

**health literacy** understanding information about health and health care, and how to apply that information to our lives and use it to make health decisions

**health organisation** a group that assists in matters relating to health by providing services, products and information

**health product** a produced or manufactured item that is designed to improve a person's health, such as toothpaste, sunscreen or vitamins

**health service** something that helps people maintain or improve their health, such as ambulance services, internet advice or healthcare hotlines

**heterosexual** emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the opposite sex

**influencer** a person with the ability to influence potential buyers of a product or service by promoting or recommending the item, usually on social media

**marketing campaign** an organised course of action to promote or sell a product or service

**media** a broad term that can include many areas such as social media, television, print media and radio

**media literacy** the ability to access, analyse, evaluate and communicate information in a variety of forms

**nutritional value** the nutrient content of a food; varies from food to food

**obesity** a state of being substantially overweight

**reliable source** a source of information that provides a thorough, well-reasoned theory, argument or discussion based on strong evidence

**sexualised** to make something sexual or attributed to sex

## 5.7 Exercise

### 5.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

##### ■ LEVEL 2

11, 13, 14, 18

##### ■ LEVEL 3

12, 15, 16, 17, 19,  
20

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. Informed decisions are ones that are made for you.	
2. Creating a pros and cons list can help you make an informed decision.	
3. As an individual, you have no control over your health.	
4. A person with health concerns should seek information or assistance from others.	
5. A useful health professional to speak to about nutrition is a physiotherapist.	
6. Social media is a valid and reliable source of health information.	
7. Credibility refers to whether the information provided is true and can be trusted.	
8. All food advertisements are credible and reliable sources of information.	
9. Health information is equally accessible to all people.	
10. Health campaigns targeted at First Nations Australians positively contribute to Australian society.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Outline** why the media has such a significant influence on the health of young people.
12. **Explain** how your family and peers can influence your health.
13. **Describe** some of the unrealistic messages about sexual relationships that are portrayed in the media.
14. **Outline** one First Nations Australian health campaign that you have learned about. **Identify** some of the major health messages it promotes.
15. **Identify** and **describe** the skills young people need to make positive decisions about their health.
16. **Outline** one excellent source of health information at your school.
17. **Identify** the most reliable source of health information and advice available to you.
18. **List** four reliable websites that provide health information.
19. **Discuss** the importance of having health literacy skills.
20. **Identify** and **explain** the major influences on your food choices.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign  
unique tests and exams



Access quarantined  
tests and assessments



Track your  
students' results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

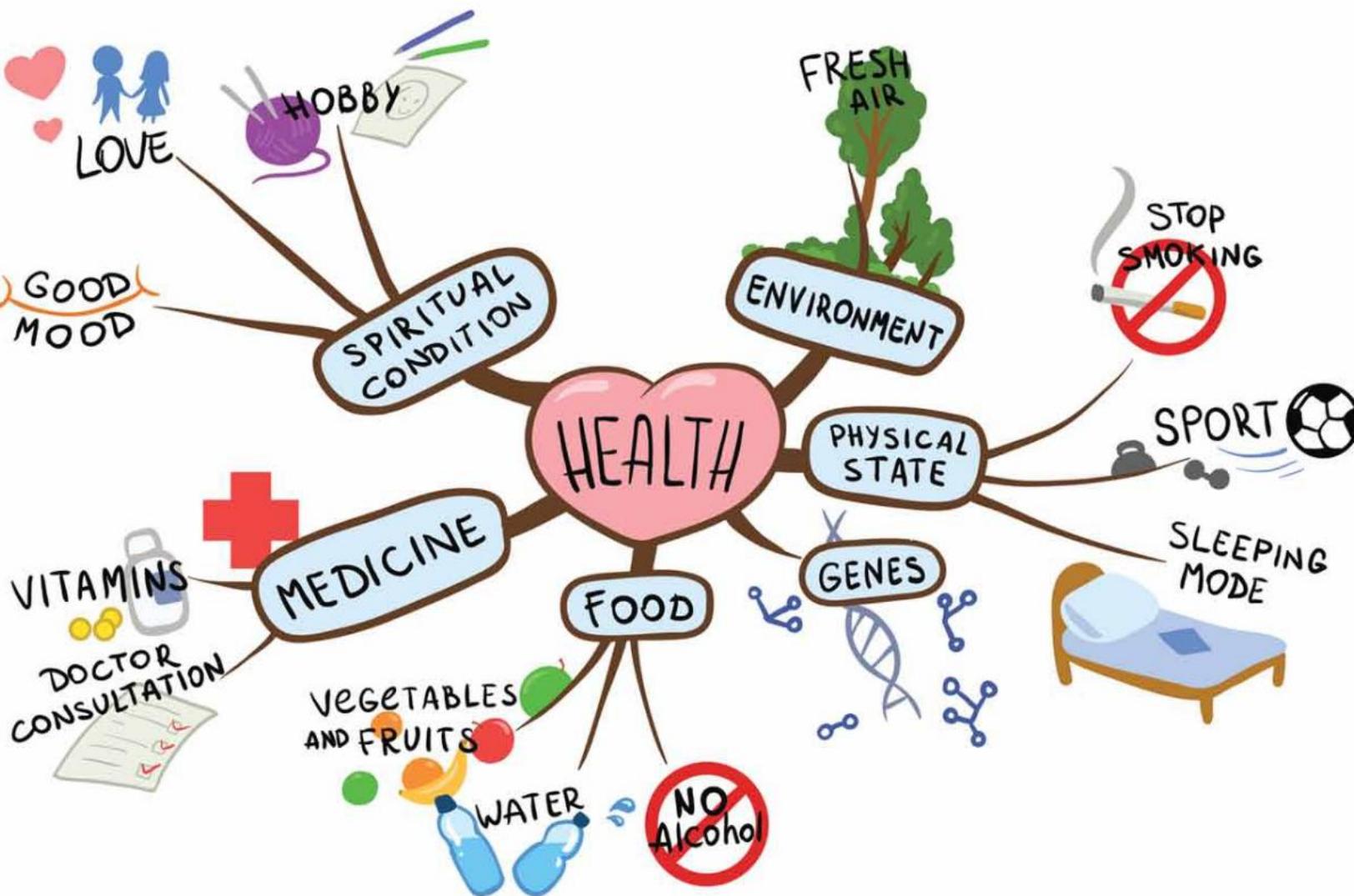


# 6 Promoting health, safety and wellbeing

## LESSON SEQUENCE

6.1 Overview .....	219
6.2 Healthy decisions — physical activity .....	220
6.3 Healthy decisions — nutrition .....	225
6.4 Healthy behaviours — mind-body-spirit connection .....	236
6.5 Preventing harm and promoting health — road, sun and water safety .....	242
6.6 Review .....	249

FIGURE 6.1 The components of good health



# LESSON

## 6.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch  
videos



Engage with  
interactivities



Answer questions  
and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 6.1.1 Introduction

Being healthy comes from making healthy choices. These choices might be about nutrition, physical activity or how to stay safe. Our choices, especially during adolescence, are influenced by many factors. The more we understand about these influences and the positive and possible negative outcomes of our decisions, the easier it will be to make healthy choices throughout our lives.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- What resources do I have access to that can help me to be the healthiest I can be?
- How can I look after myself to lead a healthy life?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. What healthy choices do you make every day?
2. Are they conscious decisions or subconscious decisions?
3. What could you do to make more healthy choices?

#### Resources

-  **Video eLesson** Promoting health, safety and wellbeing (eles-6023)

# LESSON

## 6.2 Healthy decisions — physical activity

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Identify actions and behaviours that promote safe participation in physical activities to improve your own and others' wellbeing.

### ENGAGE

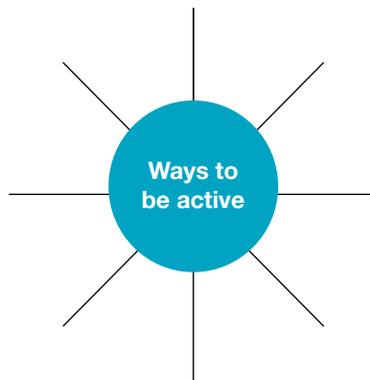
In how many ways can you be active?

Brainstorm using the map below. Work in pairs or small groups and share your results as a class. You can also use the **In how many ways are you active?** worksheet in the Online Resources.



doc-39393

**FIGURE 6.2** In how many ways can you be active?



### 6.2.1 Choosing to be active

There are many opportunities every day to be more active. Being active does not have to mean going for a 6-kilometre run or playing an organised sport. It could be choosing to walk to school instead of getting a lift, or even walking over to the other side of the school to see a friend instead of texting them.

### 6.2.2 Physical activity guidelines

The current physical activity recommendations for youth are as follows:

- For health benefits, young people aged 13–17 years should participate in at least 60 minutes of moderate to **vigorous intensity** physical activity every day.
- Physical activity should include a variety of **aerobic activities**, including some vigorous intensity activity.
- On at least three days per week, young people should engage in activities that strengthen muscle and bone.
- To achieve additional health benefits, young people should engage in more activity — up to several hours per day.

**vigorous intensity** exercise that causes you to 'huff and puff' as your heart rate and respiratory rate increase significantly

**aerobic activities** activities that generally involve a large number of muscles/muscle groups working at a moderate intensity

## 6.2.3 Sedentary behaviour guidelines

To reduce health risks, young people aged 13–17 years should minimise the time they spend being **sedentary** every day. To achieve this:

- limit use of electronic media for entertainment (e.g. television, seated electronic games and computer use) to no more than two hours a day — lower levels are associated with reduced health risks
- break up long periods of sitting as often as possible.

**sedentary** any behaviour that results in low energy expenditure

Table 6.1 shows some activities that are generally associated with the different intensities of exercise.

**TABLE 6.1** Activities associated with different intensities

Sedentary behaviour	Low intensity	Moderate intensity	Vigorous intensity
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sitting watching TV</li> <li>• Sitting in class or at a desk</li> <li>• Reading a book</li> <li>• Sitting in a car</li> <li>• Sitting texting or playing video games</li> <li>• Sleeping</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Walking</li> <li>• Wading/treading water in a pool</li> <li>• Housework and domestic chores</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Brisk walking</li> <li>• Dancing</li> <li>• Gardening</li> <li>• Downball/handball</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Running</li> <li>• Cycling</li> <li>• Aerobics</li> <li>• Fast swimming</li> <li>• Boxing</li> <li>• Competitive sports</li> <li>• Skipping</li> </ul>

### HEALTH FACT

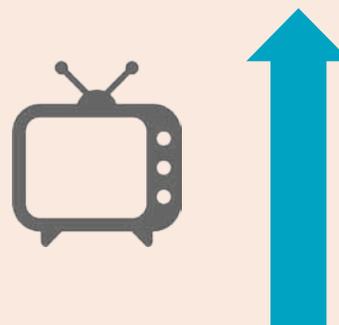
- Less than 23 per cent of 5–14-year-olds did the recommended 60 minutes of physical activity every day.
- In 2018, 67 per cent of children aged 0–14 years participated in organised physical activities outside of school hours at least once a fortnight.

Statistics show that not enough children are meeting the recommended 60 minutes of physical activity per day



- Children 5–14 spent more than 2 hours every day sitting or lying down for screen-based activities.
- Children aged 2–4 spend over 83 minutes a day in front of a screen.

Statistics show that most children have too much sedentary behaviour.



**Source:** <https://www.aihw.gov.au/reports/children-youth/australias-children/contents/health/physical-activity>

## 6.2.4 Opportunities to be active

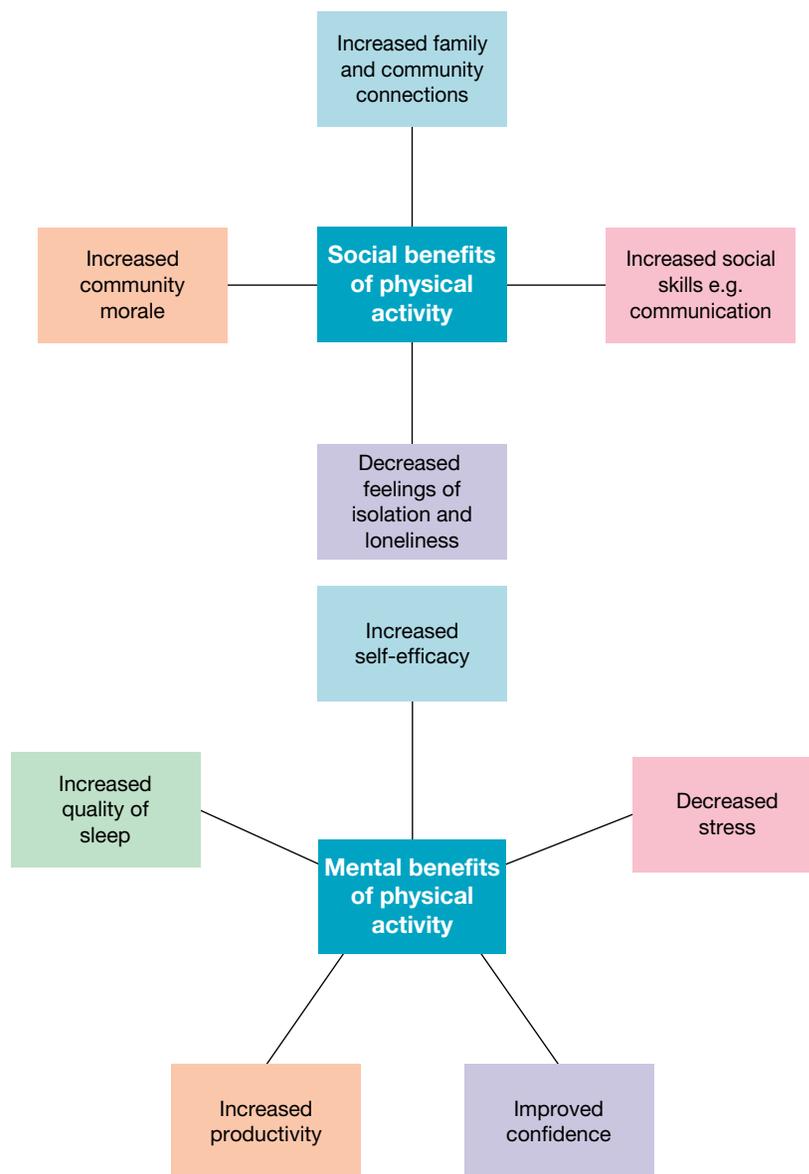
 There are many different ways to be active. The more ways you are active, the more likely you are to maintain good physical activity habits for life.

 Complete the worksheets **Analysing physical activity levels** and **Community physical activity audit** in the Online Resources to find out what resources are available to you.

## 6.2.5 Benefits of fitness

Being active provides many benefits for your physical health and wellbeing, such as improved functioning of the heart, lungs and muscles. Additionally, physical activity is beneficial for your social and mental health and wellbeing, as shown in figure 6.3.

**FIGURE 6.3** Other than being fit, what other benefits can you get from physical activity?



## DID YOU KNOW?

Doctors often prescribe patients with an 'active script'. They recommend that patients do physical activity to treat illnesses rather than take medicine. Illnesses that can improve with increased activity include **cardiovascular disease**, asthma, diabetes and depression.

An individual who chooses to become more active may find that they can complete their daily tasks with less effort and feel less tired. As a result of participating in group activities, they may increase their social circle and make new friends. This can improve their confidence and self-esteem.

**cardiovascular disease** any disease that affects the heart or blood vessels, including stroke and high blood pressure



weblink

Use the **Health and mental health benefits of running** weblink and complete the **Case studies** worksheet in the Online Resources to explore the benefits of physical activity for your health.



doc-14658

Being active will also help improve your mood. Exercise releases endorphins, which are a chemical that improves mood and creates a general feeling of positive wellbeing. While this is not a cure for mental illness, it is a step in the right direction to improve your mental health and wellbeing.

## 6.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Intensities of physical activity

- Participate in the following activities. Using your understanding of intensities of physical activity, categorise and justify each activity as low, moderate or vigorous intensity.
- Reflect on your mood immediately after each activity and then 15–20 minutes after it. Then consider, did it improve your mindset for the rest of the day? Share your ideas with the class.

Activity	Intensity
Group skipping (big rope)	
Downball/four square	
Competitive relays	
Dancing	
Tiggy/chasey	
Keepings off	

### 2 Benefits of physical activities

Write a diary entry about how you are feeling today physically, socially and emotionally.

- Complete an individual activity such as a 12-minute run or 8-minute swim, aiming to complete as many laps of the oval or the pool as you can.  
When you finish, reflect on how you feel physically, socially and mentally.
- Form two teams. Play a game of (or something similar to):
  - keepings off
  - tunnel ball
  - netball
  - basketball
  - touch football.When you finish, reflect on how you feel physically, socially and mentally.
- Discuss whether your physical, social and/or mental feelings were different after finishing the physical activities.

### 3 Design a physical activity program

- Part 1: Design a survey to conduct on a year group of your choosing. This survey is designed to find out who participates in physical activity and why, and who does not participate in physical activity and why. Try to come up with at least 10 questions that will assist you in part 2 of this activity.
- Part 2: From the findings of your survey, design a program for your school to implement. This program must focus on increasing physical activity at school, to improve students' mental, social and physical health and wellbeing. The program must run frequently, with opportunities to engage people of all skill levels. For example, at lunch time, you could run a sport such as netball or touch but also offer a walking, gardening or handball group for those who don't enjoy vigorous sports. Choose when you want the program to run and how frequently. Do you need teachers to help? Is it going to involve a lot of equipment?
- Part 3: Present your finished program to the class.

## 6.2 Exercise

### 6.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**LEVEL 2**

6, 8

**LEVEL 3**

7, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** How much physical activity should young people participate in each day?  
A. 20  
B. 120  
C. 60  
D. 45
- MC** Screen time should be limited to no more than \_\_\_\_ hour(s) per day.  
A. 5  
B. 1  
C. 8  
D. 2
- MC** Bone-strengthening activities should be participated in how many times a week?  
A. 7  
B. 3  
C. 2  
D. 9
- Physical activity is great for mental health conditions. True or false?
- Strength training should only be for boys. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

- List two physical and social benefits of being fit.
- Propose why being fit as a child is so important.
- Explain why there are recommendations regarding sedentary behaviour.
- Identify three benefits of physical activity you enjoy, or would like to experience. Explain why.
- Describe one way physical activity can improve your mental health and wellbeing.

# LESSON

## 6.3 Healthy decisions — nutrition

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe the fuel a body needs to support a healthy lifestyle.

### ENGAGE

Make a mind map of 'healthy food'.

### 6.3.1 Which foods are healthy?

Determining which foods are healthy can be a challenge. Sometimes, what you think is nutritious may actually be high in sugars, preservatives, sodium (salt) or fat. The healthy option is not always the easy option either. It is important to be informed to make healthy decisions about your nutrition. Food is the fuel for your body. All the food and drink (except water) you consume contains **kilojoules**, which are either converted into energy to fuel your body or stored as fats. Some foods are very nutritious and contain a lot of **nutrients** — this is called being nutrient dense. Other foods, such as soft drink and cakes, are high in kilojoules but have very few nutrients. Eating nutrient-dense food gives your body all the nutrients it needs to function efficiently. Table 6.2 outlines the essential nutrients found in foods.

**kilojoules** energy value of food  
**nutrients** chemical substances in food that nourish the body in specific ways, for example carbohydrates provide energy

**FIGURE 6.4** Eating nutritious foods will provide you with the nutrients you need for your body to grow and function at its best. Which meal would be the healthier choice?



**TABLE 6.2** Essential nutrients found in foods

Nutrient	Functions	Examples of food sources
<p><b>Carbohydrates</b> come in two types: high GI and low GI. Low GI carbohydrates should make up the majority of your nutrient intake because they release energy slowly over a longer period of time.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide fuel for the body in the form of energy</li> <li>• Provide fibre</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High GI carbohydrates: sugar, chocolate, honey, cakes</li> <li>• Low GI carbohydrates: wholegrain bread, pasta, rice, vegetables and noodles</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> High GI carbohydrates should be eaten only occasionally.</p>

(continued)

(continued)

Nutrient	Functions	Examples of food sources
<b>Protein</b> makes up the main part of body tissue (e.g. muscle, skin and hair).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Used in the growth, repair and maintenance of body tissue</li><li>• Used in the body's cells</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Milk, eggs, red meat, poultry and fish</li></ul>
<b>Fat</b> comprises three types: unsaturated (healthy fats), saturated and trans fats (unhealthy fats).	Unsaturated fats <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Provide energy</li><li>• Insulate vital organs and nerves</li><li>• Transport fat-soluble vitamins</li><li>• Used in the body's cells</li></ul> Saturated and trans fats <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Build up bad cholesterol, which can increase the risk of heart disease</li><li>• Can cause weight gain</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Unsaturated fats: canola oil, olive oil and the oils found in most nuts</li><li>• Saturated fats: animal fats such as butter</li><li>• Trans fats: found in margarine spreads, fats used in deep frying and in pastry doughs</li></ul>
<b>Vitamins</b> — there are about 20 different vitamins. Common vitamins are A, B, C and D.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Help to release energy from our food stores</li><li>• Regulate body processes</li><li>• Aid in tissue building</li><li>• Aid in the production of red blood cells</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fruit and vegetables</li><li>• A balanced diet with foods from each food group will ensure you obtain all the necessary vitamins</li></ul>
<b>Minerals</b> , for example, calcium and iron	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Calcium is required in many body functions, including the growth of bones and teeth</li><li>• Iron helps carry oxygen to cells</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Meat, fruit, vegetables and dairy products</li><li>• A balanced diet with foods from each food group will ensure you obtain all the necessary minerals</li></ul>
<b>Water</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Helps all cell functions</li><li>• Regulates temperature</li><li>• Transports wastes</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Water, fruit and vegetables, juice drinks</li></ul>

### 6.3.2 What are 'healthy food habits'?

Young people eat a range of foods for a range of reasons. Think about the foods you consume in an average week and why you choose those foods. Do you always make the healthy and nutritious choice?

Healthy food habits include:

- eating a variety of nutritious foods that meet the dietary guidelines for children and adolescents
- drinking plenty of water
- eating regular meals in smaller amounts rather than bingeing once or twice during the day
- eating a nutritious breakfast to provide fuel for the day ahead
- avoiding eating large meals or junk food just before you go to bed
- avoiding eating foods that are high in saturated fat, sugar and salt.

### 6.3.3 Good food choices and health

The *Australian Guide to Healthy Eating* states that we should enjoy a wide variety of nutritious foods every day. The guide outlines the five food groups that provide the nutrients we need to grow and function on a daily basis. The amount of these foods we should eat each day depends on our body size and activity level. If you are very active and burn up lots of energy, you will need to eat more serves of these foods to sustain your energy levels.

 Table 6.3 outlines the number of serves for children and adolescents for each food group. For more information, use the **Australian Guide to Healthy Eating** weblink in the Online Resources.

Few foods contain all the daily nutrients your body needs, so it is important to eat a variety of healthy foods. If you eat only three or four types of food, your body will not get all of the nutrients it needs. It is also vital to drink plenty of water to remain hydrated throughout the day.

**FIGURE 6.5** Water is important to our overall health.



**TABLE 6.3** Recommended average daily number of serves from each of the five food groups\*

	Vegetables and legumes/beans	Fruit	Grain (cereal) foods, mostly whole grain	Lean meat and poultry, fish, eggs, nuts and seeds and legumes/beans	Milk, yoghurt, cheese and/or alternatives (mostly reduced fat)	Approx. number of additional serves from the five food groups (for more active, taller or older children and adolescents) or discretionary choices
<b>Toddlers**</b>						
1–2	2–3	½	4	1	½	
<b>Boys</b>						
2–3	2 ½	1	4	1	1 ½	0–1
4–8	4 ½	1 ½	4	1 ½	2	0–½
9–11	5	2	5	2 ½	2 ½	0–3
12–13	5 ½	2	6	2 ½	3 ½	0–3
14–18	5 ½	2	7	2 ½	3 ½	0–5
<b>Girls</b>						
2–3	2 ½	1	4	1	1 ½	0–1
4–8	4 ½	1 ½	4	1 ½	1 ½	0–1
9–11	5	2	4	2 ½	3	0–3
12–13	5	2	5	2 ½	3 ½	0–2 ½
14–18	5	2	7	2 ½	3 ½	0–2 ½
Pregnant	5	2	8	3 ½	3 ½	0–3
Breastfeeding	5 ½	2	9	2 ½	4	0–3

\* Includes an allowance for unsaturated spreads or oils, nuts or seeds (½ serve [4.5 g] per day for children aged 2–3, 1 serve [7–10 g] per day for children aged 3–12; 1½ serves [11–15 g] per day for children aged 12–13, and 2 serves [14–20 g] per day for adolescents aged 14–18 and for people who are pregnant or breastfeeding).

\*\* An allowance for unsaturated spreads or oils or nut/seed paste of 1 serve (7–10 g) per day is included. Whole nuts and seeds are not recommended for children of this age because of the potential choking risk.

## Enjoy a wide variety of nutritious foods

Children and adolescents should be encouraged to:

- eat plenty of vegetables, **legumes** and fruits
- eat plenty of cereals (including breads, rice, pasta and noodles), preferably wholegrain
- include lean meat, fish, poultry and/or alternatives
- include milks, yoghurts, cheeses and/or alternatives, especially reduced-fat varieties
- choose water as a drink.

Care should be taken to:

- limit saturated fat and moderate total fat intake.
- choose foods that are low in salt
- consume only moderate amounts of sugars and foods containing added sugars. For more information, follow the **Eat for Health** weblink in the Online Resources.



**FIGURE 6.6** Enjoy a wide variety of nutritious foods.



**legumes** vegetables such as beans, peas and lentils

## Food labels

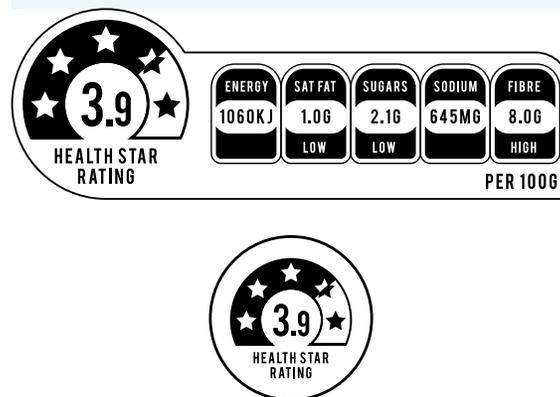
Food labels are a good source of nutritional information that can be used to make healthy food choices. The law requires these labels to provide consumers with a certain amount of information about the nutritional content of the food. Ingredients must be listed in descending order of quantity — the ingredient listed first is the one that is present in the largest amount.

A recent improvement in labelling now requires labels to show, as a percentage, the amount of the ingredient that characterises or is used to name the food (e.g. the percentage of apricots in apricot jam). Knowing this percentage allows you to compare products (e.g. brands of apricot jam).

**FIGURE 6.7** Nutritional information panels on food packaging provide information that can help consumers make healthier food choices.



**FIGURE 6.8** Health Star Rating system



One food label used is the Health Star Rating system. The Health Star Rating is a labelling system that rates the nutrition of packaged food. It gives food a rating from half a star to 5 stars. This rating shown on the front of the pack. This gives a quick, easy way to compare similar packaged foods. The more stars, the healthier the choice.

In addition, information about the levels of energy (kilojoules), carbohydrates, fats, protein, sugar, sodium (salt) and other nutrients must be included on the nutrition information panel. There are usually two columns: one showing the amount per serve (e.g. 30 grams) and the other showing the amount per 100 grams. The nutrition information panel is usually located on the side or back of the product. It allows you to make further comparisons between products.

Although food labels provide useful information about the nutritional quality of a particular food, they also have some limitations. Do you find the labels confusing, complicated or time consuming to interpret? Many people do. Others can be misled by the marketing claims on the front of the package or by advertisements for the product, which create the impression that a food is healthy. Manufacturers often use words such as 'lite' or 'light' when referring to the colour, flavour or salt content of a food, but this is sometimes misunderstood to mean the food is low in fat or kilojoules. See the **Important nutrients** weblink in the Online Resources for more information



**FIGURE 6.9** Reading the nutritional label can help you identify how healthy a food is.



## on Resources

- **Interactivities** Keeping the balance (int-5453)  
The nutrition of food (int-6321)  
Reading nutrition panels (int-6237)

## Sustainability and food

The foods we choose to eat have an impact on the environment. A sustainable diet has low environmental impact. It contributes to food and nutrition security and helps ensure a healthy life for current and future generations. A diet is sustainable if it is:

- accessible
- affordable
- nutritionally sound
- environmentally safe
- culturally acceptable.

In other words, it fulfills the needs of human society while protecting the long-term survival of our environment. If we do not take sustainability into account, our food supply will not be secure.

The global population is rapidly expanding, and it is important that future generations have enough food available to eat, as well as access to high-quality nutritious foods. See figure 6.10 below for some tips on how to eat sustainably.

Choosing organic food from your local farmers market can help you avoid the unnecessary chemicals often used in farming fruit and vegetables. If your food is sourced from local farmers markets it will also reduce food miles. Food miles are a contributing factor to carbon emissions. If you can buy food that is locally grown, it means less travel time and less refrigeration, which results in fresher and better-for-you produce. Further, you would be supporting local farmers.

**FIGURE 6.10** Practical tips to eating sustainably



### 6.3.4 Diet and First Nations Australians

Recent genetic evidence suggests that First Nations Australians inhabited Australia as early as 65 000 years ago. This means First Nations Australians have the world's oldest continuous cultures.

Before European colonisation in 1788, food supplies were sourced and maintained through First Nations Australians' deep knowledge of and close association with the land. Both the season and geographic location influenced their food sources. Grains and nuts, fruits and vegetables were collected and cultivated. Game and fish were hunted and systematically trapped, and honey was used as a sweetener, gathered from the hives of native bees as well as honey ants. The land was managed with a variety of techniques to maintain the food supply, which provided a complete, balanced diet.

**FIGURE 6.11** Yolngu dancers at Garma Festival, East Arnhem, Northern Territory.

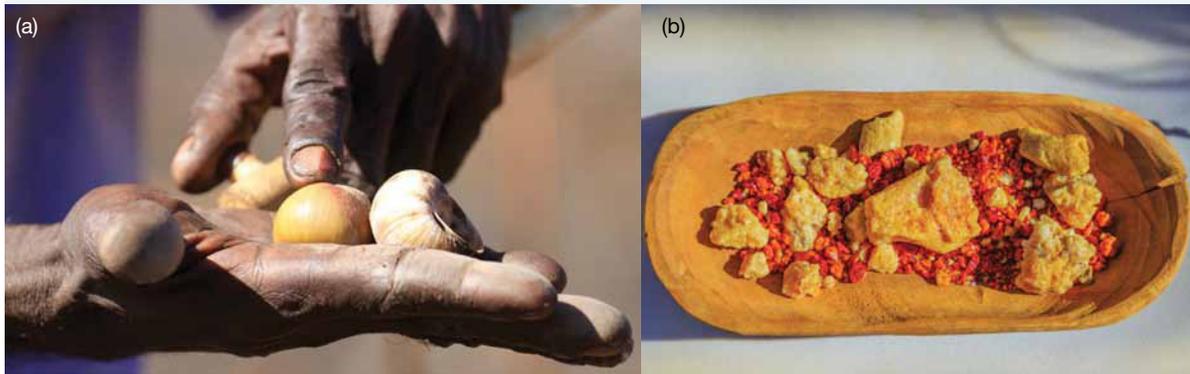




Find out more using the **Food by Country** weblink in the Online Resources.

Through their detailed knowledge of Country, First Nations Australians could determine the best sources of fresh water and understood the seasonal availability of food. This diet was healthy but it was severely disrupted by the negative impacts of colonisation. Their dispossession and displacement from Country stopped First Nations Peoples from being able to manage and access important food sources. This meant First Nations Australians couldn't access their usual fresh and nutritious foods. This has led to negative impacts on health and has contributed to an increase in diet-related health problems among First Nations Australians today.

**FIGURE 6.12** Bush tucker: a) snails and b) fruit and berries



**FIGURE 6.13** Examples of the foods and water resources used by First Nations Australians

**Cereal foods:** Grass seeds from the clover fern were ground to form flour for bush damper. Many other seed types were similarly treated.

**Fruit and vegetables:** Fruits, berries, orchids and pods were available, depending on the region and season (e.g. sow thistle, lilly pilly, pigface fruit, kangaroo apple, wild raspberry, quandong and native cherry). Other fruits and vegetables consumed included wild figs, plums, grapes and gooseberries; plant roots such as bull rushes, yams and bulbs; the heart of the tree fern and the pith of the grass tree; the blister gum from wattles; native truffles; and mushrooms.

**Eggs:** Emu, duck, pelican and many other birds' eggs were eaten.

**Meat:** Meats included insects (e.g. the larval stage of the cossid moth or witchetty grub, the Bogong moth, honey ants, scale insects and native bees and their honey), animals (e.g. kangaroos, emus, eels, crocodiles, sea turtles, snakes, goannas and other lizards) and birds (e.g. ducks, gulls and pelicans).

**Fish and shellfish:** Freshwater fish, such as perch, yabbies and mussels in creeks and rock holes, and all varieties of saltwater fish were caught.

**Medicines:** Over 120 native plants were used as sedatives, ointments, diarrhoea remedies, and cough and cold palliatives, as well as for many other known treatments.

**Water:** Water was obtained from rivers, lakes, rock holes, soaks, beds of intermittent creeks and dew deposited on surfaces. Plant roots and leaves also provided water.

## Bush medicine

For First Nations Australians, there were no chemists to administer the type of medicine we have today. However, plants were used in a variety of ways to help treat illness. Plants could be crushed, heated and applied to the skin. Some are boiled and inhaled or drunk. Some of the plants used have been found to be both anti-bacterial and anti-inflammatory and are used in western medicine today. Table 6.4 presents some common bush medicines.

**FIGURE 6.14** First Nations Australian bush medicine



**TABLE 6.4** Ten bush medicines

Name	Image	Use
Tea tree oil		Used as an antiseptic. Can be crushed to use as a paste, brewed for tea or boiled to make an oil. Widely used today.
Eucalyptus		The leaves can be infused for body pains, fevers and chills. Today it is used in commercial brands of mouth wash, throat lozenges and cough suppressants.
Billy goat plum/Kakadu plum		This is the world's richest source of vitamin C. It grows in the Northern Territory and Western Australia.
Desert mushrooms		Used to help with teething and oral thrush in babies and to treat sores on lips.

Name	Image	Use
Emu bush		<p>Emu bush leaves can be used to wash sores and cuts. Recent tests have found the leaves have the same strength of antibacterial compounds as in some established antibiotics.</p>
Witchetty (witjuti) grub		<p>Witchetty (Witjuti) grubs are a good source of bush tucker. They can also be crushed into a paste, placed on burns and covered with a bandage to seal and soothe the skin.</p>
Snake vine		<p>Communities in Central Australia use snake vine to treat headaches and rheumatoid arthritis. Sores and wounds can be treated using the sap and leaves.</p>
Sandpaper fig and Stinking passion flower		<p>Using these two plants together helps to relieve itching, and sandpaper fig leaves are used to treat fungal infections.</p>

*(continued)*

(continued)

Name	Image	Use
Kangaroo apple		The fruit can be used as a dressing on swollen joints. It contains a steroid that helps produce cortisone.
Goat's foot		Used for pain relief from stingray and stonefish stings. The leaves are crushed and heated then applied directly to the skin.

## 6.3 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Let's eat well at school!

- Use the **Australian Guide to Healthy Eating** weblink in the Online Resources to find serving sizes of each food group for students aged 12–17.
- Collect a menu from your school canteen.
- Compare the healthy eating guide to the options in your school canteen.
- Identify any types of food that are missing or that are in too many items.
- Propose a new menu for your school canteen — next to each item, identify what food group it is from and the serving size it represents.
- If your canteen does not have any options from certain food groups, propose new menu items.
- Investigate if you have any local producers that you can support by stocking them at your canteen. For example, the **Little Big Dairy** is a farm in Dubbo. Schools that are in the central west of NSW can reduce their food miles and support local dairy farmers by sourcing their milk from this family-run business.
- Provide a sample meal for students that meets the food serving recommendations.

### 2 Analysing snack and lunch options

- Complete the **Analysing snack and lunch options** worksheet in the Online Resources.
- In groups, research one snack option for morning tea, and one lunch option. Then using the food label and ingredients, evaluate its nutritional value. Key points to look for are: amount of sugar per 100 g, fat per 100 g, sodium per 100 g. What are the first five ingredients? What is the packaging like? Is it environmentally friendly? Do you think it is a good option for a snack or lunch? Why or why not?
- Make a weekly menu plan that you would enjoy consuming and that is nutritionally and environmentally sound. You may want to use the **Australian Guide to Healthy Eating** weblink in the Online Resources to find serving sizes of each food group for students aged 12–17.



weblink



weblink



doc-14655



weblink

### 3 Bush tucker

- a. Identify native Australian plants you could plant in your school garden to make your own bush tucker/bush medicine garden. The first step is to research which bush tucker plants are local to where you live.
- b. Bush damper is a traditional bread that has been made by First Nations Australians for thousands of years. The bread is high in protein and carbohydrates and can form part of a balanced diet. Access the recipe in the **Bush damper** worksheet in the Online Resources. Try making your own bush damper. Traditionally it was made by grinding seeds, but you can use flour.

## 6.3 Exercise

### 6.3 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

#### LEVEL 2

6, 7

#### LEVEL 3

8, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** Carbohydrates are important for:  
A. fibre and fuel.  
B. energy and speed.  
C. sandwiches.  
D. function and form.
2. **MC** Milk, eggs and red meat are all good sources of:  
A. dairy.  
B. protein.  
C. carbohydrates.  
D. sugar.
3. **MC** The recommended serving of fruit for 12–13-year-olds is:  
A. 5  
B. 1  
C. 2  
D. 8
4. **MC** Traditional foods eaten by First Nations Australians promoted physical health and wellbeing as well as what?  
A. Cultural health and wellbeing  
B. Spiritual health and wellbeing  
C. Emotional health and wellbeing  
D. All of the above
5. True or false? First Nations Australians used a variety of plants to treat sickness.

### Apply your understanding

6. Dietary guidelines for children and adolescents are different from those for adults. Research and **identify** the differences and discuss why they exist.
7. **Identify** why it is important to have a variety of fruits and vegetables in your diet.
8. **Describe** the advice you would give to someone who has a diet of fast food, which is high in fat and salt.
9. **Explain** why the traditional diet of First Nations Australians needed to change with the seasons.
10. **Evaluate** the impact of European colonisation on the diet of First Nations Australians.

# LESSON

## 6.4 Healthy behaviours — mind-body-spirit connection

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe how the different aspects of health are connected.

Western medicine relies on a range of services to treat the individual. For example, a doctor treats the body, a psychologist treats the emotions and mind, and a counsellor or priest provides spiritual guidance. Mind, body and spirit are considered separately. In contrast, many other cultures practice a more holistic approach that views health as a balance between the mind, body and spirit.

### ENGAGE

Look at the image from headspace below.

**FIGURE 6.15** Mental health is like a tree.



What does it tell you about mental health and its roots for First Nations Australians?

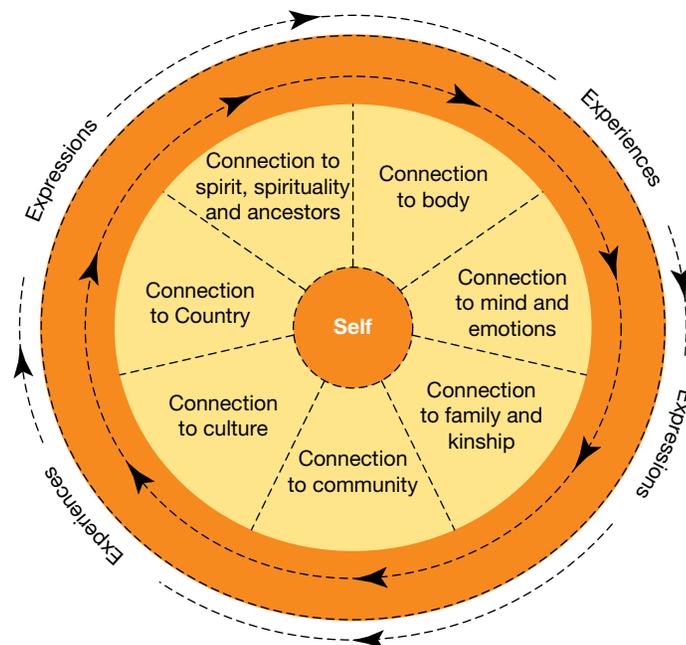
## 6.4.1 First Nations Australians

The image in figure 6.16 shows the following connections:

- connection to body
- connection to mind and emotions
- connection to family and kinship
- connection to community
- connection to culture
- connection to Country
- connection to spirit, spirituality and ancestors.

When these connections are strong, the individual has a strong sense of self, and feels healthy within themselves.

**FIGURE 6.16** First Nations Australians' model of health



### Ngangkari healers

Ngangkari are the traditional healers of the Ngaanyatjarra, Pitjantjatjara and Yankunytjatjara (NPY) lands in the remote western desert of Central Australia. Their knowledge has been passed down from generation to generation. Now they can be found, among other places, in South Australia's Royal Adelaide Hospital and rural clinics. The Ngangkari team in South Australia wanted to create a platform for Ngangkari healers in mainstream healthcare as providers of complementary medicine.

Their focus on pain relief and the mind-body-culture connection is popular with clients of varied backgrounds but has been particularly helpful in improving attendance at medical appointments by First Nations Australian patients. These registered Ngangkari healers help to provide culturally safe care for First Nations Peoples, which is vital to their holistic (whole) health. With the healers, First Nations patients feel they are listened to and seen.

The three main techniques the Ngangkari healers use are:

- a smoking ceremony
- bush medicine
- spirit realignment.

The healer discovers where the issues are and, through the chosen method of healing, takes away the pain.

Ngangkari healers see the spirit as a core component of the human body. They view realigning the human spirit as essential for healing. They believe that using these traditional medicines can improve First Nations Australians' health.

### Dadirri meditative practice

*Dadirri* comes from the Nauiyu people from the Daly River. Their language is *Ngan'gikurunggurr*. *Dadirri* means deep listening. It is a meditative practice that centres on the notion of stillness — of not rushing, but waiting. A big part of *dadirri* is listening. Through the years, First Nations Australians have listened to stories of their ancestors, told and sung over and over by their Elders. These practices continue, with the Elders of each community passing on the stories to the younger generations. These stories give them all the information they must know.

Miriam-Rose Ungunmerr-Baumann is an Nauiyu Elder. She believes if First Nations cultures are alive, strong and respected, they will grow. The cultures will not die and the spirit of First Nations Australians will not die. She calls for all Australians to practice *dadirri* and listen to First Nations Australians so that everyone can feel the mind-body-spirit connection and be whole.

## 6.4.2 The mind-body-spirit connection in cultures around the world

### Native Americans

For Native Americans, health and wellbeing are intrinsically linked to spirituality. Medicines, diets and ceremonies have been used by Native American Peoples to promote health by living in harmony with the heart.

In Arizona, some Native Americans run each day to greet the rising sun. This practise not only conditions the body but also nourishes their spirit. Stories are told to teach positive behaviours and how to observe nature and live by nature's law. Similar to First Nations Australian bush medicine, herbs and ceremonies are used in a variety of combinations to prevent and treat illnesses.

### Traditional Chinese medicine

Traditional Chinese medicine is 23 centuries old. It is one of the world's oldest medical systems. Chinese healers aim to restore the balance between the two energy forces: yin (passive) and yang (active).

**FIGURE 6.17** At the 49th annual United Tribes Pow Wow, more than 900 dancers and musicians celebrated Native American culture.



**FIGURE 6.18** A variety of herbs are used in traditional Chinese medicine.



**FIGURE 6.19** In traditional Chinese medicine, harmony is sought between yin and yang.

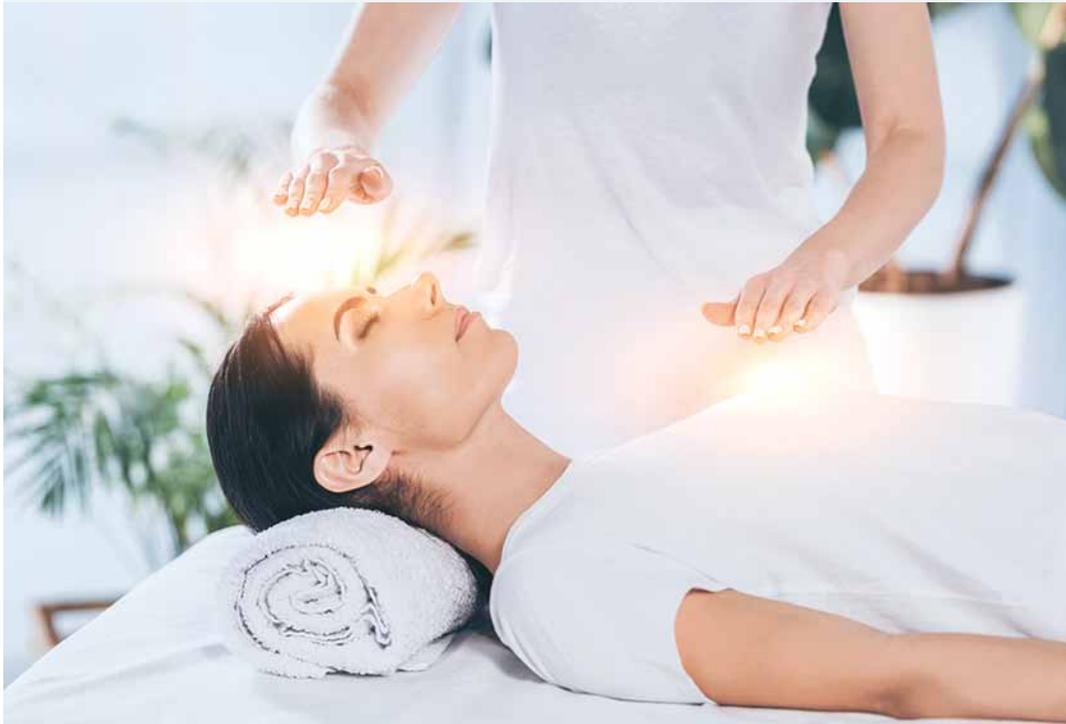


Chinese healers believe that a person is healthy when harmony exists between these two forces, and when illness occurs it is because yin and yang are not balanced.

## Reiki

Reiki, which means ‘universal life energy’, is a Japanese method of healing. It is used to treat problems of energy flow on the physical, emotional and spiritual level. In reiki, it is believed that energy inside the body is essential to health and optimum functioning. When it becomes blocked or weakened, this causes stress, sickness and pain.

**FIGURE 6.20** Reiki is a traditional Japanese healing form of medicine.



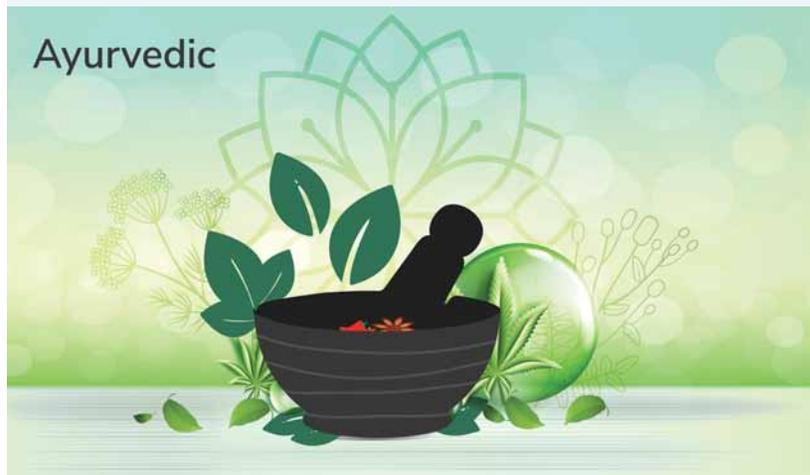
## Ayurvedic medicine

Ayurvedic medicine originated in India around 3000 years ago. It is still practised widely in parts of India today, both on its own and together with modern medicine. In Ayurvedic medicine, health is defined as ‘a balance between body, mind, spirit and social wellbeing’.

It has seven basic guidelines:

1. All things in the universe are connected and are made of the same elements: space, air, fire, water and earth.
2. There is a strong connection between the self and the environment.
3. We are all connected to each other, ourselves, the environment and the universe.
4. To stay healthy we must keep balance and interact healthily with our environment.
5. Our lifestyle often disrupts our balance. Diet, exercise, work and relationships have the potential to create imbalances. These imbalances can be physical, emotional or spiritual.
6. Imbalances in the body cause a lack of harmony and make us more likely to experience disease.
7. We as humans are responsible for our choices and actions.

**FIGURE 6.21** Ayurvedic medicine comes from India and focuses on balance and connection.



## Yoga

Yoga originated in India over 5000 years ago. It is a practice of physical exercise, breath control, relaxation, positive thinking and meditation that aims to develop harmony in the body, mind and environment. There are a few varieties of yoga, but the basis of Yoga is low-impact physical activity, postures called 'asanas', breathing techniques called 'pranayama', relaxation and meditation.

The origin of Yoga is 'Yog', which means union. It is a union of the body, mind and spirit to bring about a state of calmness. The aim of yoga is to have better physical health, mental control and self-realisation.

## Meditation

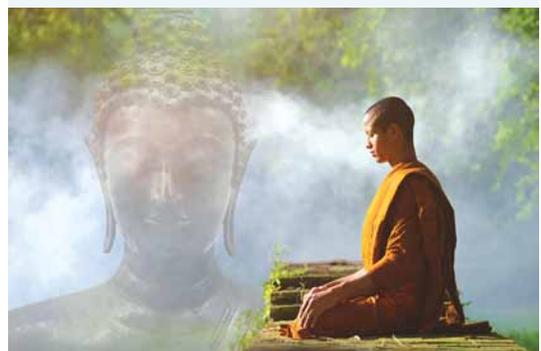
Originating from Buddhism, Buddhists use meditation to take responsibility for their state of mind and change it for the better. Buddhists believe meditation can transform the mind. Meditation is widely used today. Regular practice aims to encourage and develop concentration and clarity, improve emotional positivity and mental resilience, and reduce anxiety and stress.

Meditation and mindfulness can help you to learn the patterns and habits of your mind and encourage new and more positive ways of thinking. Research has shown that regular meditation reduces blood pressure and has many other mental, physical and emotional health and wellbeing benefits.

**FIGURE 6.22** Yoga is believed to be good for the mind, body and spirit.



**FIGURE 6.23** Many believe meditation brings about mental clarity and wellness.



## 6.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Experiencing Dadirri

Clear a little space as often as you can, to simply sit and look at and listen to the earth and environment that surrounds you.

- Focus on something specific, such as a bird, a blade of grass, a clump of soil, cracked earth, a flower, bush or leaf, a cloud in the sky or a body of water (sea, river, lake...) whatever you can see. Or just let something **find you**, be it a leaf, the sound of a bird, the feel of the breeze, the light on a tree trunk. No need to try. Just **wait a while** and let something find you, let it spend time with you. Lie on the earth, the grass, some place. Get to know that little place and let it get to know you — your warmth, feel your pulse, hear your heart beat, know your breathing, your spirit. Just relax and be there, enjoying the time together. Simply be aware of your focus, allowing yourself to be still and silent..., to listen...

Following this quiet time there may be, on occasion, value in giving expression in some way to the experience of this quiet, still listening. You may wish to talk about the experience or journal, write poetry, draw, paint or sing... This needs to be held in balance — the key to Dadirri is in simply being, rather than in outcomes and activity.

In greeting each morning, remind yourself of dadirri by blessing yourself with the following...

‘Let tiny drops of stillness fall gently through my day’

— Noel Davis

**Source:** © 2002 Emmaus Productions; taken from <http://www.dadirri.org.au/wp-content/uploads/2015/03/Dadirri-Inner-Deep-Listening-M-R-Ungunmerr-Bauman-Ref1.pdf>

### 2 Promoting positive mental health

Choose a technique from a different parts of the world that promotes positive mental health and wellbeing (e.g. yoga, meditation, reiki) and complete the following:

- a. Name the practice.
- b. Find a place in your local area that offers this practice.
- c. Record the cost involved and what day/time the activity is offered.
- d. Identify what is involved in the practice.
- e. Participate in the practice and provide a brief description of your enjoyment of the activity.
- f. Consider whether you can make time to participate in this activity at least once a week. If not, explain why.

## 6.4 Exercise

### 6.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

#### ■ LEVEL 2

6, 7

#### ■ LEVEL 3

8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. The introduction of European ways of life had a positive influence on First Nations Australians. True or false?
2. **MC** How many centuries old is traditional Chinese medicine?
  - A. 5
  - B. 30
  - C. 23
  - D. 21
3. **MC** Which of the following is considered essential for the health and wellbeing of First Nation Australians?
  - A. Connection to Country
  - B. Time
  - C. Honesty
  - D. Love

4. **MC** Reiki involves life \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. forces
  - B. energy
  - C. chapters
  - D. adventures
5. **MC** The two forces in traditional Chinese medicine are:
  - A. positive and negative.
  - B. self and other.
  - C. internal and external.
  - D. yin and yang.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** the seven types of connections First Nations Australians believe are important to have a strong sense of self and feel healthy.
7. **Explain** the benefits of access to Ngangkari healers for First Nations Australians.
8. **Identify** some similarities in the attitudes towards health and wellbeing among different cultures around the world.
9. Have you experienced any of the types of medicine discussed in this lesson? If so, **explain** your experience and its effectiveness. If not, which one would you like to try? **Explain** why.

## LESSON

### 6.5 Preventing harm and promoting health — road, sun and water safety

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Identify ways to manage risks to minimise harm.

Staying safe involves knowing how to make good decisions. There are many risks to manage on the road, in the water and when being exposed to the sun's UV rays. It is important to know how best to stay safe in these situations and how to make the best health decisions. In this way, we can enjoy our environment safely.

#### ENGAGE

Everyone takes risks. Consider the risks that people take in their lives, such as entering into a committed relationship, buying a house or starting a new career. Young people also take risks but they are often not aware of them or do not consider the impact the risks may have on their health and their lives.

As a class, brainstorm as many risks — both positive and negative — as you can think of. At the end of the brainstorming session, see if you can label the risks as positive or negative.

**FIGURE 6.24** Young people can make decisions that enhance their health and the health of others.



## 6.5.1 Road safety

### Road safety

Too many Australians are injured or killed on the road as drivers, passengers or pedestrians. No matter what age you are, you can learn to minimise the risk when using the road. In this section, you will examine why many road accidents happen and how to keep safe on the road.

In the age bracket of 0–14 years, pedestrian accidents are a leading cause of injury. For young people aged 15–24 years, driving accidents are a leading cause of injury. A significant factor contributing to these statistics is that children and young people often take greater risks than adults do. They do not think that their behaviour can lead to a road accident, or they have the attitude that ‘it won’t happen to me’.

Young men are at a greater risk of road accidents because, statistically, they tend to engage in more risky behaviors, such as speeding and drink-driving. This, combined with inexperience and a powerful car, can have serious consequences.

### How to be safe on the road

There are things you can do to stay safe when using the roads. Planning ahead and obeying the road rules will help ensure you do not become a road accident statistic. Equipment has been designed to reduce injury and protect people when using the roads. For example, when riding bicycles or motorbikes, it is important to wear protective gear such as helmets and reflective clothing; when travelling in a vehicle, a seat belt can save your life.

**FIGURE 6.25** Seatbelts and helmets are protective equipment that can help you stay safe.



Even though young people often know the road rules and use protective equipment, a number of factors contribute to children and young people taking risks on the road. These include:

- *complacency* — ‘it won’t happen to me’
- *peer pressure* — doing what their friends do or say, such as driving too fast, drink-driving or crowding people into a car
- *lack of judgement* — underestimating the risk, such as running across a busy road
- *status* — driving powerful cars and driving at high speeds to impress others
- *fitting in with peer groups* — not wearing a bicycle helmet because friends say helmets aren’t ‘cool’.

## Rules of the road

Road rules and legislation are designed to make the roads a safer place for everyone. They influence people's behaviour and reduce the risk of accidents. In determining road rules and laws, the government has taken into account a number of factors that increase the potential for accidents. Road rules and laws aim to reduce these risks. For example, there is greater risk of pedestrian accidents outside schools at school drop-off and pick-up times. Therefore, the law requires drivers to slow down in school zones during these times.

FIGURE 6.26 Road rules help keep us safe.



### DID YOU KNOW?

The highest period of risk for young Australian drivers is shortly after they get their licence until the age of 24. To help reduce the risk, states and territories have introduced graduated licensing systems. These place restrictions on new, young drivers in terms of blood alcohol limits, the number of passengers they can carry, the power of the vehicles they can drive and, in some states, the maximum speed allowed.

### DISCUSS

How can you encourage young people to make good decisions around road safety? Possible topics could include:

- distracted drivers
- speeding
- driving unlicensed
- drug driving.

Use the **Road Safety Education** and **Transport Accident Commission (TAC)** weblinks in the Online Resources to find information. You could plan one or more of the following:

- a 30-second video commercial
- a newspaper ad
- a social media page
- a catchy hashtag.



## 6.5.2 Sun safety

Protect yourself from sun damage in five ways:

1. *Slip* on sun-protective clothing such as a rash vest and board shorts.
2. *Slop* on SPF 50+ broad-spectrum, water-resistant sunscreen and lip balm every two hours and immediately after swimming.
3. *Slap* on a broad brimmed or bucket hat that protects your face, head, neck and ears.
4. *Seek* shade when you are not in the water.
5. *Slide* on some wrap-around sunglasses.



The SunSmart UV alert tells you the times of day when the sun's UV level will be 3 and above. This level of UV can damage your skin and eyes and increase your risk of skin cancer later in life. You can check the UV alert using the **ARPANSA** weblink in the Online Resources.

**FIGURE 6.27** Protect yourself outdoors.



Have a look at the SunSmart UV alert for your area. What times do you need sun protection today? Can you think of other ways to protect yourself in the sun?

#### HEALTH FACT

Exposure to the ultraviolet (UV) rays of the sun not only harms our skin but can also damage our eyes. To help prevent eye damage, wear close-fitting sunglasses that wrap around and cover as much of the eye area as possible. Effective sunglasses should have an eye protection factor (EPF) of 10.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

Aloe vera gel provides effective relief from the pain of sunburn by providing nutrients and acting as an anti-inflammatory. Aloe vera has been used for its healing properties for over 4000 years.

### 6.5.3 Water safety skills

By becoming familiar with some basic water safety skills, you can do a lot to make pools and waterways safe places where everyone can have fun. In this section, you will learn some water safety skills to ensure you are prepared for challenging situations when swimming.

#### Safety in the water

At public swimming pools and beaches, there are usually trained lifeguards who can help people who get into trouble in the water. When at patrolled beaches, it is important to swim between the flags so the lifeguards can see you and help you if necessary. If you get into trouble in the water, alert a lifeguard by floating on your back and raising one arm in the air. However, at rivers, isolated beaches, dams and home swimming pools, bystanders might need to help if a person get into difficulty. Remember, avoid swimming in unpatrolled water when possible and *never* swim alone. It is essential to bring a friend or someone to supervise so that there is someone to offer help if needed. Always supervise children in or around water, including in pools, baths and dams. For more information on staying safe at the beach, use the **Beachsafe** weblink in the Online Resources.



## Rips and currents

**Rips** are the number one hazard on beaches in Australia. Rip currents are the cause of many rescues as well as drownings. Rips are hazardous to both swimmers and non-swimmers. Swimmers caught in a rip try to swim against it and become exhausted and then begin to panic. Non-swimmers in waist deep water are pulled into deeper water by rips where they struggle and require rescuing or drown.

**rip** a stretch of turbulent and dangerous water in the sea or in a river

### What is a rip?

When waves break they move water towards the beach. This water has to find its way back out to the ocean. The easiest path is usually in the deepest channel. This moving channel of water is called a rip. Rips can occur along any part of the beach. Most rips end when the speed of the channel slows down, usually when it reaches just beyond the breaking waves.

### What should you do if you are caught in a rip?

If you get caught in a rip, don't panic. Trying to swim against the rip will end in exhaustion. If at a patrolled beach, float on your back, raise your arm to attract attention and call for help. If you are a strong swimmer, you can attempt to swim at an angle to the rip. However,



it is important to try to save your energy. If you have a surfboard or flotation device, keep hold of it. Use the **Rips** weblink in the Online Resources to learn more about rips.

**FIGURE 6.28** Warning signs are often displayed when rips are common on the beach.



## Making a rescue

If you are required to make a rescue, there are a number of essential points to remember. The most important thing is to put your own safety first and avoid getting into the water if possible. As the rescuer, you will make the situation worse by putting yourself at risk. Take the time to evaluate the situation. This is vital to the survival of both the rescuer and the person to be rescued. As part of this evaluation, consider:

- *sources of help* — are other people and/or rescue aids (ropes, flotation devices, boats, surfboards) within reach?
- *the state of the drowning person* — whether they are injured, have poor swimming skills or both
- the *depth* of the water
- *hazards* — are there currents or rips?
- *safe entry and exit* points.

## on Resources

- **Interactivities** Aquatic survival skills (int-5457)  
Aquatic skills (int-6304)  
Rescue methods (int-6305)

## Staying safe in a river or dam

Despite looking calm, rivers and dams can pose potential safety risks. For example, they can have currents and fast-flowing water, submerged objects such as rocks and tree branches, slippery banks, changing seasonal patterns and flood water, and very cold water (which can cause shock). These inland waterways are not patrolled by lifeguards so it's possible no one will be there if you get into trouble.

To stay safe in rivers or dams:

- check the conditions before you enter — always enter feet first
- be wary of crumbling river beds and slippery dam edges
- check for submerged objects
- avoid crossing flooded waterways
- avoid alcohol and drugs around water
- always wear a lifejacket when boating or using watercraft
- always swim with someone.

**FIGURE 6.29** Although they look calm, weirs and dams can be dangerous.



## 6.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Investigate a health issue



weblink

- Use the **Preventative health** weblink in the Online Resources to help you complete the following.
- Identify some preventative health measures being put in place for all Australians. Examples include cancer screening, vaccinations, being active, eating well and avoiding risky behaviours.
- Choose a health issue that teenagers should be aware of.
- Design an activity to help teenagers improve their health in your selected area. Follow these steps to get started:
  - Name your chosen health issue.
  - Describe how it affects teenagers.
  - Outline what you think teenagers could do to improve their health in this area.
  - Choose a way to present your health improvement activity. This might include:
    - drawing a picture showing the activity
    - writing a short (30-second) speech
    - designing a dance or rap
    - creating a poster
    - recording a TikTok video or reel
    - designing an advertisement

### 2 Road safety



doc-14674

Complete the **Safety on the roads** worksheet to explore road safety for young people.

## 6.5 Exercise

### 6.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**LEVEL 2**

6, 7, 8

**LEVEL 3**

9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. True or false? Women are more at risk of road accidents.
2. **MC** P-plate drivers are over-represented in car accidents. Which of the following reasons helps explain this? Select all options that apply.
  - A. They are inexperienced.
  - B. The statistics don't include older people.
  - C. They take more risks, such as speeding and drink-driving.
  - D. They can be inattentive.
3. **MC** When you are at the beach, you must swim between the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. tides
  - B. flags
  - C. lifesavers
  - D. currents
4. **MC** When protecting yourself from the sun you should:
  - A. slip, slop, slap, seek, slide.
  - B. seek, soap, sick, soak, spy.
  - C. sun, safety, surf, sand, sea.
  - D. slip, sop, sap, seek, slide.
5. **MC** Inland waterways are known to have unexpected cold currents which can cause:
  - A. frostbite.
  - B. hyperthermia.
  - C. shock.
  - D. heatstroke.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** the key skills essential for water safety.
7. **Identify** behaviours that maintain young people's safety on the road and in the water.
8. **Identify** behaviours that place young people at risk. How could these risks be reduced?
9. **Explain** why it is important to avoid drugs and alcohol around water.
10. **Analyse** why you think young people are reckless on the roads.

# LESSON

## 6.6 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 6.6.1 What have I learned?

- Australian youth should be moderately to vigorously active for at least 60 minutes per day, and spend less than two hours using electronic media for entertainment purposes per day.
- There are many different ways to be active. You are more likely to remain active if you are active in many ways.
- Facilities and access to resources can affect your ability to be active.
- The essential nutrients in foods are carbohydrates, vitamins, minerals, fats and protein.
- It is recommended that you limit your intake of saturated fats and high GI carbohydrates.
- The *Australian Guide to Healthy Eating* provides us with information on the type of foods we should eat and the daily proportions.
- Learning how to read food labels can provide you with the information you need to make better decisions about the food you eat.
- Before European colonisation, First Nations Australians had a well-balanced diet sourced from a variety of plant and animal foods.
- First Nations Australians boiled, ate and ground up plants for a wide variety of medicinal purposes.
- First Nations Australians have an important mind-body-spirit connection for health and wellbeing.
- Chinese medicine is about balancing the body's forces, known as yin and yang.
- Cultures from all around the world have mind-body-spirit traditions that aim to cure a wide range of health issues in a holistic way.
- Protect yourself from sun damage in five ways: Slip, slop, slap, seek, slide.
- Taking risks on the road, including disobeying rules, is a major cause of injury and death.
- Young men aged between 17 and 24 years are more likely to be involved in fatal road accidents because of risky behaviour.
- There are a number of strategies to reduce risks on the road, including following the road rules, keeping within the speed limit, wearing a seatbelt and wearing a helmet when riding a bike.
- You can reduce the risk of harm by making informed decisions in risky situations and planning ahead.
- It is important to be aware of your surroundings around water.
- Always swim between the flags and be aware of the location of lifeguards around the water.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- What resources do I have access to that can help me to be the healthiest I can be?
- How can I ensure I look after myself to lead a healthy life?

Evaluate your initial responses now that you've studied the content.



Resources



Interactivity Crossword (int-8917)

## 6.6.2 Key terms

**aerobic activities** activities that generally involve a large number of muscles/muscle groups working at a moderate intensity

**cardiovascular disease** any disease that affects the heart or blood vessels, including stroke and high blood pressure

**kilojoules** energy value of food

**legumes** vegetables such as beans, peas and lentils

**nutrients** chemical substances in food that nourish the body in specific ways, for example carbohydrates provide energy

**rip** a stretch of turbulent and dangerous water in the sea or in a river

**sedentary** any behaviour that results in low energy expenditure

**vigorous intensity** exercise that causes you to 'huff and puff' as your heart rate and respiratory rate increase significantly

## 6.6 Exercise

### 6.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

#### LEVEL 2

11, 13, 14, 16, 18

#### LEVEL 3

12, 15, 17, 19

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

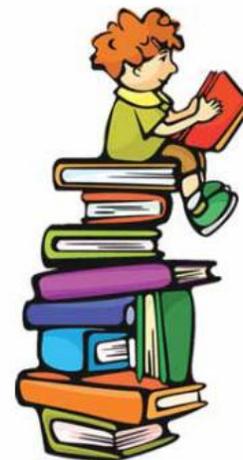
Statement	True or false
1. You should have an equal amount of fruit and vegetables each day.	
2. All foods that are low in fat are good for you.	
3. To meet the Australian Physical Activity Guidelines for youth, you must complete 60 minutes of moderate to vigorous activity in one session.	
4. Reading a book is considered sedentary behaviour.	
5. First Nations Australians became healthier after Europeans arrived.	
6. Bush medicine cannot be used in today's society.	
7. The mind-body-spirit connection can only be felt by First Nations Australians.	
8. The population most at risk of being involved in car crashes is females aged between 18 and 24 years.	
9. Drinking alcohol when there is a beach, pool or river nearby is safe.	
10. When a person has a strong sense of self, it can have a positive impact on their wellbeing.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Identify** three ways an adolescent could incorporate more physical activity into their school day.
12. A 13-year-old student completes the following activities during a typical week.
  - Monday: 10 min walk to and from school, 50 min PE class, 60 min homework, 180 min TV, 45 min PlayStation
  - Tuesday: 10 min walk to and from school, 60 min basketball training, 60 min homework, 100 min TV, 45 min PlayStation
  - Wednesday: 10 min walk to and from school, 50 min PE class, 60 min homework, 180 min TV, 45 min PlayStation
  - Thursday: 10 min walk to and from school, 60 min homework, 180 min TV, 60 min PlayStation
  - Friday: 10 min walk to and from school, 50 min PE class, 180 min TV, 60 min PlayStation
  - Saturday: 60 min basketball game, 240 min TV, 180 min PlayStation
  - Sunday: 25 min walk the dog, 240 min TV, 180 min PlayStation

Does the 13-year-old student meet the relevant physical activity guidelines? **Explain** why or why not.

13. **List** three types of foods, with specific examples, that you should eat in limited amounts.
14. **List** two types of nutrients, including specific food sources, that should be eaten in large amounts.
15. **Identify** the main sources of nutrition for First Nations Australians before colonisation.
16. **Identify** three sources of bush medicine you could use today for common illnesses.
17. Select one culture from around the world and **explain** the mind-body-spirit connection for that culture.
18. **Outline** the five ways in which you should protect yourself from the sun when outdoors.
19. **Identify** two road rules that aim to reduce the number of pedestrian deaths in the 0–14 years age group.



### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign  
unique tests and exams



Access quarantined  
tests and assessments



Track your  
students' results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



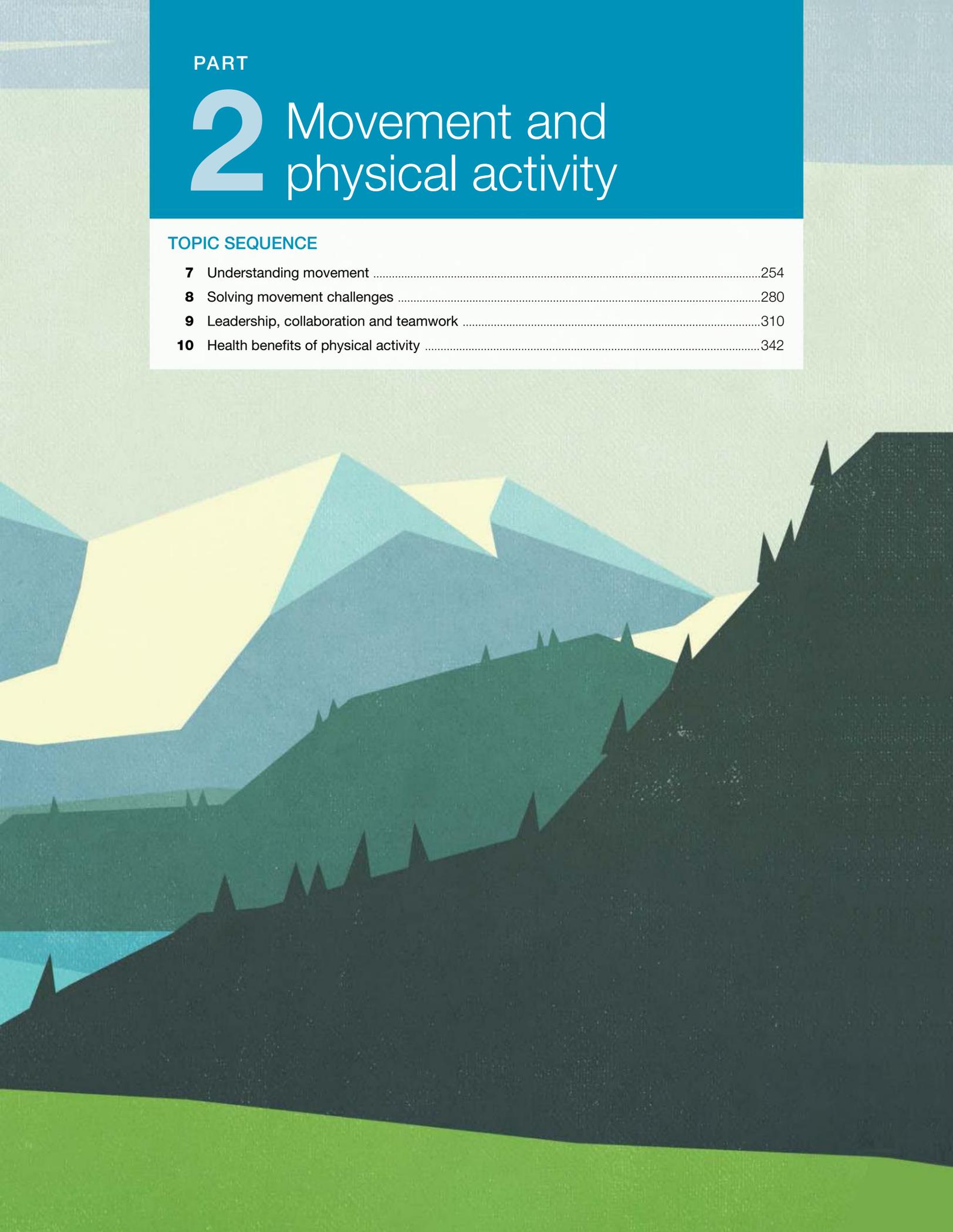


PART

# 2 Movement and physical activity

## TOPIC SEQUENCE

<b>7</b>	Understanding movement .....	254
<b>8</b>	Solving movement challenges .....	280
<b>9</b>	Leadership, collaboration and teamwork .....	310
<b>10</b>	Health benefits of physical activity .....	342



# 7 Understanding movement

## LESSON SEQUENCE

7.1 Overview .....	255
7.2 Techniques affecting performance .....	256
7.3 Projectile motion .....	263
7.4 Movement sequences .....	267
7.5 Developing strategic awareness .....	273
7.6 Review .....	277

**FIGURE 7.1** Understanding what affects your movement can improve your performance.



# LESSON

## 7.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 7.1.1 Enhancing movement

Picture a skilled athlete performing in their sport at the highest level. You might visualise a marathon runner's seemingly effortless running stride or the high intensity effort of a long jumper sprinting towards the long jump pit. You might imagine a netballer who always finds themselves in space and with plenty of time to decide which of their teammates they will pass the ball to next. You might even picture an AFL player manipulating their kick to vary the height and distance in different locations on the field. No matter the sport, skilled athletes have the ability to use effort, space, time, objects and other people in order to enhance their movement and improve their performance.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTION

How can you manipulate the elements of effort, space, time, objects and people to improve performance?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. What skills require maximum effort and what skills require controlled effort?
2. How will you change the angle of release for a long throw compared to a short throw?
3. How can athletes vary flow and levels in movement sequences?
4. How can you create space in team sports to maintain possession?
5. How can you limit the space of the opposition when defending?



Resources



**Video eLesson** Understanding how we move (eles-6024)

# LESSON

## 7.2 Techniques affecting performance

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Explain the relationship between effort (force) and performance.
- Adjust your technique when performing movements to minimise or maximise effort.

### 7.2.1 The impact of effort on performance

#### ENGAGE

**Technique** can be described as a particular way of performing a skill. Some techniques are better for certain actions, depending on the needs of the performer. Think about an activity. Does the action need to be completed:

- using the least amount of energy
- with submaximal effort
- with maximal effort
- using accuracy
- generating the appropriate flight path of an object
- using a combination of two or more of the above?

**FIGURE 7.2** Swimming is an activity that requires correct technique to optimise performance.



### 7.2.2 Biomechanics

At a school swimming carnival, you may have noticed that some competitors thrash through the water with vigorous arm movements, while others utilise sound technique to glide through the water, often at faster speeds. Although both types of competitors are using large amounts of **effort**, the competitor with sound technique produces more efficient, greater controlled and more powerful movements. Another example is a world class golfer. They might not have the greatest strength in the world but they can hit golf balls further than an amateur golfer due to using a technique that produces well-timed, accurate and forceful movement.

**technique** the method used for performing a skill  
**effort** force applied by the body's muscles to generate movement  
**biomechanics** the study of the human body in motion and the forces (both internal and external) that influence movement

**Biomechanics** is the study of the human body in motion and the forces that influence movement. Understanding biomechanics can help athletes and coaches adjust their technique to maximise performance. Table 7.1 provides a list of biomechanical terms.

**TABLE 7.1** Biomechanical terms

Term	Definition	Examples
Weight/mass	How heavy something is	A golf ball has a lower weight than a cricket ball.
Inertia	An object's resistance to change; its state of motion	A stationary soccer ball has inertia; it will not move unless force is applied.
Projectile	Something travelling through the air	An arrow shot through the air is a projectile, as is a human body in a high jump.
Acceleration	An increase in speed	A 100-metre runner accelerates out of the blocks.

Term	Definition	Examples
Deceleration	A decrease in speed	A long jumper decelerates as they land.
Force	The combination of mass and acceleration	A heavy tennis racquet swung with great acceleration has a large degree of force.
Air (wind)/water resistance	The horizontal resistance to movement caused by air or water	A golf ball is affected by air pressure, reducing the distance it will travel.
Gravity	The vertical resistance to movement	All objects will be pulled back towards the ground, limiting the height of a projectile.
Balance	Where something remains steady/stable	An athlete with feet extended when hitting a baseball will be balanced when striking the ball.
Friction	The resistance to motion caused by contact between two surfaces	A golf ball rolling along the ground will eventually stop due to friction.
Stability/balance	The ability to control desired body movement, either stationary or while moving	A gymnast performing a handstand during a floor routine (stationary) and performing a cartwheel (while moving) is showing stability/balance.
Agility	The ability to move quickly with speed and balance while changing directions	A squash player moving around the court during a long point displays agility.

**FIGURE 7.3** If the forces of gravity, air resistance and friction are not enough, rugby players have other external forces to contend with.



## on Resources

 **Interactivity** Biomechanics (int-6323)

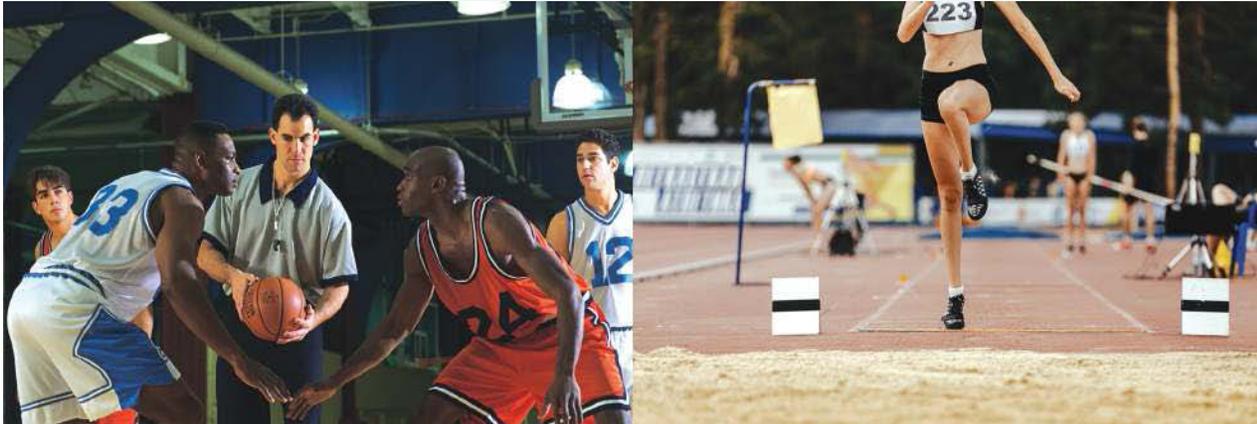
## 7.2.3 Take-off, body position and landing

### Take-off

When an athlete becomes airborne they are in the take-off phase of movement. Take-off will happen in jumping events such as long jump and high jump, and movements such as contesting for a ball in team sports. It is also seen at the start of a race in both athletics and swimming.

During the take-off phase, athletes use the effort force of their muscles to move themselves upwards and/or forwards, depending on the needs of their sport. Through technique, they can increase the amount of generated force while also minimising energy expenditure and improving performance.

**FIGURE 7.4** Different sports require different techniques in the take-off phase.



## Body position

While in the air, athletes will manipulate (move) their body position in order to improve performance for their particular sport. Netballers will keep their body in a tall position with their arms outstretched above their head in order to increase their maximum height to catch the ball. High jumpers use a technique called the 'Fosbury flop' in order to bend their back around the peak of the bar.

**FIGURE 7.5** Netballers and high jumpers use different techniques to manipulate their body position to enhance movement.

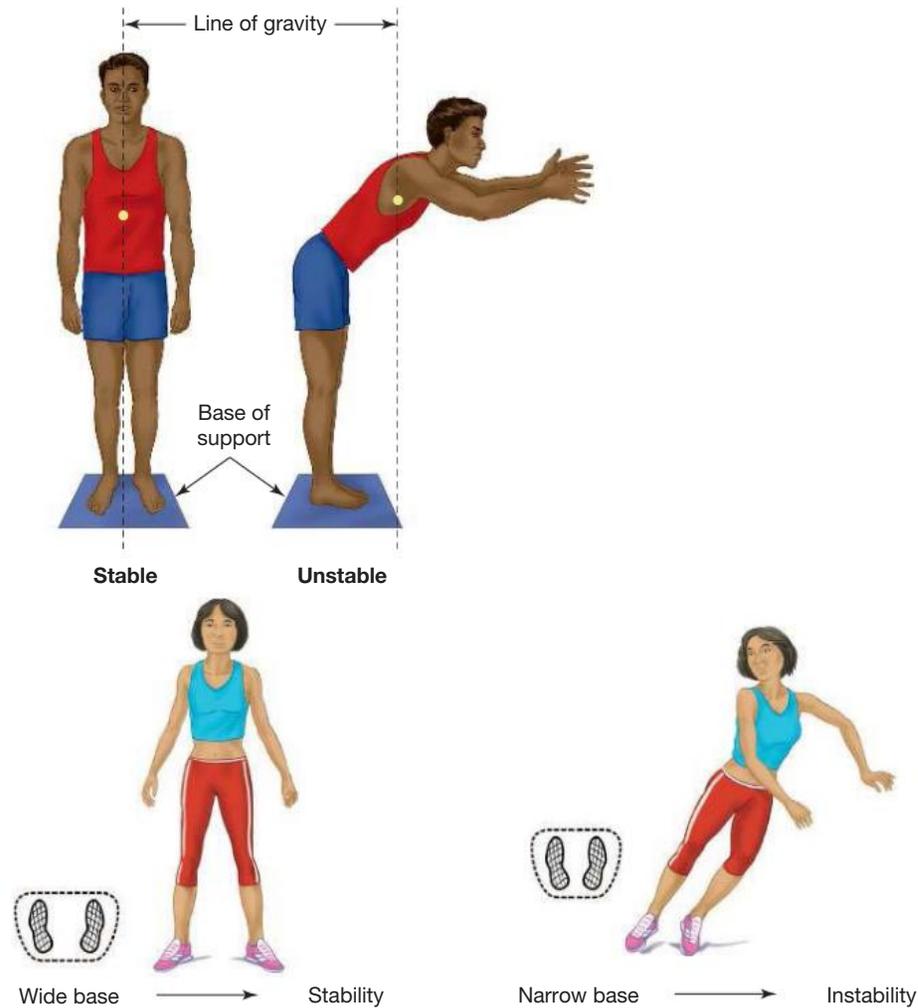


Outside of jumping movements, body positioning through proper technique can have a dramatic impact on movement. Technique that creates efficient movement can allow athletes to reduce their overall effort, which allows them to perform at higher intensities for longer periods of time. Body position can also enhance **balance** and stability by lowering the **centre of gravity**, widening the base of support and ensuring the line of gravity passes through the base of support.

**balance** in a sporting context, balance refers to an object, either stationary or moving, that is in control

**centre of gravity** the central point of an object, about which all of its weight is evenly distributed and balanced

**FIGURE 7.6** A person's line of gravity and base of support affect their stability.



**TABLE 7.2** Body position and movement efficiency

Sport/movement	Use of body position to reduce effort and enhance movement
<p>Swimming</p> 	<p>Swimmers use the streamline position to move through the water with greater ease. This gives them a narrow profile, which reduces the surface area exposed to the water.</p>
<p>Rugby</p> 	<p>When running the ball, a player will lower their body and centre of gravity in contact situations. This gives them greater balance and stability in order to break tackles.</p>

(continued)

(continued)

Sport/movement	Use of body position to reduce effort and enhance movement
Cycling 	Cyclists will ride in a crouched position to minimise air resistance while riding. This reduces the total surface area of the rider's body that is exposed to the wind.
Tennis 	A tennis player will lower their body and centre of gravity when making agile movements on the baseline. By making the shot in a lowered position, their muscles are ready to accelerate out of their stance to make the next shot.

## Landing

When landing, athletes should not only prioritise performance. They should also think about safety. In most circumstances, athletes should aim to land on two feet in order to reduce the risk of injury. However, sometimes the dynamic nature of the sporting contest may only allow a one-legged landing. In either case, upon landing, athletes should absorb the force by bending at the knees and hips to reduce the pressure on the joints in the leg. Due to the position high jumpers put themselves in using the Fosbury flop, it is advantageous and safer to land on their back at the conclusion of their jump.

**FIGURE 7.7** During landing it is important that athletes think about safety to reduce the risk of injury.



## 7.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Stability exercise

Working in pairs, take turns trying to push your partner over, as they stand in the following starting positions:

- both feet close together
- one foot on the ground
- both feet grounded hip width apart
- both feet grounded shoulder width apart
- very wide stance
- wide stance with bent knees
- one foot forward, one foot back.

When you have finished the activity, discuss how the different positions affected stability and why. What impact does your centre of gravity and your base of support have on your stability?

### 2 Take off!

**Equipment:** measuring tape, cones, long jump pit or grassed area

**FIGURE 7.8** Long jump



Through this activity you will explore the impact that various techniques have on jumping performance.

- Perform a long jump with an adequate run up. Make three attempts. Measure and record your results.
- Perform the long jump again. Have the same run up, but increase the base of support on take-off by jumping with two feet planted on the ground. Make three attempts and measure and record your results.
- Perform the set of long jumps for a third time. This time, jump off one foot and spread your arms and legs out in a star position to increase the surface area in contact with the air. Make three attempts and measure and record your results.
- Using the data taken from your sets of long jumps, answer the following questions.
  - Describe the impact of jumping with one foot compared to two feet.
  - Describe the impact of increasing the surface area by spreading out in a star position. What do long jumpers do to decrease their surface area in contact with the air?
  - Why do jumpers prefer to land with two feet and not one during the landing stage? Use key terms learned in this lesson to support your response.

### 3 Contesting the ball

Working in pairs, participate in a jump ball contest using the following techniques:

- Catching the ball on their chest:* Partner A and B cannot jump.
- Catching the ball on their chest:* Partner A can jump; Partner B cannot jump.
- Catching the ball with arms and hands outstretched above their head:* Partner A cannot jump; Partner B can jump.
- Catching the ball with arms and hands outstretched above their head:* Partner A can have a two-step run up; Partner B remains stationary.
- Both participants can have a two-step run up and jump:* Partner A catches the ball on their chest; Partner B catches with arms and hands outstretched above their head.

When you have finished this activity, discuss how the different techniques influenced your take-off and maximum jumping height.

#### 4 Performance checklist

- Based on your findings from the Take-off! activity, create a performance checklist for completing the optimal long jump.
- Choose two steps from your long jump performance checklist. Create a task that could be used to practise each step (e.g. landing on two feet — jumping with two feet from hoop to hoop).
- Using the same biomechanical principles as you did for the long jump, create a performance checklist for the triple jump.

## 7.2 Exercise

### 7.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7

**LEVEL 2**

6, 8

**LEVEL 3**

9, 10, 11

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- Effort is the force applied by the body's muscles to generate movement. True or false?
- A heavier cricket bat will require less force to swing. True or false?
- Gravity and air resistance are external forces that act on a moving person. True or false?
- MC** Which of the following will reduce your balance and stability?
  - A lower centre of gravity
  - A narrow base of support
  - Line of gravity outside the base of support
  - Both B and C
- MC** Which of the following actions will reduce your risk of injury when landing?
  - Landing on one foot
  - Landing with straight legs
  - Landing on top of an opposition player
  - Bending at the ankles, knees and hips while landing

### Apply your understanding

- Identify** ways to maximise your jump height from a stationary starting position.
- Describe** the advantages and disadvantages for making a catch on your chest.
- Explain** how athletes use take-off, body position and landing in a long jump event to improve performance and safety.
- Justify** the reasons for catching a ball with your arms and hands outstretched above your head in Australian Rules football and netball compared to rugby.
- Compare** the differences in effort applied by a runner in a marathon and in a 100 m sprint.
- Predict** the combined impact of equipment and body position on effort in cycling.

# LESSON

## 7.3 Projectile motion

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe how the angle of release affects the flight of an object or person.
- Perform a variety of movements with different angles of release to observe changes in flight.

### ENGAGE

As soon as an object or body is released into the air it becomes a **projectile** and is automatically under the influence of gravity and air resistance. The hurdler in figure 7.9 becomes a projectile as she becomes airborne.

- How do you think gravity and air resistance will influence the hurdler as she moves through the race?
- In what ways might these influences be similar to the influences of gravity and air resistance on a cricket ball being thrown a long distance?

**FIGURE 7.9** This hurdler became a projectile as soon as she became airborne.



### 7.3.1 Factors affecting the flight path of a projectile

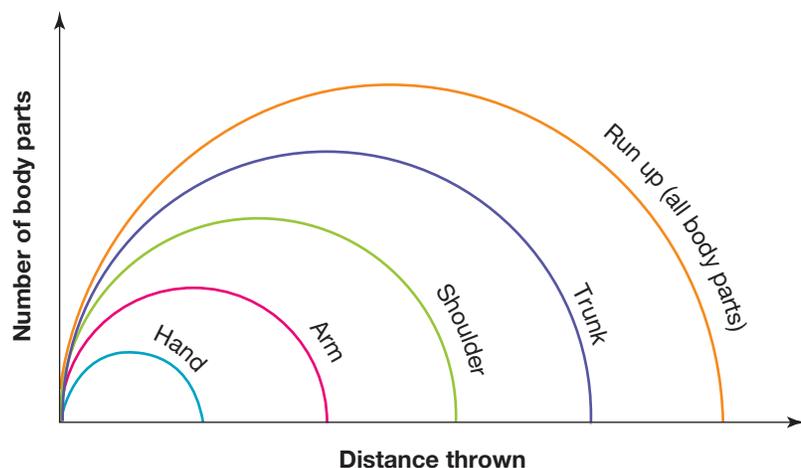
#### Application of force

The force applied to a projectile will have a large impact on its motion. The force can vary in amount as well as in the direction of application. The greater the force applied to the projectile, the further it will travel, assuming all other factors are equal. A technique to increase force is to use as many body parts as possible (see figure 7.10). For example, a cricket bowler or a tennis player will use their whole body when bowling or serving the ball.

#### Angle of release

Where the aim is for a projectile to go as far as possible, there needs to be an optimal **angle of release**. This reduces the effects of both gravity and air resistance. In these instances, the optimal angle of release is 45 degrees. A difference of even a few degrees from this optimal angle (above or below) will result in reduced distance.

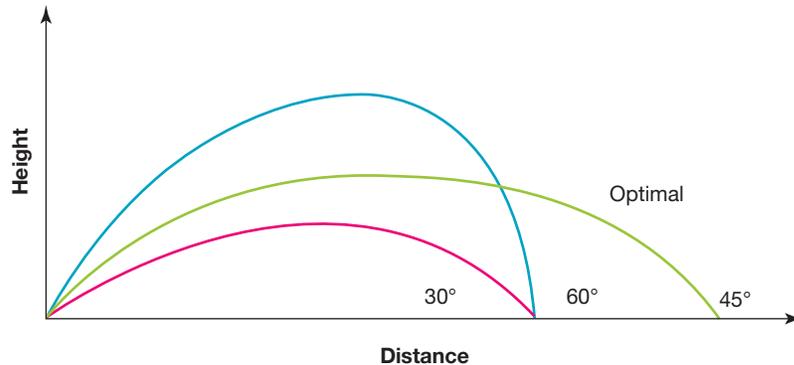
**FIGURE 7.10** The addition of extra body parts increases the distance a projectile can travel.



**projectile** an object moving through the air  
**angle of release** the angle at which a projectile is released into the air

Some sporting situations require the angle of release to be higher or lower than 45 degrees. For instance, in events where the ideal trajectory (flight path of the projectile) is low, the angle of release will be well below 45 degrees. An example would be a tennis forehand from the baseline where the ball should be kept as low as possible when going over the net. The opposite would occur in a volleyball dig, where the aim is to achieve height so that the ball is high enough for a teammate to easily set or spike. In this case, the angle of release should be higher than 45 degrees.

**FIGURE 7.11** The angle of release has an impact on the distance a projectile travels.

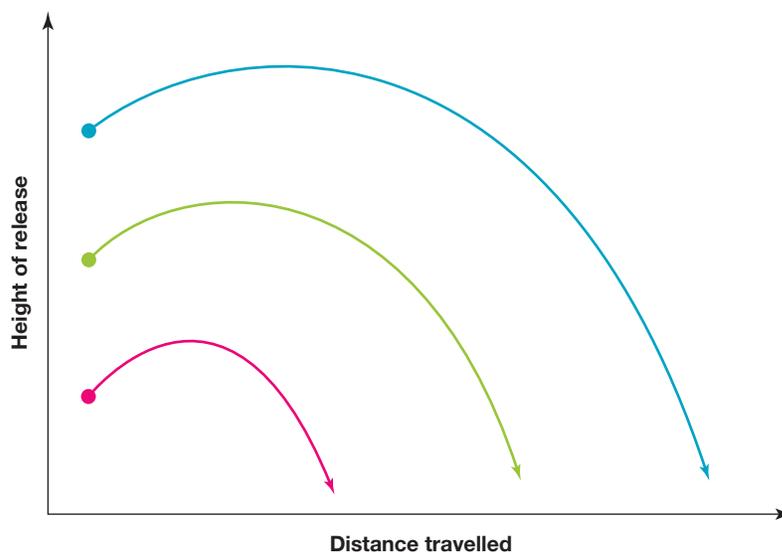


### Height of release

Another factor that affects the distance a projectile will travel is the **height of release**. If the angle and speed of release are constant, an object released from a higher point, such as from a cliff top, will travel further than one released from ground level. This can be seen at a golf course where the tee is significantly higher than the green. In this situation, golfers can hit the ball further due to the greater flight time before the ball hits the ground.

**height of release** the height a projectile is released into the air in relation to its landing point

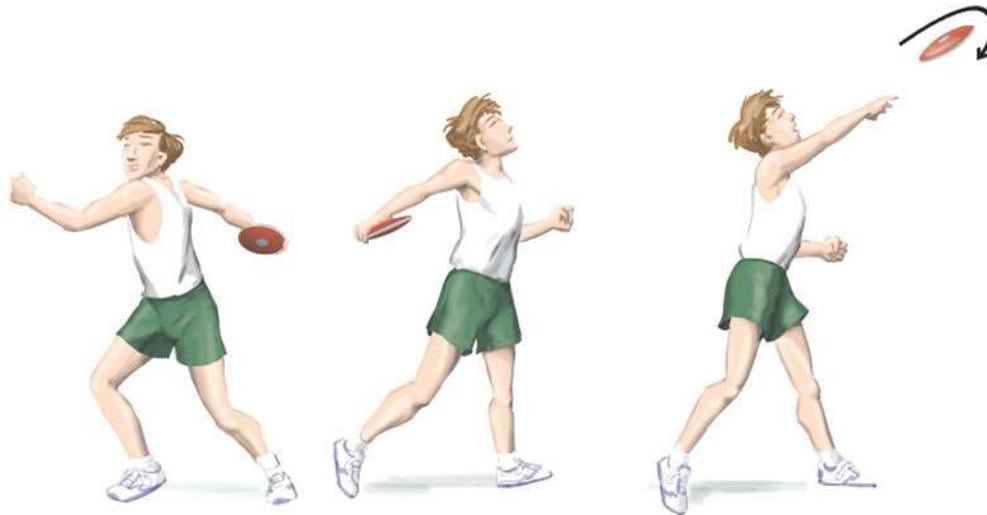
**FIGURE 7.12** All other factors being equal, the greater the height of release, the further the projectile will travel.



## 7.3.2 Adjusting the angle of release

A person can easily alter the angle of release by moving body parts in different ways. In golf, special clubs are designed for different purposes. A putter is designed to release the ball to travel along the ground. Therefore, it is flat and the ball comes off the face of the club at 0 degrees. Other clubs, such as a 3 iron, release the ball at about 23 degrees, while a sand wedge releases the ball at closer to 55 degrees.

**FIGURE 7.13** This thrower attempts to release the discus at an angle close to 45 degrees for maximum distance.



The human body can be manipulated to change the angle of release. Think about an Australian Rules footballer kicking the ball as far as they can. Their leg will be positioned at such an angle to maximise distance, aiming for a release height of approximately 45 degrees. Compare this to a player kicking the ball over a short distance, where the aim is to get the ball to a teammate with a flatter trajectory. The leg will be positioned so the release angle is much lower than 45 degrees.

### 7.3 ACTIVITY

#### Angle of release

Working with a partner, discuss the following situations. Decide for each what the most appropriate angle of release would be: higher than 45 degrees, 45 degrees or lower than 45 degrees.

- a. An archer shooting at a target
- b. A swimmer diving off the blocks into the pool
- c. A pole vaulter
- d. A high jumper
- e. A discus thrower
- f. A tennis serve
- g. A soccer goalie kicking a rolling ball as far away from the goals as possible
- h. A netball shot
- i. A basketball chest pass
- j. A table tennis serve

## 7.3 Exercise

### 7.3 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 3, 6

##### ■ LEVEL 2

2, 5, 7, 9

##### ■ LEVEL 3

4, 8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. The greater the force applied to an object, the further it will travel. True or false?
2. The addition of extra body parts when applying force will not increase the distance a projectile can travel. True or false?
3. Gravity is the only force that will impact how long a projectile will remain airborne. True or false?
4. **MC** The optimal angle of release to achieve maximum distance is
  - A. 5 degrees.
  - B. 25 degrees.
  - C. 45 degrees.
  - D. 85 degrees.
5. **MC** Which of the following situations would NOT require an angle of release higher than 45 degrees?
  - A. Hitting a lob shot in tennis
  - B. Performing a dig shot in volleyball
  - C. A high jumper taking off
  - D. Bowling a 'bouncer' in cricket

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** what the term 'angle of release' means in relation to a projectile.
7. **Describe** why a taller javelin thrower has an advantage over a shorter thrower, all other factors being equal (i.e. force applied, length of arm, speed of run up).
8. **Determine** how a tennis player would change their technique to make sure a drop shot hit by an opponent is returned back over the net.
9. A 3 iron golf club will result in a longer hit than a 7 iron. Other than the length of the club, **describe** why this is the case.
10. If you were a coach teaching someone to throw a ball, **explain** why you would recommend an angle of release of 45 degrees.

# LESSON

## 7.4 Movement sequences

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe how to incorporate flow and levels in movement sequences.
- Perform movement sequences with variations in flow and levels.
- Rate movement sequences based on their use of flow and levels.

### 7.4.1 Linking individual movement skills

#### ENGAGE

Picture yourself playing basketball. Your teammate rebounds the ball and passes up court to you. You dribble the ball towards the basket and perform a lay-up. During this play, a number of individual movement skills were linked together to create a **movement sequence**:

- During the rebound, your teammate jumped up and caught the ball, then performed a shoulder pass.
- You caught the ball while running, began dribbling the ball, jumped and performed a lay-up.

Now visualise one of the following movement sequences:

- javelin
- high jump
- bowling in cricket.

What individual movement skills need to be linked together to enable a successful performance?

The structure of the movement sequence sometimes needs to be planned, practiced or rehearsed. When this is essential, it is referred to as a routine. The different movements need to be linked to ensure a smooth transition throughout the movement sequence.



weblink

Access the **Cheerleading routine** weblink in the Online Resources and create a class list of the individual movement skills that were linked together to create the sequence. How many hours of training and rehearsals do you think it took for this group to perform this routine so fluently?

**movement sequences** a series of skills linked together

**FIGURE 7.14** A movement sequence brings individual movements together for an effective performance.



### 7.4.2 The purpose of a movement sequence

In gymnastics or dance, correct technique is vital if the performer is to score well. A variety of skills need to be performed accurately in order to achieve good results. Sometimes the performer needs to apply a significant amount of effort to generate muscular power and strength, while at other times a reduced effort is required to produce movements that rely more on accuracy and grace.

**FIGURE 7.15** The forward roll to arabesque is an example of a movement sequence requiring a balance between power and grace.



Some athletes need to consider whether the movement needs to be aesthetically appealing; that is, whether it looks nice to others. This is particularly important in sports where visual appeal plays a role in the success of the movement, such as in figure skating, cheerleading, dancing, diving, gymnastics and synchronised swimming. Performance can become more appealing when movements are done with style. This is the case even in team sports such as Australian Rules football or soccer, or in individual sports such as athletics. In these contexts, athletes will not be officially scored on their style but their coaches, spectators and teammates may think they are a better athlete because of their stylish movements.

## on Resources

 **Interactivity** The forward roll to arabesque (int-6308)

### 7.4.3 Variations to movement sequences

Athletes need to be able to adapt pre-planned movements in response to opposition tactics, environmental factors and changes that affect the amount of time or space available. Examples where varying movements is essential include:

- a softball player who has to modify their speed of pitch to fool their opponent
- a gymnast who has to come out of a tucked position more quickly than planned to avoid a fall
- a netball team that has to change their passing sequences because an opponent regularly intercepts their passes.

**FIGURE 7.16** Maybe it is time for 'plan B'. Netballers often need to change their movement sequences in response to external pressures.



### 7.4.4 Creating and performing movements

#### Flow

Flow is defined as how smoothly you transition from one movement to another throughout your routine. Flow can be categorised as bound flow or free flow. Bound flow is seen in the connection of pre-planned movements, such as a choreographed dance or gymnastics routine, or a team's set play. Free flow involves athletes improvising their movements based on their interpretation of some music or as a reaction to how the opposition is moving. Athletes and performers can improve their flow by training and rehearsing regularly.

**FIGURE 7.17** Bound flow is demonstrated in choreographed dance routines or pre-planned set plays in team sports.



**FIGURE 7.18** Free flow is an improvised response to an external stimulus such as a piece of music or an opposition player.



## Use of space

Use of space in a movement sequence can refer to the use of:

- levels: high, medium or low
- direction: up/down, forward/backward, right/left or clockwise/counterclockwise
- pathways (floor/air): straight, curved or zig-zag.

In dance and gymnastics, variations in levels can make a dance more interesting to the audience, performers and judges. In team sports, changing levels can be used to gain an advantage over the opposition. When Australian Rules football players leap high to take a mark or dive low on a loose ball, they are using levels to improve their performance.

Think about how you might use levels, direction or pathways to improve your movement sequences in your chosen sport?

**TABLE 7.3** Examples of levels in dance

Low	Medium	High
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bending</li> <li>• Kneeling</li> <li>• Rolling</li> <li>• Crawling</li> <li>• Crouching</li> <li>• Sitting</li> <li>• Reclining</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gestures</li> <li>• Walking</li> <li>• Stepping</li> <li>• Running</li> <li>• Balancing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jumping</li> <li>• Hopping</li> <li>• Leaping</li> <li>• Lifts</li> </ul>

**FIGURE 7.19** Varying levels creates more appealing movements and also enhances performance.



### Relationships to other performers

When creating a movement sequence, your relationship to other performers will play a significant role.

Relationship types include:

- solo (e.g. a solo improvised dancer, an individual floor gymnast or a singles tennis player)
- partners (e.g. a partner dance such as the jive or cha cha, or doubles in tennis or badminton)
- groups (e.g. group dances such as physie [physical culture], or team games such as football, rugby or netball).

Think about the sports you participate in and who you participate with. How does your relationship with others influence your performance?

### 7.4.5 Appraising movements

Appraising or judging movements can serve multiple purposes. Athletes, coaches and spectators can appraise movements based on the athlete's ability to execute a skill in any type of sport. Sports such as dance, gymnastics, diving and figure skating have judges who will appraise athletes on their performance in order to award a score.

Appraising an athlete's performance involves either an objective or a subjective measure. Objective appraisals aim to remove personal feelings and opinions when judging an athlete's performance. Examples include prescribed checklists for dance and gymnastics, measurements of time and distance, goals scored and even referees officiating on set rules. Subjective appraisals of an athlete's performance are based on the personal feelings or opinions of the observer. This could include an observer who likes to see lots of flips, attacking flair in team sports or even likes the personality of the athlete.

**FIGURE 7.20** Judges and umpires will make appraisals on prescribed criteria or rules to promote fairness and reduce bias. Fans may appraise performances based on their own feelings and preferences.



## 7.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Create

- a. In small groups, students choose a piece of music and create a 30 second movement sequence to the music. The movement sequence must incorporate the use of flow and levels.
- b. Students choose a type of ball (e.g. a netball, Australian Rules football, rugby ball or basketball). In small groups, rehearse a movement sequence that includes at least 10 passes to move the ball from one end of a basketball court to the other. Students can incorporate flow by changing the pace of the movement. They can incorporate levels by using high, medium and low passes.

### 2 Perform

- a. Split the class into small groups. Practise a pre-choreographed dance routine such as the Heel Toe, Polka, Zorba, Macarena or Whip/Nae Nae, or allow students to choose a current trending dance. Students practice the routine and participate in a dance battle to see which group can perform the sequence best.
- b. Split the class into small groups and pass a ball around a circle. As the ball moves around the circle, the teacher calls out a range of cues to manipulate flow and levels; for example, faster, slower, high, medium and low.

### 3 Appraise

- a. View footage of a Simone Biles floor routine on YouTube. Identify instances of change in flow and levels.
- b. Select a sport and create a checklist to assess performance in that sport. Use it as a peer assessment tool. Discuss the results of the appraisal process as a class.

## 7.4 Exercise

### 7.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

##### ■ LEVEL 2

5, 6, 7, 9

##### ■ LEVEL 3

8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. Judges in dance competitions will mark each routine based on their feelings about the routine. True or false?
2. A figure skater's pre-prepared routine for the Winter Olympics is an example of bound flow. True or false?
3. An improvised dance is an example of free flow. True or false?
4. **MC** Which of the following is an example of a medium level?
  - A. A forward roll
  - B. Running across stage
  - C. Performing a split jump
  - D. Performing a partner lift
5. **MC** Which of the following is NOT an example of an objective appraisal?
  - A. Timing a 100 m race
  - B. The final score in a netball match
  - C. A spectator disliking a team's style of play
  - D. Using a checklist to score a gymnastics routine

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** why players and coaches need to be flexible with their tactics in team games.
7. **Outline** why a cricket batsman would regularly change their standing position during a game.
8. **Compare** a dancer and a surfer. **Evaluate** whether the dancer or the surfer requires greater adaptability in their movement sequences. **Justify** your response.
9. Which of the 7.4 activities did you enjoy the most? **Identify** factors that contributed to this selection.
10. Research a popular dance. **Justify** why this dance has appeal.

# LESSON

## 7.5 Developing strategic awareness

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Identify and develop strategies and tactics in a variety of games.
- Develop strategies based on your team's skill set.
- Develop strategies to target your opponents.
- Refine skills in game-like situations.

### 7.5.1 Space, time and direction

In many activities, the tactics used by players and coaches can have a significant impact on the success of a performance. The concepts of space, time and direction are used in games and activities. These elements are related to each other in a game context.

#### ENGAGE

In individual and team sports, certain movement sequences can be used to increase the chance of being successful. This is called a game plan. Through manipulating space, time and direction, players can develop their own strategies and tactics to improve performance.

Think about the chasing game called 'Bull rush'. In this game one player stands in the middle and must try to tag other players. The rest of the players try to run from one side to the other without being tagged.

Imagine you are the first-person in (i.e. the tagger). After you tag someone, they can help you in tagging other players. Your first strategy might be to target one of the faster players so that they can help you tag more people quickly. On the other hand, you may target the slower runners first so you have more taggers to restrict the space available for the other runners. The choice of strategy is called your game plan and reflects how you choose to use space, time and direction.

Select some other sports (e.g. netball or cricket) or games you play in PE lessons. Brainstorm the game plans you have used or seen others use.

Do these strategies include elements of space, time and direction?

### 7.5.2 Space

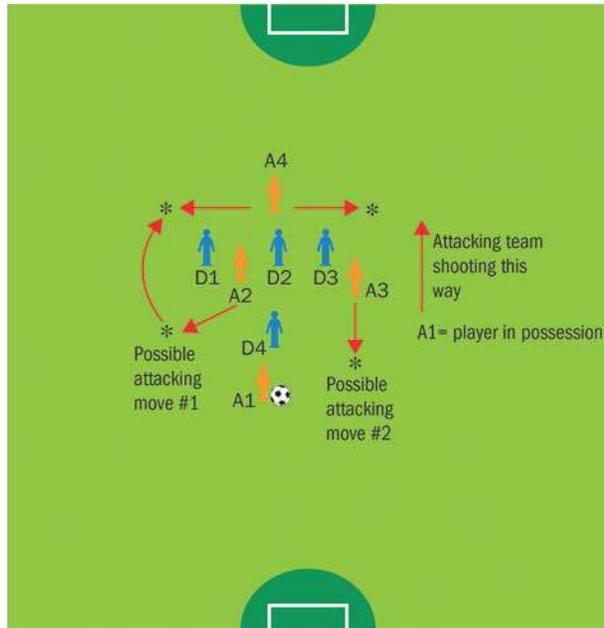
In team sports, a wide variety of open spaces are often available. Many teams try to 'create space' by passing to a teammate who is not close to opposition players. This gives the open player more time to complete the required movements correctly without having to evade other players. This explains why a coach will often yell 'run to space' to encourage players to move to an open space instead of remaining in a crowded area.

By reducing the space your opponent has to move in (i.e. invading their space), you can successfully limit their opportunities. This is seen in sports where tight defensive tactics are adopted, such as in netball, where players have a direct opponent and try to run with them to reduce their available space. Invasion games such as European handball adopt zones, and players might spread out across these zones to reduce space for attacking players to move and shoot.

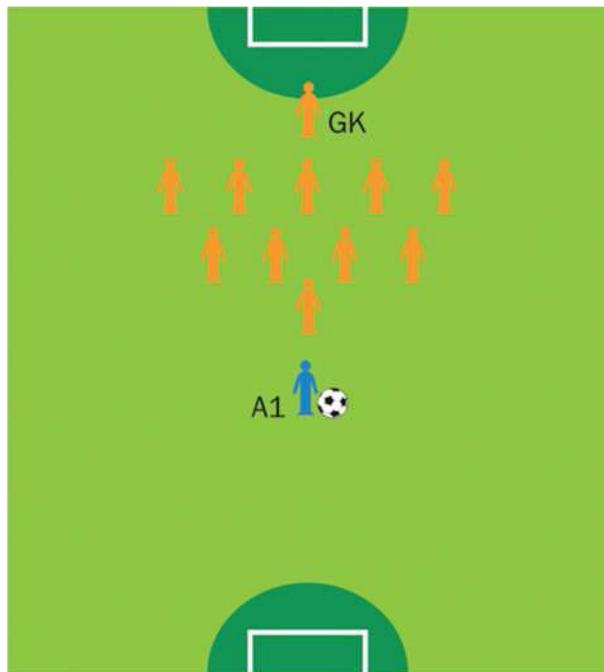
Sports such as tennis and squash use tactics that include moving opponents around the court as much as possible so the amount of space available to hit a winning shot is increased.

In individual performances such as rhythmic gymnastics or figure skating, athletes use as much space as possible for their performance. These athletes are rewarded by judges for maximising the use of the space available to them. This gives them the opportunity to gather momentum and force by using the space, and allows them to perform movements that are more complex and aesthetically appealing.

**FIGURE 7.21** By running into space both A2 and A3 create attacking opportunities for A1. After the choice is made to pass, A4 then has the opportunity to receive the second pass. Running wide forces the defenders to also move wide, possibly opening up space through the centre of the field where it is easier to score.



**FIGURE 7.22** An example of a very defensive zone with players blocking space near an opponent's goal.



**Key**  
 A1 = Attacking player with the ball  
 GK = Goalkeeper  
 = Defending player

## 7.5.3 Time

Time can be used for either offensive or defensive purposes. As an offensive option, having time when in possession of the ball is vital so that skills can be performed with less pressure. Players in team sports regularly pass and move into space to create time for each other. They will also use time to help a teammate get into position, and try to keep possession until the best attacking opportunity presents itself.

As a defensive tool, players will minimise the time available for their opponents when they are in possession. Time can also be used to reduce opponents' scoring opportunities. Teams that are trying to defend a lead will often use up time by being slow to perform a skill and by keeping possession of the ball to prevent the opposition from scoring.

## 7.5.4 Direction

The direction of a team's movement sequence can influence the success of a performance. Changing the direction of play in a team game can affect the movements of opponents. For example, a hockey pass to the left-hand corner of the hockey field will draw the opposition to that side of the field. A quick pass to the right-hand side increases the space and time available for the offensive team.

Environmental factors such as wind can affect the direction and style of play. Movement sequences may have to change to fit the conditions. In tennis, playing in windy conditions increases the emphasis on control and directing the ball into safer parts of the court to avoid the wind blowing shots out of play. A cross-wind for a golfer will change the direction of a shot, as it will for an archer shooting at a target.

**FIGURE 7.23** Reducing the space an opponent has to move into is a common defensive tactic in sport.



### 7.5 ACTIVITIES

#### 1 Game analysis

Attend a training session or competitive game of a senior team of a sport of your choice. Take notes about how the team uses space, time and direction to their team's advantage. Alternatively, for an in-class activity, find internet footage on 'classic' plays and analyse why they were effective.

#### 2 Basketball coach

- a. You are the coach of a basketball team and have to come up with some offensive and defensive team tactics. How would you:
  - i. move the ball down the court/field in an attacking move
  - ii. reduce the opposition team's chance of scoring
  - iii. create training drills for both your offensive and defensive strategies?
- b. In groups of five, discuss the strengths and weaknesses of each other's strategies. As a group, agree on the tactics you all want to use.

#### 3 Putting a team plan into action

In your group of five from activity 2, practise the basketball training drills you developed in order to apply your game plan tactics. After a couple of training sessions, challenge another group to a game. Good luck!

## 7.5 Exercise

### 7.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 4, 5, 6

##### LEVEL 2

3, 7, 8, 9, 10

##### LEVEL 3

11, 12

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. Zone defense is where players defend a space on the court rather than an opponent. True or false?
2. A defender's role is to limit the space available to the attacking players. True or false?
3. The use of space is not important in rhythmic activities such as dance and gymnastics. True or false?
4. **MC** Which two of the following is an example of an attacking tactic? Select all options that apply.
  - A. Pushing an additional striker forward in soccer
  - B. Putting more defenders behind the ball in the closing stage of a soccer match
  - C. Using man-to-man defence in basketball
  - D. Substituting faster players on to the court to try to score more goals
5. **MC** What is the aim of invasion games?
  - A. To limit space for your team
  - B. To invade the opponent's space and score points
  - C. To defend your space and limit your opponents from scoring points
  - D. Both B and C

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** what a coach means if they tell a player to 'run into space'.
7. **Explain** why some sports would use a zone to help them defend, such as in basketball or soccer.
8. In Australian Rules football, commentators might refer to players 'switching' the ball/play. **Explain** what this means. **Describe** how this is an advantage to the attacking team.
9. **Describe** the advantages and disadvantages of a team having set plays that they have practised at training.
10. A tennis player trying to defend often hits the ball higher than they normally would. **Explain** why they use this strategy.
11. **Consider** how a coach could create extra space for their attackers in a sport such as hockey.
12. A soccer team has a player red carded for a dangerous tackle on an opponent. **Discuss** why this is an advantage for the other team.

# LESSON

## 7.6 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 7.6.1 What have I learned?

- It is possible to change technique when performing a skill depending on the needs at the time.
- Understanding biomechanical principles can help you understand how to move your body and other sports objects to maximise performance.
- Internal forces are generated by the muscles and apply varying degrees of effort when performing movements.
- External forces act on moving objects and include gravity, air resistance and friction.
- An object is most stable when the centre of gravity is low, there is a wide base of support and the line of gravity is over the base of support.
- Balance can relate to both stationary objects and moving objects.
- Adjusting the angle of release, height of release and effort applied can alter the flight path of a projectile.
- Movement sequences combine a series of skill-based movements linked together.
- Movement sequences can include a planned routine such as a floor routine in gymnastics, or be flexible, such as when a player navigates around opponents in a team sport.
- Flow is defined as how smoothly you transition from one movement to another throughout your routine.
- Flow can be categorised as bound flow or free flow.
- Use of space in a movement sequence can refer to the use of levels, direction or pathways.
- The direction of a team's movement sequence can influence the success of a performance.
- The element of space can be used for offensive and defensive purposes in sports. It also plays an integral role in set routines.
- In team games, time is needed to execute skills with fluency and accuracy.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTION REVIEWED

How can you manipulate the elements of effort, space, time, objects and people to improve performance?

Evaluate your initial response to the essential question now that you have studied the topic.



Resources



Interactivity Crossword (int-8919)

## 7.6.2 Key terms

**angle of release** the angle at which a projectile is released into the air

**balance** in a sporting context, balance refers to an object, either stationary or moving, that is in control

**biomechanics** the study of the human body in motion and the forces (both internal and external) that influence movement

**centre of gravity** the central point of an object, about which all of its weight is evenly distributed and balanced

**effort** force applied by the body's muscles to generate movement

**height of release** the height a projectile is released into the air in relation to its landing point

**movement sequences** a series of skills linked together

**projectile** an object moving through the air

**technique** the method used for performing a skill

## 7.6 Exercise

### 7.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8,  
9, 14, 17

##### LEVEL 2

7, 10, 11, 12, 13,  
15, 16

##### LEVEL 3

18, 19, 20

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. Biomechanics is the study of the human mind and the decisions it makes.	
2. A projectile is an object moving on the ground.	
3. A golf ball hit at an angle of release of 40 degrees would travel higher than a ball hit at 20 degrees.	
4. A short shot-putter has an advantage over a taller shot-putter due to the lower height of release.	
5. In a gymnastics floor routine, there is no need to plan and practise the movement sequences.	
6. Movement sequences are isolated skills with no links between them.	
7. Objective appraisals are those that aim to remove personal feelings and opinions from the decision.	
8. The element of time can be used for both attacking and defensive purposes.	
9. Movement sequences can be performed solo, with a partner or in groups.	
10. Environmental factors such as wind can affect the direction and style of play.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Explain** why an understanding of biomechanics would help a coach or athlete.
12. **Explain** the difference between internal and external forces in relation to movement.
13. **Explain** how a cyclist would reduce their air resistance during an event.
14. **Describe** how a high jumper manipulates their body position to clear the bar.
15. **Describe** the relationship between stability and agility.
16. **Describe** how a golf player can change the angle of release when hitting the ball. **Explain** why they would do this.
17. **Outline** an example of a gymnast performing a movement sequence.
18. **Discuss** how a dancer can incorporate flow and levels into a routine.
19. You are a coach and a player asks you what 'run to space' means. **Describe** what you would say. **Explain** why you would often want a player to 'run to space'.
20. **Identify** an example of a team sport in which it is necessary to change the direction of the ball. **Explain** how this works. Use the terms 'space' and 'time' in your response.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign  
unique tests and exams



Access quarantined  
tests and assessments



Track your  
students' results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# 8 Solving movement challenges

## LESSON SEQUENCE

8.1 Overview .....	281
8.2 Using feedback .....	282
8.3 Manipulating movement concepts and strategies .....	289
8.4 Transferring movement strategies .....	296
8.5 Decision making .....	300
8.6 Review .....	307

**FIGURE 8.1** Cricket players are always trying to solve problems, such as where fielders should be placed and where the batter should try to hit the ball.



# LESSON

## 8.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 8.1.1 A problem-solving approach

Solving movement challenges requires a problem-solving approach. Feedback from teammates, coaches and others can provide information to help solve different challenges and improve performance. By developing movement strategies and recognising when these strategies can be transferred between different games and physical activities, you can make better decisions when playing team sports or developing a movement sequence.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTION

How can I implement strategies and use feedback to solve movement challenges?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. What problems need to be solved in your sport?
2. What strategies can you use to solve these problems?
3. Can you transfer strategies from one sport to another?
4. How do you know if strategies will be or have been successful?

#### on Resources

**Video eLesson** Solving movement challenges (eles-6025)

# LESSON

## 8.2 Using feedback

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe the different types and sources of feedback.
- Use feedback in order to improve individual and team performance.

### 8.2.1 The importance of feedback

**Feedback** is very important when we are learning and refining new skills. Feedback can take a variety of forms, all of which use our senses. For example, we *listen* to our coach or teacher, *view* a video of our performance of a movement sequence and *feel* how the performance went. In this lesson, you will learn to use different types of feedback from others to review and refine your performance.

**feedback** information received about a skill or movement; can be internal or external

### ENGAGE

Scrunch up a piece of paper into a ball and throw it from a distance into a bin. What feedback did you receive from yourself while doing this? Did you notice whether the paper ball went into the bin, fell short, went over or landed to the left or right?

This time, throw your paper ball towards the bin with your eyes closed. Did you feel how the paper left your hand? Were you aware of how much power you used to throw the paper? Could you hear the sound of a successful or unsuccessful shot? All of this information is feedback. But feedback doesn't just come from yourself; it can also come from other people.

Close your eyes and make five more attempts to throw paper balls into the bin. Have a partner provide you with as much feedback as possible after each attempt to help you get the paper into the bin. What type of information was provided in the feedback? Which information was the most useful for helping you improve your performance?

**FIGURE 8.2** Was feedback helpful for improving your performance?



### 8.2.2 Sources of feedback

Feedback can come from a variety of internal and external sources. Internal feedback is provided by the performer themselves while they are performing the movement. For example, a player passing a netball can feel the ball leaving their hands and they can see and hear the ball moving through the air and being caught by another player.

This topic will focus largely on external feedback, which comes from a person other than the performer. Sources of external feedback include:

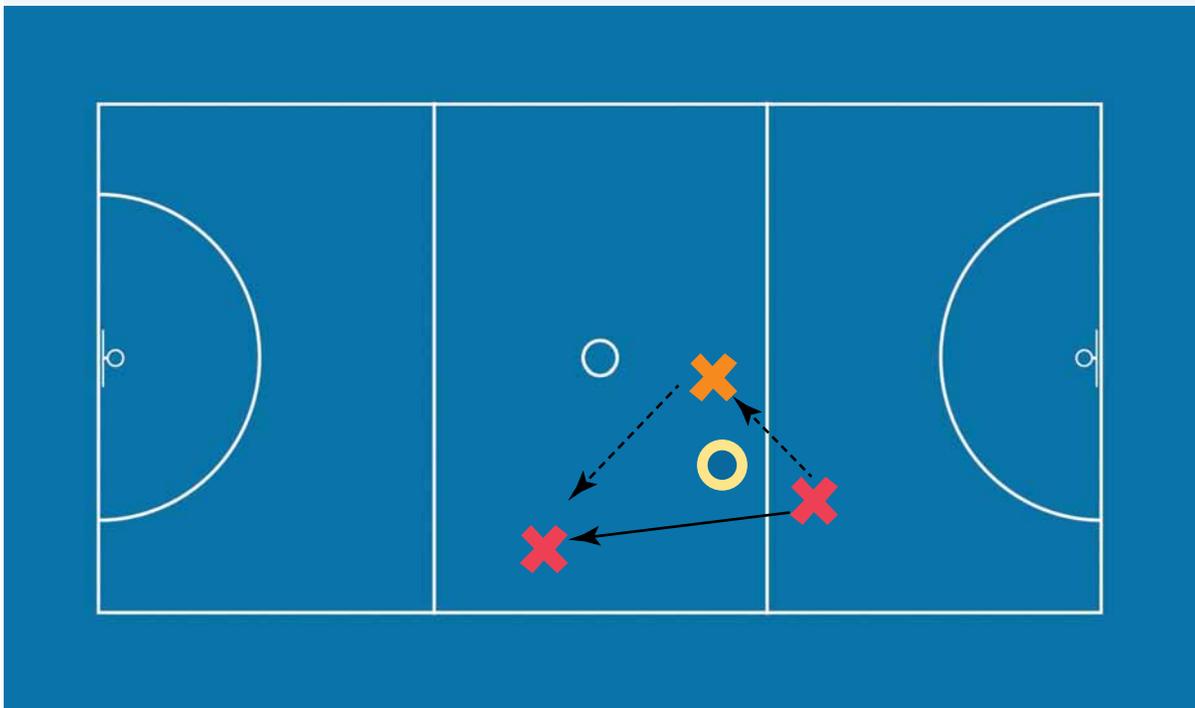
- a teacher
- a coach
- a teammate.

**FIGURE 8.3** Coaches may provide feedback during training sessions, while teammates in cricket might use breaks in play and the time between overs to give each other feedback.



A coach may suggest to a netballer that when they pass the ball, they should move themselves into space so that they can receive the ball again and help the team move further down the court. They may deliver this feedback with a short message or phrase that makes it easier to remember and implement, such as ‘pass and move’.

**FIGURE 8.4** ‘Pass and move’. Red player X is being defended by yellow player O. Once red X passes to orange X, red X moves immediately into space to receive the ball again.



### 8.2.3 Reasons for feedback

It is important for performers to understand the reasons behind the feedback they are given. Feedback can be given to help people:

- move within the playing or performance space
- know when to move, catch or intercept
- create, use and defend space

- increase their safety and efficiency of movement
- refine the composition of a dance sequence.

The next sections will introduce the Australian Rules football skills of the drop punt and the chest mark. Once you are familiar with the techniques, the Activities will guide you to practise giving and receiving feedback.

**FIGURE 8.5** Coaches can correct athletes' technique to make their lunges more efficient or swimming strokes more streamline. This helps make athletes' movements safer and/or faster.



## 8.2.4 Get feedback to improve your kicking and marking

Use the drop punt and chest mark instructions below to practise and develop these skills while receiving a range of feedback.

### The drop punt

1. Face the target at which you are directing the kick.
2. Spread your fingers evenly along each side of the ball with your thumbs pointing towards the lacing, as shown in figure 8.6. The grip is the same for both left- and right-foot kicks.
3. Hold the ball over the thigh of the kicking leg and take a few steps forward.
4. Release the ball, guiding it towards the lower laces of the boot on the kicking foot.
5. With toes pointed at the target, kick the bottom point of the ball towards the target. The ball should spin backwards, end over end, as shown in figures 8.7 and 8.8.

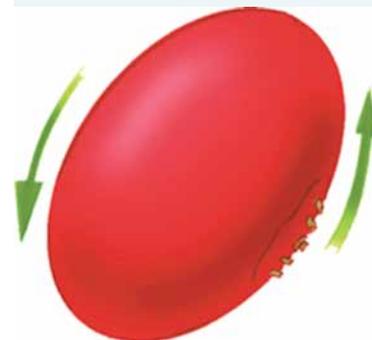


Once you have practised the drop punt, use the **AFL skills** weblinks in the Online Resources to learn how to improve your kicking.

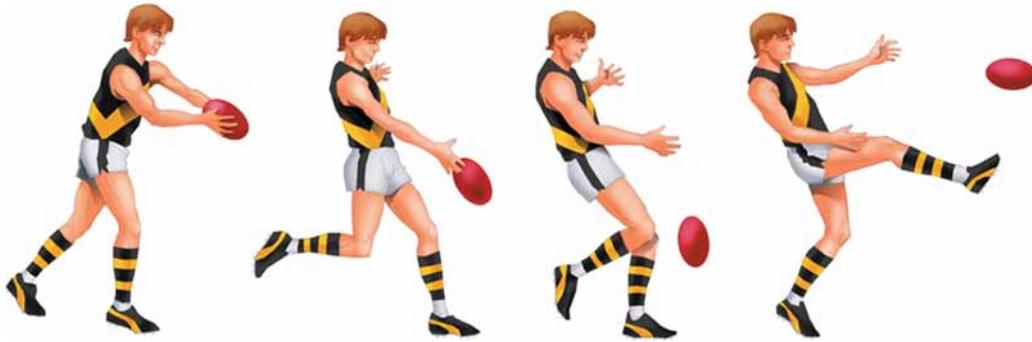
**FIGURE 8.6** Correct grip on the ball



**FIGURE 8.7** Ball flight for the drop punt



**FIGURE 8.8** The drop punt



### The chest mark



1. Watch the ball flight closely and position your body behind the flight path of the ball as soon as possible.
2. Move forward to meet the ball as it approaches.
3. Extend your fingers and hands towards the ball, keeping your palms facing upwards.
4. Keep your elbows tucked into your sides.
5. Catch the ball in your hands and arms and guide it into the chest, as shown in figure 8.9.
6. Secure the ball by letting your hands and arms close around it.

**FIGURE 8.9** The chest mark



## 8.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Drop punt practice

**Equipment:** one football per group of three

- a. In threes, kick to one another using the right foot. On your next turn, kick using your left foot.
- b. One person kicks; the second person catches and then quickly kicks to the third person.
- c. Kick to each other, first as stationary targets, then as moving targets.

### 2 Chest mark practice

**Equipment:** one football per pair

- a. Toss the ball up and mark it.
- b. With a partner, stand five metres apart, toss the ball and have your partner mark it.
- c. In pairs, perform a drop punt to your partner who then marks the ball.
- d. In groups of three, have one person kick to two people who are both attempting to mark the ball. Following five marks, rotate positions.

### 3 Drop punt practice – giving feedback

**Equipment (per pair):** one football per pair, a device capable of capturing video (e.g. tablet or smartphone), movement analysis software (optional)

- Give and receive **auditory feedback** on your drop punts. Talk to your partner about their performance (e.g. grip on ball, ball flight, release of the ball, accuracy of the kick). Use the **technique** points for the drop punt (see section 8.2.4) to help you provide feedback to your partner.
- Work with your partner to practise your drop punt. Use a blindfold or shut your eyes as you attempt to perform the kick. Your partner will provide feedback as you perform the skill. Your partner can help you guide the ball to your target. What other ways could your partner help you?
- Have a partner video your kick using a digital device. Review and discuss the video together as feedback. For additional **visual feedback**, you could use movement analysis software such as Kinovea, which you can access through the **Movement analysis software** weblink in the Online Resources.

**auditory feedback** information we receive through hearing our coach or teammate responding to our performance

**technique** the method used for performing a skill

**visual feedback** information we receive as we see our own performance



weblink

### 4 Using a digital tool for feedback

Film yourself completing the drop punt in a closed environment (kicking to a target) and in an open environment (during a game/drill).

- Compare your execution of the drill.
- Suggest two ways you could improve your drop punt in both situations.
- Think about a game and identify at least three different situations when it may be difficult to execute the skill successfully.
- Suggest how you could overcome the problems identified in part c.

### 5 Peer coaching

- Students form 3–4 teams to participate in some small-sided games. Two of the teams will play a game, while the non-playing students act as coaches.
- Each non-player is assigned an individual or team to 'coach'. Coaches observe the game for five minutes and then there is a 'coaches' timeout. During the timeout, the coaches move onto the field and provide one piece of feedback to help the individual or team to:
  - create or use space more effectively when attacking
  - defend space to restrict the movement or scoring opportunities of the opposition.
- Debrief after the lesson to discuss:
  - Examples of successfully delivered feedback.
  - Examples of players successfully implementing the feedback.

Repeat this activity across a variety of territorial, net/court, striking and fielding and target games.

### 6 Swimming evaluation

- Set up an observation plan. Use the checklist below to observe your partner. The checklist details four recommendations for freestyle and backstroke. If possible, use a device to record the skill. This will help with giving feedback.
- Have your partner perform at least 25 metres of each stroke.
- Give feedback using the checklist. In the observation column, identify which elements were performed well and which need improvement.

**TABLE 8.1** Swimming skill checklist

Freestyle	Observation
Hand enters water with fingertips and elbows higher than wrist	
Arm fully extended once entering water	
Head in neutral position and moves only slightly when breathing — body remains straight	
Body moves in straight line down the pool	
Backstroke	Observation
Little finger enters the water first	
Hips are high and head is neutral, facing the roof	
Kick is from hip with limited knee bend	
Body moves in a straight line down the pool	

### 7 Improve your swimming technique



To identify further elements of freestyle and backstroke, as well as breaststroke and butterfly, on which to focus, use the **Improve your swimming technique** weblink in the Online Resources.

### 8 Defending space



- Figure 8.10 shows an overhead view of a cricket pitch and field. The blue X's show where the fielders are positioned and the white numbers show the number of runs the batter is scoring in various zones on the field.
- Suggest ways to change the fielding positions to defend the space and restrict the amount of runs scored. Use the **Invasion games** weblink in the Online Resources for more information.

**FIGURE 8.10** How can space be better defended in this game of cricket?



## 9 Game play feedback tool

This activity brings skill execution together with game tactics and strategies. Using a tool such as the one shown in table 8.2 a few times will help you understand what to look for when giving feedback. In this activity, you will play a game and give and receive feedback using this tool. You can choose to address all of the points covered by the tool, or you could select a few to focus on. You could also record the play on a device such as a smartphone and review it after the game.

**TABLE 8.2** Game play feedback tool

Name:				Observer:	
Feedback focus points					
<b>Decision making</b>		<b>Skill execution</b>		<b>Team play</b>	
Student passes to the appropriate player. Student chooses the correct pass to use.		Pass reaches the intended target.		Student moves into spaces. Student demonstrates mobility.	
<b>Successful</b>	<b>Needs work</b>	<b>Successful</b>	<b>Needs work</b>	<b>Successful</b>	<b>Needs work</b>
Recommendations:		Recommendations:		Recommendations:	

**Equipment:** Basketball, bibs or other team allocation equipment

- Divide the class in half. Assign each person in group A (the first group that will play the game) an observer from group B. Observers will stand on the sideline and take notes using the game play feedback tool.
- Review the feedback tool before starting the game to ensure everyone understands the criteria. It is important that observers are recording all successful and unsuccessful attempts by their player.
- Set up a full basketball game with five a side. Play for five minutes, then take a break for feedback.
- Feedback should give the player an idea of the good decisions they have made and areas they should focus on in the next five minutes.
- Continue the game for a further five minutes. Players should try to implement the feedback they received.
- Stop the game. Players meet with their observers again and together make recommendations for improvement.
- Repeat the process, but this time group B plays and group A observes.

Using a game play feedback tool provides valuable information about areas of strength and areas for improvement. Use the **Game play feedback** worksheet in the Online Resources to create your own feedback tool for a court game.



doc-39395

## Resources

 **Interactivity** Types of feedback (int-6325)

## 8.2 Exercise

### 8.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

##### LEVEL 2

6, 7, 8, 10

##### LEVEL 3

9, 11

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. Feedback can only be given by a coach or teacher. True or false?
2. Feedback can only be given during the game or performance. True or false?
3. Watching video footage of your performance is an example of visual feedback. True or false?
4. **MC** Which of the following is NOT an example of external feedback?
  - A. A coach asks their players to move into space to receive a pass.
  - B. A player asks their teammate to pass the ball more softly.
  - C. The crowd cheers at a goal being scored.
  - D. A player feels the ball roll awkwardly off their fingers when shooting a basketball.
5. **MC** Feedback should be given in which of the following ways?
  - A. In clear language
  - B. In as few words as possible
  - C. In a positive manner
  - D. All of the above

### Apply your understanding

6. **Explain** why feedback is important for skill development.
7. **Describe** the technique for the drop punt.
8. **Describe** the technique for the chest mark.
9. We sometimes hear the phrase 'practice makes perfect'. **Discuss** why this may not be true.
10. **Describe** how feedback has helped you learn to perform a skill or group dance sequence.
11. **Investigate** other sports that have similar skills to the drop punt and chest mark (e.g. rugby). **Comment** on how your skill development in this lesson might help you play these related sports.

# LESSON

## 8.3 Manipulating movement concepts and strategies

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe the influence of the four movement concepts on performance.
- Select or create strategies to use in different movement scenarios.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of the strategies used to solve problems, and propose and implement alternative strategies to solve the same problem.

### 8.3.1 Taking skill development a step further

Having practised and refined our fundamental skills of performance, we can begin to incorporate concepts and strategies. By taking our knowledge of movement a step further, we can begin to influence and manipulate outcomes and performance. Rather than just taking a shot at a goal because you are in position, you may begin to think about where the defence is, if another teammate is in a better position to score and how much power or finesse you need to use to give yourself the greatest chance of scoring.

## ENGAGE

Picture yourself in the following scenario: You are given a penalty kick in soccer with only the goalkeeper to beat. You are deciding whether to kick the ball to position A or position B. This is your strategy. Which would you choose?

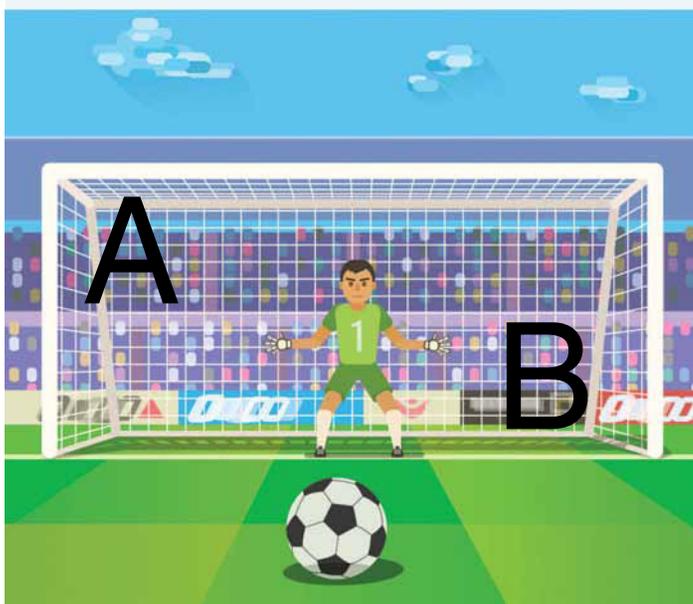
Now that you've made your strategic decision, think about the following:

- What part of the foot will you use to strike the ball?
- Are you going to use power or control to place the ball where you want it to go?
- How much space is there between the goal post and the goalkeeper?
- Does this affect your choice of strategy?

Without knowing it, you have already begun analysing a range of **movement concepts**. Let's explore these further to identify how they can shape your strategies.

**movement concepts** includes body awareness, spatial awareness, effort awareness and relationship

**FIGURE 8.11** Where would you kick the ball?



### 8.3.2 Concepts v. strategies

The four movement concepts are:

- **Body awareness** — what body parts move and how they move?
- **Spatial awareness** — where does the body move?
- **Effort awareness** — how does the body move? Should you move fast or slow?
- **Relationship** — how do you move in relation to the environment, other people and the equipment?

Let's consider the sport of soccer and break down how these movement concepts are used for the skill of passing (see table 8.3).

Once you have put all of these movement concepts together, you can create **movement strategies** to improve your chances of a successful performance or outcome.

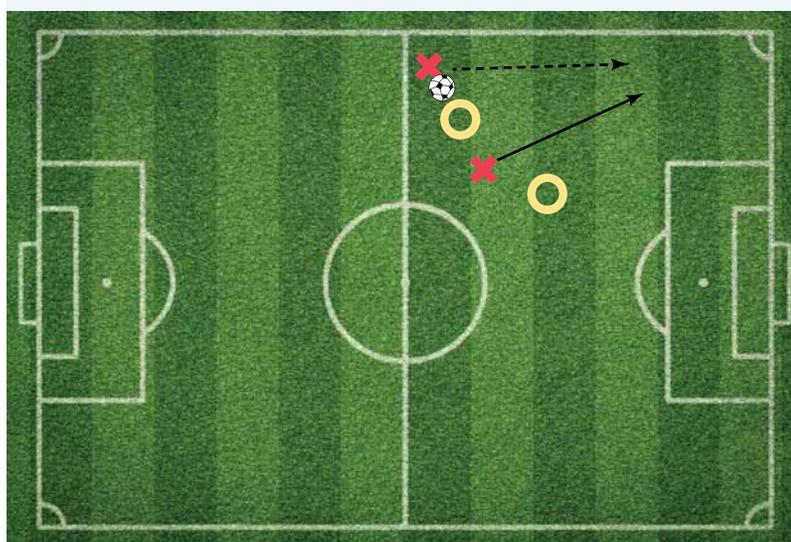
**body awareness** the ability to recognise your body's movements  
**spatial awareness** the ability to recognise the space around you and how your body moves in that space  
**effort awareness** the ability to recognise your body's movements when performing physical activities  
**relationship** the ability to recognise how your body moves in relation to the environment, other people and equipment  
**movement strategies** a variety of approaches that help a player or team achieve a movement outcome or goal

A strategy you might implement in soccer is a ‘through ball’. As shown in figure 8.12, when there is a defender (yellow) between two attacking players (red), a direct pass is difficult. Instead, a through ball can be placed into space for an attacking team member to run on the ball. Table 8.4 breaks down the movement concepts involved in a through ball pass.

**TABLE 8.3** Movement concepts for passing in soccer

Movement concept	Example
Body awareness	When passing a ball, it is obvious that you will use your foot and leg, but how should you position yourself to make the pass? What part of the foot should you use to strike the ball? How will you use your upper body in the passing movement to stay balanced?
Spatial awareness	If you are aware of the space around you on the soccer field, you can use it to your advantage. Do you have enough space to make a pass without losing the ball or having it intercepted? Do you have enough space to receive the pass? Where can you move so you are in a better position to receive a pass?
Effort awareness	Are you making a short pass or a long pass? How much power will you need to apply? How fast or slow do you need to move towards the ball to receive the pass? Too fast and you might lose control; too slow and it might be intercepted.
Relationship	In addition to thinking about your contact with the ball, you need to think about where the other people on the field are. You also need to understand where your goal is and where the opposing goal is. These are all relationships.

**FIGURE 8.12** A ‘through ball’ in soccer



**TABLE 8.4** Movement concepts for a ‘through ball’ pass in soccer

Movement concept	Example
Body awareness	The passer uses the instep of their foot to direct the ball for the greatest control.
Spatial awareness	The passer and the receiver must both be aware of the best space to play towards. This needs to be away from the defenders.
Effort awareness	The passer must use enough power to get the ball into the space. The receiver must sprint to get ahead of the defender, then slow down so they can control the ball.
Relationship	<i>To the environment:</i> awareness of the sidelines so the ball doesn’t travel out of bounds. <i>To others:</i> the attacking teammates must both anticipate the pass and then run so they meet the ball at the same time.

## DISCUSS

Discuss how movement concepts are used with the following strategies:

- Moving into space to receive a pass from a teammate in netball
- Hitting the ball away from an opponent in cricket
- Using a drop shot in tennis to make it difficult for an opponent to return the ball
- Taking a long range shot at a goal in Australian Rules football.

## 8.3 ACTIVITIES

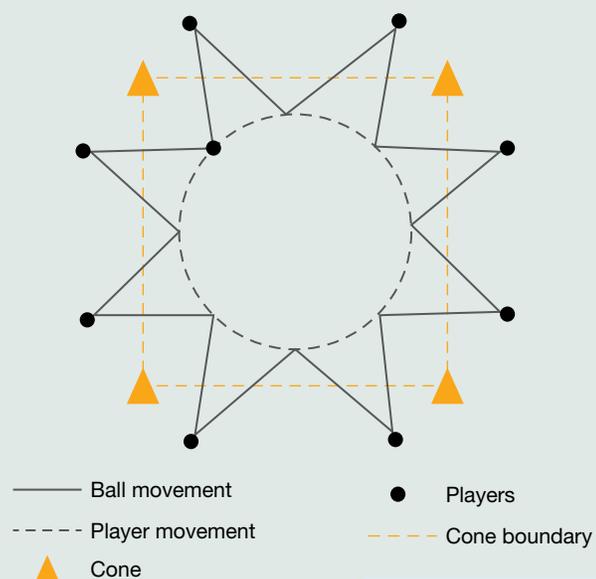
### 1 Body and effort awareness in soccer

**Equipment:** one soccer ball, four cones

Place four cones to mark out a large square. Space eight players evenly around the square. One player stands in the middle of the square with the ball (see figure 8.13).

- The player in the middle passes the ball to each of the boundary players in turn. They move around the space as they pass and receive the ball.
- Play continues until the moving player has received a pass from all boundary players.
- The boundary players should focus on the **timing** of their pass, so that they position the ball in front of the moving player. The moving player must time their run so that they meet the ball once it is passed by the boundary player.
- Once confident with the drill, another moving player could be added to the middle of the square.
- Discuss as a class:
  - What part of the foot gave the most successful pass?
  - How do you get your body into position to use that part of the foot to make the pass?
  - How did your use of power affect the quality of the pass?

**FIGURE 8.13** Passing to a moving target drill



**timing** the way the parts of a movement flow together

### 2 Relationships and the tennis serve

**Equipment:** tennis racquets and balls, marked court

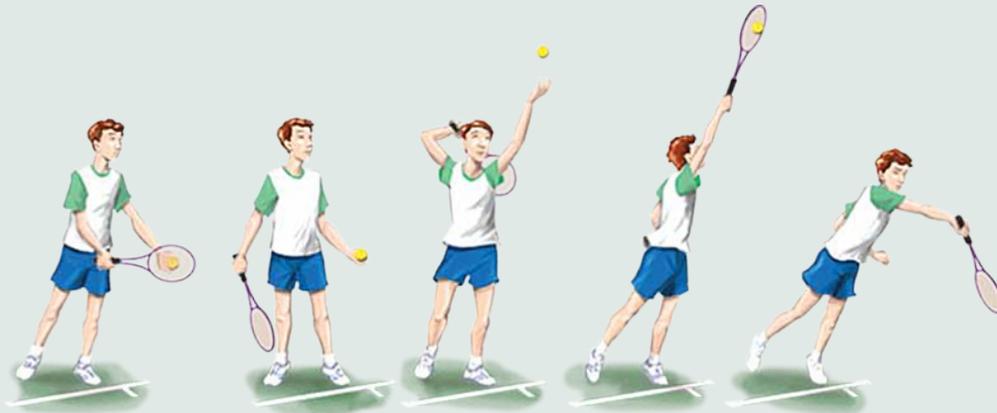
One skill that requires excellent timing is the tennis serve. This is a complex and specialised skill. The racquet needs to be taken back as body weight moves back, then the ball is tossed upwards and hit as the weight moves forward. Good timing requires the transfer of weight to be coordinated with the overhead movement of the racquet and vertical ball toss, resulting in a solid hit. Use the **Slow motion serve** weblink in the Online Resources for more information.

- Stand side-on to the direction of the serve, with most of your weight on your front foot and your racquet and shoulders pointing in the direction of the serve.
- Swing the racquet back, bending your knees a little and pushing the ball straight up into the air in front of you. If the ball were to land without being hit, it should land in front of your front foot (see figure 8.14).
- Swing the racquet forward, aiming to hit the ball after it reaches the top of the toss.
- Follow through with the racquet, bringing it down the opposite side of your body.
- The serve needs to land in the service area as indicated in figure 8.15. In small groups, continue practising the serve until you feel reasonably comfortable with the movement. Focus on placing the ball at the right height and on your rhythm as your body moves forward into the hit.

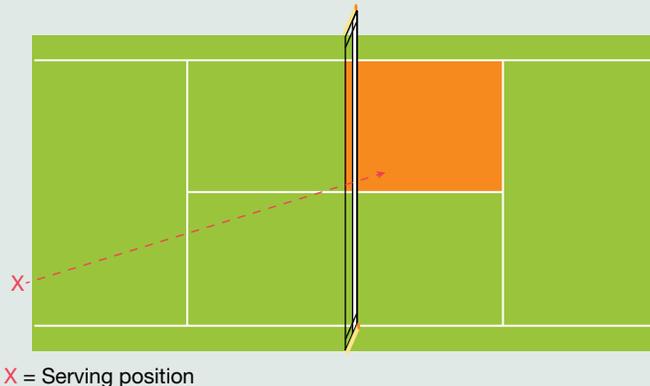
Discuss as a class how your performance and the outcome were affected by the relationship between your body and:

- the equipment (the ball and the racquet)
- the available space on the court (where you are serving from and to)
- your base of support and flow of movement when performing the serve
- your effort awareness when serving with varying levels of power.

**FIGURE 8.14** The tennis serve



**FIGURE 8.15** The tennis court and landing area for the serve



### 3 Spatial awareness in orienteering

To be successful at orienteering, students need to use simple and complex navigation skills and apply a high level of physical effort. It therefore provides both a mental and physical workout. Orienteering has been called ‘cunning running’ because the sport requires participants to navigate through different types of terrain to access a series of checkpoints (called controls) in a timed competition. Finishing the course requires an efficient running technique, the ability to move through natural terrain and the ability to anticipate and react to obstacles.

- Use the **Orienteering Australia** weblink in the Online Resources to find out more about orienteering.
- Create your own orienteering course to practise the skills of orienteering:
  - Make a map of your school grounds or use one already designed by your school.
  - Set out a simple course with a number of controls.
  - Create a more challenging course for your school and have a class competition.

Discuss as a class how you used spatial awareness to map out and move efficiently from one control to the next as quickly as possible.



## 4 Changing tactics and strategies

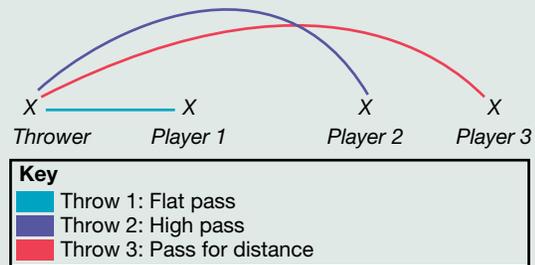
During invasion games such as netball and basketball, changing tactics and strategies is important. These activities will help you practise this.

### Recording the throw

**Equipment (per group of four):** one recording device, four cones, one netball

- Place a cone on the baseline. Place cones 2 metres, 5 metres and 8 metres away from the baseline cone and position a player at every cone.
- Prepare a recording device so it has all players in view. Start recording.
- The player at the baseline (the thrower) has possession of the ball. Their aim is to manipulate the angle of release to make a pass to each player.
- The thrower's first pass is a flat, fast pass to player 1. Player 1 then returns the pass and raises their arms in the air in a defensive stance.
- The thrower's second pass is a high pass to player 2. It needs to travel over the top of player 1's upstretched arms. Player 2 returns the pass.
- The third throw needs to travel far to get to player 3. The pass is returned and the players swap positions.
- Review the footage and make recommendations for the thrower. For example, is there enough force on the ball? Was the angle of release appropriate for the type of pass?
- The thrower attempts each pass again, using the feedback received.
- This drill can be made more challenging by making player 3 a moving attacker/defender who attempts to intercept the passes. Players 1 and 2 are placed at the 2- and 5-metre positions, while player 3 has to run to position themselves to intercept the flat pass (in front of player 1) and the high pass (in front of player 2).

**FIGURE 8.16** The 'recording the throw' activity provides feedback on throwing technique.



### Netball goal

**Equipment:** netballs, goal rings

- Place cones at various angles and distances from a netball goal ring (stay inside the goal circle).
- Take turns shooting for goal from each cone.
- Give feedback to the shooter on their angle of release (e.g. is it high enough to make it over a possible defender?).
- As confidence with the shot increases, the shooter can move further away from the goal and increase the force of the shot, while maintaining height. Students can take turns standing between the shooter and the ring with their arms raised to encourage a good angle of release.

Explore this skill further with the **Netball skills basic shot technique** weblink in the Online Resources.

### Basketball minor game

**Equipment:** basketballs, cones

Students form teams of three players. Use cones to mark out small basketball courts (approximately one quarter the size of a standard court). Each court needs to fit two teams of three players for the game detailed below.

- Team A is given possession of the ball to commence the game. The aim is to achieve five passes to fellow team members without team B intercepting a pass.

**FIGURE 8.17** To project a defender and reach the ring, the angle of release must be high when shooting.



- b. Carefully consider the passes being used and prompt your teammates to throw flat, high or long, depending on the position of other players.
- c. If team A completes five unintercepted passes, they score a point and then give the ball to team B for their turn. Play continues in this way until time is called.
- d. If the ball is intercepted during play, the intercepting team takes possession and starts their five-pass attempt.
- e. The team with the most points at the end of the session wins.

Discuss the following as a class:

- Was it easy or difficult to change tactics mid-game?
- Did changing the type of pass used create more scoring opportunities?
- Were there any unexpected results of changing strategies?

## on Resources

-  **Interactivities** Types of movement skills (int-6326)  
The tennis serve (int-6310)

## 8.3 Exercise

### 8.3 Exercise

Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 7

**LEVEL 2**

5, 6

**LEVEL 3**

8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. Passing a ball into space is an example of a movement concept. True or false?
2. Understanding the relationship between yourself, others, the equipment and the environment is important when performing a skill. True or false?
3. Altering the speed of a pass can change the outcome of the movement. True or false?
4. **MC** Which of the following is NOT a movement concept?
  - A. Body awareness
  - B. Relationships
  - C. Spatial awareness
  - D. Anticipation

### Apply your understanding

5. **Explain** the purpose of using movement strategies.
6. **Describe** how the four movement concepts influence the performance of a skill in a sport of your choosing.
7. **Name** four different strategies you could use in a sport of your choosing.
8. **Predict** the likely outcome if one team goes into a game with only one strategy while the other team is able to change strategies in the middle of a game.
9. **Justify** the use of short passes in invasion games such as Australian Rules football and netball to move the ball up the field or court into the opponent's territory.

# LESSON

## 8.4 Transferring movement strategies

### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Identify sports that use similar strategies.
- Transfer movement strategies from other contexts to solve movement challenges.

### 8.4.1 Transfer of skill

One way that athletes can improve their performance is to transfer skills from one sporting context to another. An example of two sports that allow for skill transfer is basketball and netball. They are both invasion games with similar objectives. Athletes can transfer the skill of passing between each sport as they use a similar size and shape of ball, and in both, players need to move the ball up the court in order to score a goal. Can you think of any other sports that allow for an easy transfer of skill? Can you think of creative ways to transfer skills between sports that are less similar?

The ability to transfer skills requires the use of objects such as balls, bats, clubs and racquets to play the game or participate in the activity. In this lesson, you will develop a range of different skills to use when playing your favourite games.

### ENGAGE

It is not uncommon for athletes to participate at the highest levels in multiple sports. Jana Pittman used her speed, strength and endurance to transition between the 400 m hurdles and bobsleigh. Sharni Norder was an elite netballer who moved over to play Australian Rules football. What enables these athletes to make this transition so quickly while others have to train their whole lives to reach this level? What other sports could you see athletes such as LeBron James, Sam Kerr or Buddy Franklin excelling in? Have you chosen sports that have similar skills or strategies?

**FIGURE 8.18** What other sports could Sam Kerr transfer her skills to?



## 8.4.2 Transferring skills and strategies

Games that involve moving an object from one side of a net to the other are known as court or net games. The objects involved may be a ball in volleyball and tennis, or a shuttle in badminton. Some of the actions in these sports can be transferred between sports with minor modifications. For example, the overhead serve in volleyball involves a similar action to the overhead clear in badminton.

Tactics are also transferable between sports. Learning attacking (offensive) and defending (defensive) strategies in one game can help in another. The goal in net games is to move the object away from the opposition and score a point. As you develop your game play, you should be able to play different net games and select the appropriate skill to hit the object into space away from the other team. Being able to do this takes time and practice. The activities in this lesson look at transferring the striking skills used in net games into a golf swing. We will also practise the skill of projecting an object into space and away from opponents in net games.

### 8.4 ACTIVITIES

#### 1 Fun ways to improve skill transfer

**Equipment:** hockey sticks, softball bats and gloves, assortment of balls

Use figure 8.19 as a guide when practising the following important manipulative skills:

- Hockey stick bounce* — make 10 consecutive bounces of a hockey ball on a hockey stick.
- Around the waist* — circle a basketball around your waist clockwise 20 times, then anticlockwise 20 times.
- Soccer ball bounce* — bounce a soccer ball for 10 seconds using any part of your body except your hands. Make sure the ball doesn't touch the ground.
- Pass and catch* — in pairs, make successive passes and catches of a football as quickly as possible.
- Basketball spin* — spin a basketball on the tip of your finger.
- Catching with a glove* — have someone throw a softball to you and catch it with a glove.
- Figure eight pass* — pass a basketball around and between your legs in a figure-eight pattern.
- Throw and hit* — throw a softball up and try to hit it with a bat before it hits the ground.

**FIGURE 8.19** Improving your manipulative ability

a. Hockey stick bounce



b. Around the waist



c. Soccer ball bounce



d. Pass and catch



e. Basketball spin



f. Catching with a glove



g. Figure eight pass



h. Throw and hit



## 2 The golf swing

**Equipment:** golf clubs, balls (soft rubber)

The following description is for right-handed people and should be reversed if you are left-handed.

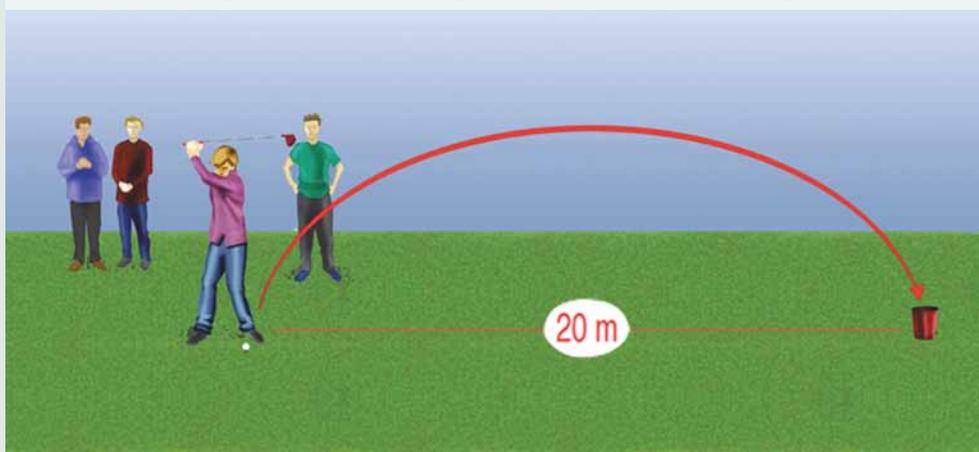
- Hold the golf club with the last three fingers of your left hand, then wrap your index finger and thumb around the grip.
- Slide your right hand onto the club just below your left hand, slightly covering your thumb.
- Flex your knees and bend forward a little at the waist.
- Gently swing the club around your body, using a big shoulder turn.
- Swing through at the ball, keeping your eye on the ball at all times.

Using soft rubber golf balls, hit a bucket placed 10–20 metres away. Gradually increase the distance as your control and execution improve.

**FIGURE 8.20** Proper execution of the golf swing requires you to feel where the club is in relation to your body throughout the movement.



**FIGURE 8.21** Using a relatively close target helps develop a fluent swing.



## 3 Projecting into space

**Equipment:** badminton racquet and shuttle per person, net, worksheet

- Download and read through the **Badminton** worksheet in the Online Resources. See also the **Badminton shorts** weblink for more information.
- Set up with a partner and hit your shuttle back and forth over the net.
- Try to manipulate the shuttle away from your opponent into space.
- Work through the worksheet, naming each shot and describing when it should be used.
- Play again, trying to use the appropriate shot.
- Refer to the rubric below and give yourself a ranking. Think about how you could improve your game play to rank higher.

doc-29231

weblink

**TABLE 8.5** Badminton game play rubric

Standard	Description
<b>Game mastery</b>	The student displays excellent decision-making skills when under pressure in a game and has an exceptional understanding of positioning and attacking and defensive game play. The student is able to select the appropriate shot in badminton to successfully execute the shot and manipulate their opponent around the court. For example, the student executes a forehand when the ball lands on the forehand side and hits the ball into space away from their opponent. The student is able to analyse their own and other class members' performances and provide in-depth feedback to improve performance.
<b>Game understanding</b>	The student displays good decision-making skills when under pressure in a game and has a strong understanding of positioning and attacking and defensive game play. The student is able to select the appropriate shot in badminton to execute the shot and manipulate their opponent around the court. For example, the student often executes a forehand when the shuttle lands on the forehand side and hits the shuttle into space away from their opponent. The student is able to analyse their own and other class members' performances and provide feedback to improve performance.
<b>Game knowledge</b>	The student displays some decision-making skills when under pressure in a game and has a sound understanding of positioning and attacking and defensive game play. The student is generally able to select the appropriate shot in badminton to execute the shot and manipulate their opponent around the court. For example, the student at times executes a forehand when the ball lands on the forehand side and hits the shuttle over the net, often into space. The student is able to analyse their own and other class members' performances and provides some feedback to improve performance.
<b>Needs game work</b>	The student displays limited decision-making skills when under pressure in a game and has some understanding of positioning and attacking and defensive game play. The student is rarely able to select the appropriate shot in badminton. For example, the student might execute a ground shot when the shuttle lands on the forehand side, and at times they can hit the shuttle over the net. The student is occasionally able to analyse their own and other class members' performances and provides limited feedback to improve performance.

#### 4 Alternative strategies

Participate in a pairs game of badminton with one team using the front and back attacking formation and the other team using the defensive side-by-side formation.

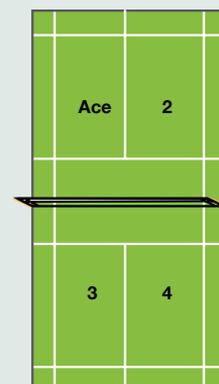
- At the end of the first game, discuss the pros and cons of each strategy.
- At the beginning of the second game, have the teams swap strategies.
- At the end of the second game, allow players to evaluate the effectiveness of each strategy.
- Allow players time to propose new strategies for attacking and defending in badminton and implement these strategies in the third game.

#### 5 Ace of the court

**Equipment:** badminton racquet and shuttle per person, net

- Set up with one player in each square of a badminton court as though you were playing doubles.
- The server is known as the 'Ace'. The player next to them is 'two', and 'three' and 'four' are opposite them (as shown in figure 8.22).
- The server must try to keep their position while other players try to move up a position.
- If a player makes an error, they move into position four and all other players move up. An error may include:
  - missing the shuttle
  - hitting the shuttle out of court
  - hitting the shuttle out of turn.
- Play the game for a designated time, then swap groups and play again.
- Reflect on the game play you used to force errors from the other players.

**FIGURE 8.22** Ace of the court set-up



## on Resources

- 🔗 **Interactivities** Types of movement skills (int-6326)  
Improving our manipulative ability (int-6311)

### 8.4 Exercise

#### 8.4 Exercise

##### Select your pathway

###### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 8

###### ■ LEVEL 2

5, 6

###### ■ LEVEL 3

7, 9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

#### Check your understanding

1. Players can transfer the skill of striking between hockey, tennis and cricket. True or false?
2. You can transfer skills between sports, but not strategies. True or false?
3. Transferring skills from another sport can create an advantage for yourself and your team. True or false?
4. **MC** Which of the following sports would allow for the easiest transfer of strategies?
  - A. Tennis and the 100 m sprint
  - B. Netball and basketball
  - C. Soccer and baseball
  - D. Lawn bowls and volleyball.

#### Apply your understanding

5. **Identify** what is meant by the term 'transfer'.
6. **Explain** why it is important to develop the ability to transfer skills and strategies.
7. **Predict** the chances of success for an athlete moving from the 100 m sprint to Rugby 7s.
8. **Identify** the similarities in skills and strategies between cricket and softball.
9. **Investigate** other athletes who have competed in multiple events at the Summer and Winter Olympic Games.
10. **Create** the ultimate athlete for a sport of your choosing using skills from different sports (e.g. the speed of a 100 m runner, the strength of a weightlifter).

## LESSON

### 8.5 Decision making

#### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Describe the decisions that need to be made in movement situations.
- Justify the use of certain strategies to gain an advantage in movement scenarios.

#### 8.5.1 Effective strategy choices

Decision making and problem-solving are essential to successful game play. In a game, we are under pressure to decide, choose and execute our actions quickly and efficiently to allow play to successfully continue. Choosing the correct action in a game involves decisions such as the timing of a pass, who to pass to or how to make space to move away from a defender to effectively receive the ball. A person who can 'read the play' possesses good

game sense. The term ‘game sense’ describes the ability to respond successfully to game situations and develop effective solutions. Making effective strategic choices leads to competence in many games.

## ENGAGE

When playing sport, you are often exposed to a range of problem-solving opportunities. How do you keep possession of the ball? How do you steal possession? How can you score points? How can you prevent the opposition from scoring points? To solve these problems, we have to make decisions. To make these decisions, we often use what worked for us last time or what we have seen others do successfully.

Play a small game of piggy in the middle in a 5 x 5 metre grid. The only rules are:

- you have to keep the ball away from the piggy
- physical contact between players is not allowed.

What strategies will you come up with to maintain or steal possession?

**FIGURE 8.23**

How can you get possession of the ball?



## DISCUSS

Consider the following statement: It is more important to learn the skills as part of the game than to master the skills on their own.

- Do you agree? Why/why not?
- Suggest when and why a game-sense approach may be the preferred model.
- Suggest when and why a traditional skills, drills and game approach may be the preferred model.

## 8.5.2 Developing game sense

We develop **game sense** through observation, practice, involvement in small games and by playing the game itself. Through experience, we develop our instincts, reactions and thoughts about what to do, where to go, which pass to make, when to kick and how to pressure an opponent. Ultimately, we become better at ‘reading the game’ and more comfortable with our team role.

Game sense is not restricted to a particular game. Experience in one game or activity can transfer to a similar game or activity, making the learning experience easier. Consider the similarities between the following types of games:

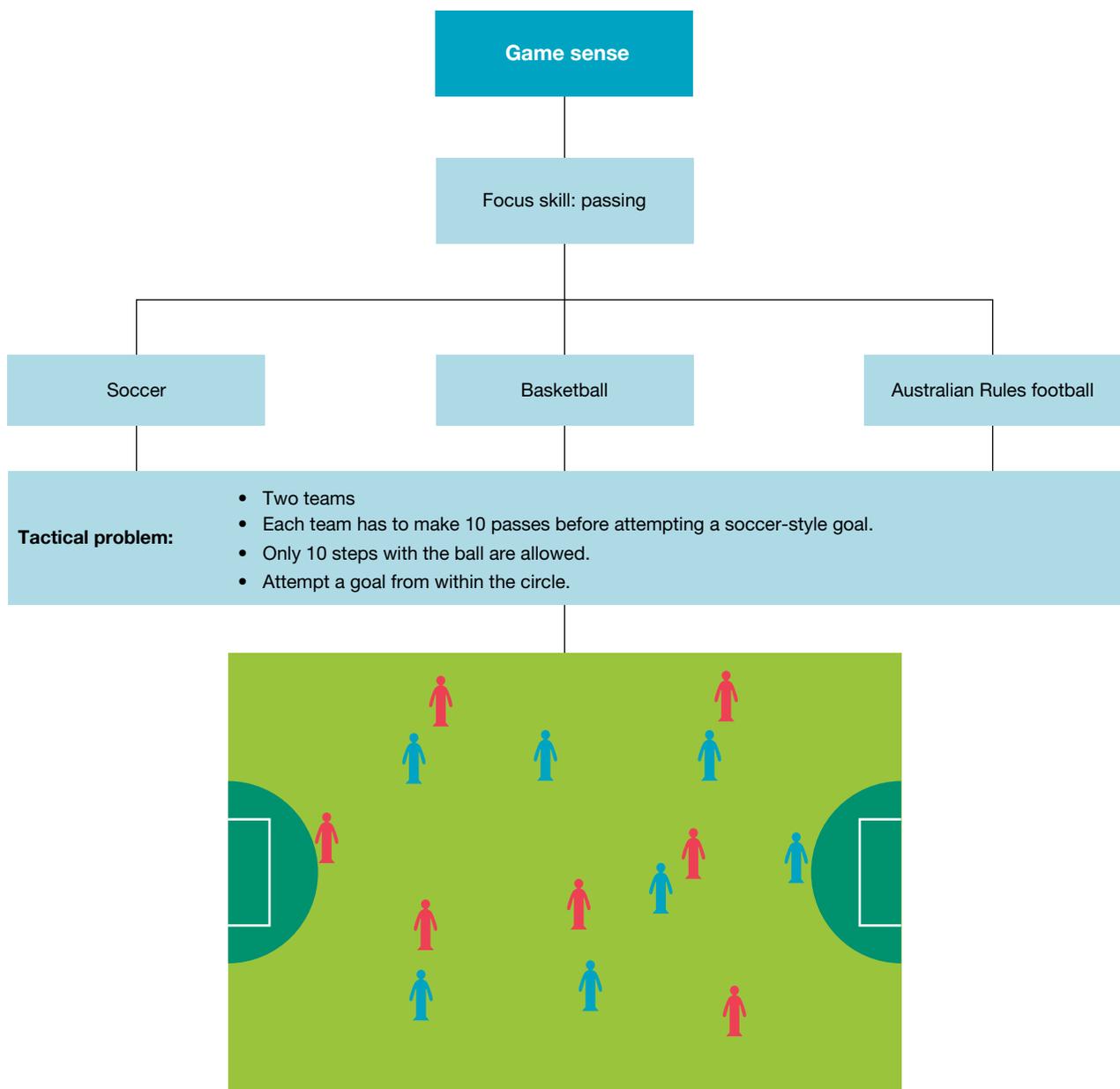
- invasion games, such as Australian Rules football, netball, soccer and basketball
- court/net games, such as tennis, badminton and volleyball
- target games, such as golf, archery, croquet and tenpin bowling
- striking/fielding games, such as cricket, baseball and softball.

**game sense** the ability to ‘read’ the game; helps us use known fundamental and specific movements, skills and understandings to make the learning of related activities easier

For each type of game (e.g. invasion games), many of the skills are similar. For example, in all invasion games, the ball needs to be passed from one player to another. While the specific methods of achieving this differ (e.g. a handball in Australian Rules football, a chest pass in netball and a spiral pass in rugby), the techniques are similar. In this example, the pass needs to be delivered to in front of a player so that the player is running towards the ball.

The activities for this lesson all focus on developing game sense. By using problem-solving exercises, such as the one in figure 8.24, you can find ways to use your skills on the field. As you become familiar with how certain techniques work, you will get better at using the same basic principles in many similarly structured games. The game-sense approach allows you to apply and develop your skills across many games, improving your learning and enjoyment of sports.

**FIGURE 8.24** As game sense develops, similar activities become easier to learn.



## 8.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Simplified soccer

**Equipment:** soccer ball, court, markers

- Set up goal lines approximately 25 metres apart. The soccer ball is placed in the centre.
- Two equal teams line up along the goal lines, facing one another (see figure 8.25). Players in each team are given the numbers 1, 2, 3 and so on.
- When the teacher calls a number, the two students (one from each team) with that number run forward and try to kick the ball past the opponents' goal line. The ball cannot be kicked higher than the players' heads.
- When the ball is kicked, the team members standing on the goal lines must try to prevent the ball from crossing the goal line. They can do this by trapping it with their feet or kicking it. They cannot touch the ball with their hands.
- When a goal is scored, teams reassemble and a new number is called. The winning team is the one that scores the most goals within a set time. This game can develop into soccer.

Discussion points for before, during and after the activity:

#### Before

- What strategies will you use if it is 2 v. 2?
- Predict the outcome of implementing these strategies.

#### During

- Do you need to adapt your strategies when it is 3 v. 3?

#### After

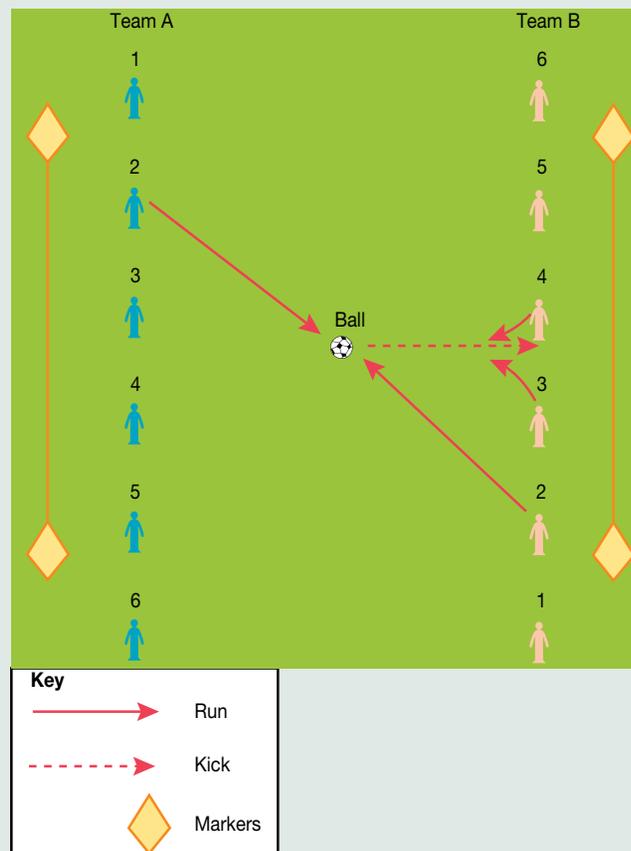
- Did you borrow strategies from any other sports to use in this game?

Use the **Simple soccer** weblink in the Online Resources for more information.



weblink

**FIGURE 8.25** Set-up for simplified soccer



## 2 T-ball

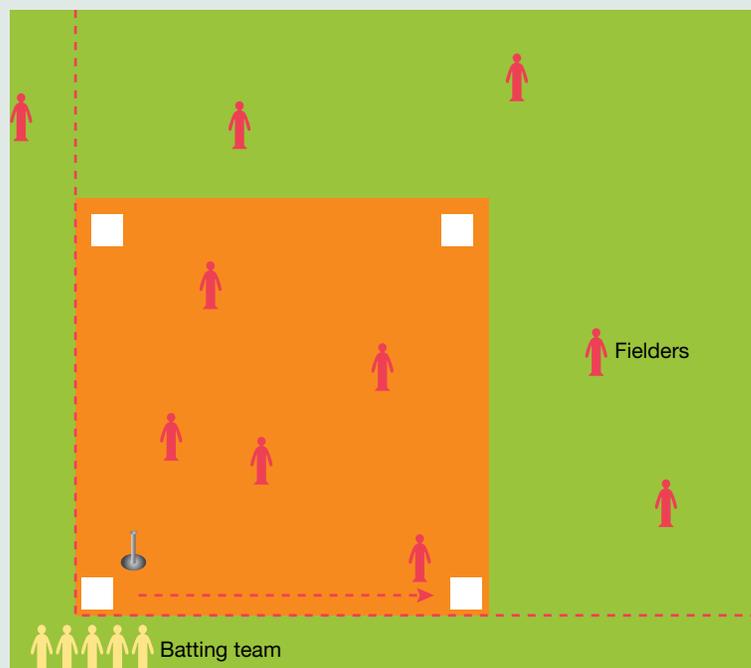
**Equipment:** T-ball stand, softball, softball bat, four bases, softball gloves, face mask, helmets, a softball diamond with bases about 15 metres apart

- Create teams of 10–12 players each. The batting team stands in batting order well away from the T-ball stand. The fielding team positions themselves on the bases and various places in between. Refer to figure 8.26 for the game set-up.
- The batter places the ball on the T-ball stand, hits it into the infield (inside the dashed lines shown in figure 8.26) and tries to run around the bases and back to home base.
- The batter is out if the ball is hit out of the field of play, caught on the full or they are tagged with the ball before getting to a base.
- If the batter chooses to wait on a base, they must remain there until the next batter makes contact with the ball on the T-ball stand.
- Batters must run in a straight line between bases. They can return to a base if the ball reaches the base ahead of them first, provided that base has not become occupied by one of their own team in the meantime.
- If the runner is forced from a base, they are out if the ball reaches the base before they get there. If the runner is free — that is, the base to which they are running is unoccupied — the runner must be tagged.
- The winning team is the team that scores the most runs.

T-ball involves many of the skills required in softball, but it is much easier to play because the ball to be hit is stationary. In softball, the pitched ball is moving rapidly towards the batter, so the hit requires good timing and **anticipation**.

**anticipation** the ability to expect or predict a particular action

**FIGURE 8.26** Set-up for T-ball



## 3 Modified hockey

*safety check* 

**Equipment:** hockey sticks, soft foam ball, bucket, court

- Devise a game in which players must use a hockey stick to get a soft foam ball into a bucket at the far end of a court. Develop rules as a class, including how far off the ground the stick may be lifted, how to block a player getting to the ball, how feet can be used to control/dribble the ball and how far it may be dribbled.
- Draft a list of safety issues, including about lifting sticks when close to other players.
- Discuss the game as a class, identifying the skills you will need to play the game effectively.
- Play the game.

Discussion points for before, during and after the activity:

#### Before

- How are the strategies to create space in hockey similar to those in soccer and netball?
- What strategies will you use to try to steal possession from an opponent?
- What types of passes will help most with maintaining possession?

#### During

- Have your strategies been effective?
- Do you think you could adjust your strategies to achieve greater success?

#### After

- Were you able to adjust your strategies effectively during the game in response to new challenges?

## 4 Invasion games

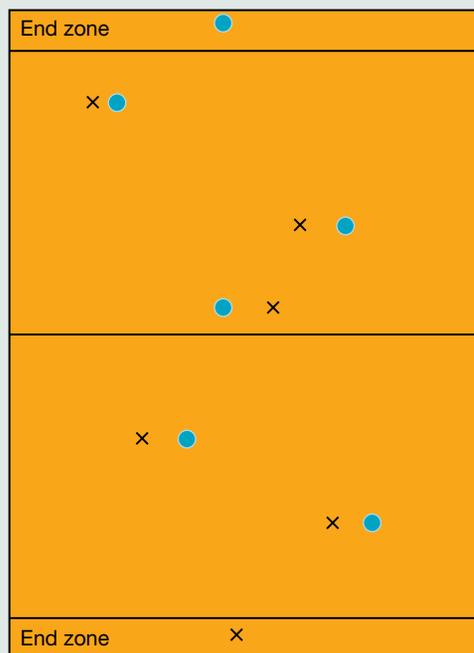
The invasion game activities below all focus on team strategies and tactics. While the sport used here is basketball, the activities can be applied to any invasion game. Use regular interval breaks to provide feedback to your teammates and seek advice from your teacher when necessary.

### Defend the end – practising the principle of attack

**Equipment:** basketballs, cones

- Divide the group into teams of five. Players should set up with one team member in the end zone and the remainder in the middle (see figure 8.27).
- The aim is to pass the ball to the player in the end zone. This scores one point.
- Players in the middle pass the ball around to each other, using the principles of attack: width, mobility and depth. No dribbling is allowed.
- After five passes, the pass can be made to the end player.
- After a point is scored (by successfully passing to the player in the end zone), or after an intercept, the other team gets possession of the ball.
- At various stages during the game, the teacher or a student should call 'stop'. Check player positions. Then, leaving the defence in the same position, reposition the attacking team if required.
- As a group, reflect on the game.
  - Discuss how repositioning the team helped to achieve the objectives. Did you retain possession, move into dangerous space or score a goal?
  - As an attacker, what type of pass worked best when a defender was in the way? Why?
  - Discuss how you might transfer these skills to another invasion game.
  - Think about how you could make this activity more challenging. Think about adding rules, equipment or more people.

FIGURE 8.27 Defend the end



## Tag ball – practising the principle of defense

**Equipment:** basketballs, cones

- Using a quarter of a basketball court, set up groups of two defenders and four attackers.
- Defenders should try to tag an attacker while they have the ball. A point is awarded to the defending pair each time a tag is made. Defenders should be swapped after each minute of play.
- During the game, ensure defenders are putting pressure on the ball and forcing the attackers into corner space. This limits their options for passing and puts pressure on the pass.
- At various stages during the game, the teacher or a student should call 'stop'. Check player positions, then, leaving the attackers in the same position, reposition the defenders if required.
- As a group, discuss how you might force a player away from dangerous space and put pressure on the ball.

## 8.5 Exercise

### 8.5 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

■ LEVEL 2

5, 6, 7, 8

■ LEVEL 3

9, 10, 11

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- Decision making is an important skill for playing sport. True or false?
- It does not matter how long it takes you to make your decision in sport. True or false?
- It is important to reflect on your past decisions to assess how effective they were. True or false?
- MC** You are trying to pass the ball to a teammate, but there is a defender in your way. You could:
  - wait until the defender moves and then pass the ball.
  - use a lob pass to pass the ball over the defender's reach to your teammate.
  - pass the ball out into space for your teammate to run on to.
  - Either B or C
- MC** You are serving in volleyball and you notice that the opposition players close to the net always jump up and spike the ball straight down. You should:
  - continue with your existing strategy.
  - serve the ball with more power.
  - serve the ball higher so that it will land near the rear of the court.
  - change your strategy for every serve.

### Apply your understanding

- Explain** what 'game sense' means.
- Select** two sports in which passing is important. **Discuss** how what you have learned in one might help you in developing your skill in the other.
- Explain** why problem-solving activities are good for developing game sense.
- For the following questions, think about when you played simplified soccer.
  - Describe** the tactics your team used to prevent the ball from crossing the goal line.
  - As an attacker, **identify** what type of pass worked best when a defender was in the way. Why?
- Discuss** the importance of field placements in hockey and T-ball.
- Investigate** another small-sided game that could be used to develop attacking skills. Devise a drill for that purpose. Use the **Small-sided soccer** weblink in the Online Resources to help you. **Justify** the choices you made when developing your drill.



weblink

# LESSON

## 8.6 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 8.6.1 What have I learned?

- Feedback is important for learning new skills.
- Feedback can come from a range of sources, including coaches, teachers and teammates.
- You can improve your skill level, problem-solving and decision making through effective practice and quality feedback.
- Movement analysis software can provide excellent feedback when learning skills.
- Skills and strategies can transfer to different games and game situations.
- Effective and successful performance in games depends on making good decisions and choosing the right actions.
- Game sense helps players 'read' the game better by improving problem-solving and decision-making skills.
- Game sense helps players transfer learning, movement concepts and strategies from one game context to another.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTION REVIEWED

How can I implement strategies and use feedback to solve movement challenges?

Evaluate your initial response to the essential question now that you have studied the topic.



#### Resources



**Interactivity** Crossword (int-8920)

## 8.6.2 Key terms

**anticipation** the ability to expect or predict a particular action

**auditory feedback** information we receive through hearing our coach or teammate responding to our performance

**body awareness** the ability to recognise your body's movements

**effort awareness** the ability to recognise your body's movements when performing physical activities

**feedback** information received about a skill or movement; can be internal or external

**game sense** the ability to 'read' the game; helps us use known fundamental and specific movements, skills and understandings to make the learning of related activities easier

**movement concepts** includes body awareness, spatial awareness, effort awareness and relationship

**movement strategies** a variety of approaches that help a player or team achieve a movement outcome or goal

**relationship** the ability to recognise how your body moves in relation to the environment, other people and equipment

**spatial awareness** the ability to recognise the space around you and how your body moves in that space

**technique** the method used for performing a skill

**timing** the way the parts of a movement flow together

**visual feedback** information we receive as we see our own performance

## 8.6 Exercise

### 8.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9

#### ■ LEVEL 2

7, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17

#### ■ LEVEL 3

14, 18, 19, 20

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. Feedback provided by a coach discussing your performance is classified as auditory feedback.	
2. Feedback is always helpful.	
3. We use our senses to receive and understand feedback.	
4. Game sense allows strategies to be readily transferred between games.	
5. An example of a transfer of skills is passing a ball in netball and passing a ball in team handball.	
6. An example of games with similar strategies is tennis and hockey.	
7. Someone with game sense can practise skills by making decisions and choosing actions for success.	
8. Tennis is an invasion game.	
9. Lawn bowls and darts are both target games.	
10. Cricket and softball are striking/fielding games.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Compare** the influence of feedback from a coach and a teammate.
12. **Identify** types of internal and external feedback.
13. **Explain** how feedback can be both helpful and unhelpful.
14. **Describe** a strategy you learned when playing a particular game that could be applied to solve similar problems in other games.
15. **Discuss** two things invasion games have in common.
16. **Outline** strategies used by fielding teams in two different striking/fielding games.
17. **Identify** three types of net/court games.
18. **Describe** how you can transfer strategies between netball and Australian Rules football.
19. **Justify** the use of different types of passes in netball.
20. **Explain** how the four movement concepts can be used in a game of your choice.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign  
unique tests and exams



Access quarantined  
tests and assessments



Track your  
students' results



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# 9 Leadership, collaboration and teamwork

## LESSON SEQUENCE

9.1 Overview .....	311
9.2 Roles and responsibilities .....	312
9.3 Teamwork .....	317
9.4 Leadership .....	322
9.5 Inclusive participation .....	328
9.6 Assessing movement performance .....	332
9.7 Review .....	339

**FIGURE 9.1** Teams are great for building skills, challenging our abilities and having lots of fun!



# LESSON

## 9.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 9.1.1 Effective teamwork

Effective leadership, **collaboration** and teamwork are essential in games and sports. These three skills also translate into other tasks that we face in life, such as working with others at school or in the workplace. To be an effective team, all members need to play their part in achieving successful outcomes.

**collaboration** working together to produce something

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- Why is leadership, collaboration and teamwork important when participating in physical activity and sport?
- How can you display good leadership, collaboration and teamwork skills when playing games?

#### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. How can we be successful and work together as a team?
2. What personal and social skills will you need to develop to be an effective team member?
3. Why is it important to include everyone in a game?

#### Resources

-  **Video eLesson** Leadership, collaboration and teamwork (eles-6026)

# LESSON

## 9.2 Roles and responsibilities

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Outline the roles and responsibilities that support good teamwork and lead to positive movement outcomes.

### ENGAGE

Teams are only one part of a much wider sporting umbrella. Competitions need to be organised and refereed, and teams need coaches, trainers and assistants. The higher the level of competition, the wider the support structures need to be. Is there a place for you in one of the many affiliated roles within sport? It is not uncommon for players to juggle a number of roles, such as coach and player.

Can you think of any other roles in sport that have not been mentioned yet?

**FIGURE 9.2** All teams need a person or people to organise them.



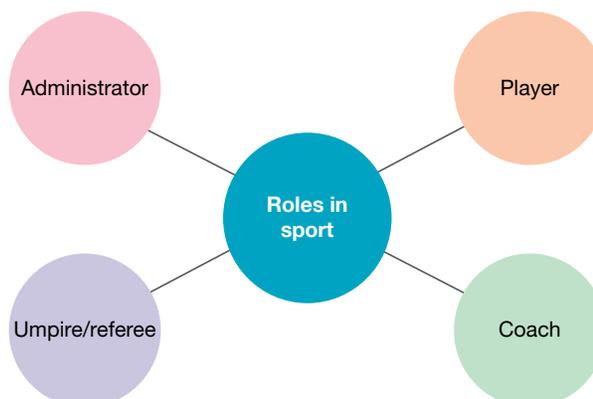
### 9.2.1 Roles in teams

We often think of teams only in terms of the players on the field. However, teams are much more than that. Even if you are unable to be one of the players, there are many other important roles that can connect you to the team. In this lesson, you will examine a few of these roles.

### 9.2.2 Roles in sport

Playing, being captain, coaching, instructing, refereeing and administration are examples of some of the roles in sport. The general role of players is well established. Among other things, they attend training, play in games, support the coach, collaborate with their teammates and perform other required tasks that assist the team.

**FIGURE 9.3** Roles in sport



Each team has a captain who must have good **leadership skills** and possess a strong understanding of the rules of the game. A good captain improves team cohesion and supports the team to aim for successful outcomes. The team captain may be elected by the players or appointed by the coach, organisation or committee. The captain makes important decisions during the game and liaises between the referee/umpire and fellow players regarding disputes and rule interpretations.

**leadership skills** the strengths and abilities individuals demonstrate to help guide and steer teammates to achieve common goals

Coaches can play a number of vital roles in helping teams achieve successful movement outcomes. Some of these are illustrated figure 9.4. They do not need to be elite athletes themselves, but they must have a good understanding of the game and be able to communicate their ideas and inspire others. They also need to have good leadership skills. The type of leader they are will change depending on the athletes they are coaching and the nature of the sport or physical activity.

**FIGURE 9.4** The role of the coach



Most sports require referees or umpires. Referees/umpires are given the highest level of responsibility for conducting a game. They need to be knowledgeable about the rules and be able to make decisions regarding their implementation. They often need to settle disputes and provide explanations to captains using their interpretation of the rules.

Finally, there is the role of administrator. This task requires good organisational and **communication skills**, as well as effective methods for helping people to work productively and within the timelines they are given. Administrators take care of tasks such as team registrations, uniforms, competition organisation and planning, as well as rewarding good sportsmanship with prizes and trophies.

**FIGURE 9.5** Referees need a good knowledge of the game's rules to be able to use them during a game.



## DISCUSS

Which of the roles do you think is the most important for a team's overall success? Which roles do you have experience with?

**communication skills** the ability to convey or share ideas and feelings effectively

## 9.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Roles in sport

Play a team sport such as soccer, netball or AFL.

- Allocate the following roles to team members:
  - players
  - coach
  - team captain
  - umpire.
- Define these roles and their responsibilities.
- Swap team roles halfway through. Compare the various responsibilities for each of the roles.
- Discuss the importance of all of the roles in a team's success.

### 2 A team captain

- Form a group with a few other students who enjoy the same sports as you. Choose one sport to examine.
- Draw a table similar to the following.

Role	Plus	Minus	Interesting
Captain			

- Brainstorm the important qualities in a potential team captain for your chosen sport. Group your ideas into the above categories. A basic example is given below.

Role	Plus	Minus	Interesting
Captain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Listens</li> <li>• Leads by example</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Too demanding</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Respected, but not the best player</li> </ul>

- Use your brainstorm to give a short presentation to the class. Discuss the importance of the qualities you selected to the team's success or otherwise.

### 3 An administrator

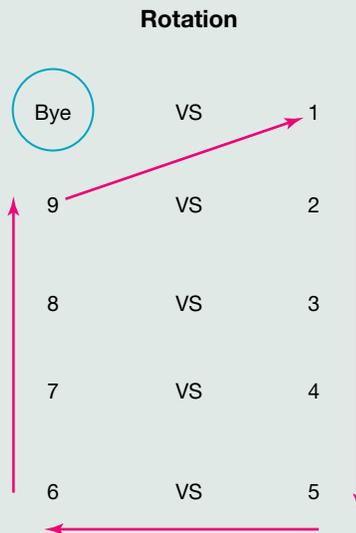
- a. You have been appointed to the match committee and are responsible for organising two competitions. One competition has eight teams and the other has nine teams. By the next committee meeting, you need to have a draw ready for consideration. How would you go about this?
- i. The first thing to think about is the number of teams. If the competition has an even number of teams, there won't be any byes. If the competition has an uneven number of teams, there will have to be a bye each week. It is much easier to use a system to make the draw rather than trying to work out matches by a process of elimination. The following figure illustrates how a system could be used to organise a draw for an even number of teams — in this case, six. The system involves holding the first numbered team and rotating the remaining teams. Use this system and structure to organise your competition for eight teams.

**FIGURE 9.6** A system for an even number of teams is to hold team number one and rotate the other teams clockwise.

Rotation	Draw				
	Week 1	Week 2	Week 3	Week 4	Week 5
	1 vs 2	1 vs 6	1 vs 5	1 vs 4	1 vs 3
	6 vs 3	5 vs 2	4 vs 6	3 vs 5	2 vs 4
	5 vs 4	4 vs 3	3 vs 2	2 vs 6	6 vs 5

- ii. To create a draw for an odd number of teams, place the bye in the top left, hold the position and rotate the remaining numbers. The draw will take the same number of weeks as the number of teams. Use figure 9.7 to complete the draw for your competition for nine teams.

**FIGURE 9.7** A system for an odd number of teams



- b. Use what you have learned to generate a round of competition for AFL.
- c. Sometimes it can be time-consuming to organise a full draw. Use the **Competition organisation** worksheet in the Online Resources to explore how to organise a round-robin competition.

## 4 A team player

**Equipment:** different types of balls

Across a number of classes, organise a team sporting competition. Play a number of short games such as touch football, soccer or basketball. Following each game, rotate roles between coach, team member and umpire/referee. After you finish playing, as a group discuss and reflect on how the different roles contributed to the success of the games.

## 5 Reflect on a team competition

Think about the competition that you organised. Compare the different games that you played and make recommendations for how to improve the competition. Could additional roles be implemented that would improve how the competition ran?

## 9.2 Exercise

### 9.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 3, 5

##### ■ LEVEL 2

2, 4, 8

##### ■ LEVEL 3

6, 7, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

- MC** A variety of roles and responsibilities are linked to the success of a team. In a soccer team, it is important that the player registrations are correct, uniforms are organised and there is communication with parents. This job is usually done by:
  - A. the coach.
  - B. a player.
  - C. an administrator, such as a team manager.
  - D. the umpire.
- MC** Identify the aspect that does NOT improve team cohesion.
  - A. Leadership
  - B. Confrontation
  - C. Collaboration
  - D. Cohesiveness
- MC** Identify whose role it is to make sure that players are kept safe and that the game is played fairly using the correct rules.

A. Umpire/referee	B. Captain
C. Coach	D. Team manager
- A team captain is always elected by the players. True or false?
- One role of a team captain is to liaise between the referee/umpire and fellow players regarding disputes and rule interpretations. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

- Explain** the role of each of the following.

a. Team player	b. Team captain	c. Coach
d. Administrator	e. Referee	
- Explain** how a round-robin tournament is organised.
- Investigate** the role of a sports trainer.
- Choose one sporting role that appeals to you. **Analyse** the pluses and minuses of the role.

# LESSON

## 9.3 Teamwork

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Identify and apply the behaviours required to develop and improve teamwork.

### ENGAGE

The backbone of teamwork is cooperation. Players have to work together to achieve a common goal and support each other to give their best performance for the benefit of the team.

Think about how a team can achieve this.



Use the **Work together** weblink in the Online Resources to discover more about the importance of teamwork.

**FIGURE 9.8** People work together in teams to achieve a common goal.



### 9.3.1 Communication is key

During team training and games, players must

- communicate and collaborate with one another
- strategise
- establish ways of arriving at important decisions
- solve problems that might arise.

Exposure to situations such as these helps to develop important personal attributes such as leadership, cooperation and good sporting conduct.

During games, various forms of communication take place among players. The ability to apply and understand various verbal, physical and situational cues is important for effective teamwork and positive outcomes.

Verbal cues include things said during the game, such as ‘pass to me I am open’. A captain can also verbally ask their teammates to take up a certain style of defence (e.g. by calling out ‘zone defence!’ in basketball). Physical cues are non-auditory but often involve signals such as hand gestures to direct the play. For example, in soccer, a player might point towards their foot in attack to indicate that they are open and want the ball passed to them. Situational cues allow players to read the situation of a game and respond appropriately. For example, a netballer needs to read the situation in defence, anticipate where the pass is likely to go and get themselves into position to make an intercept.

**FIGURE 9.9** Verbal, physical and situation cues can be used in games to communicate to teammates.



By communicating effectively, teams can identify and appropriately respond to relevant cues. This improves their chances of success.

### 9.3.2 Teamwork

Team activities provide an opportunity to:

- develop individual strengths and abilities
- develop cooperative skills
- make fitness gains
- experience personal growth.

In a rugby team, for example, the ball often passes through the hands of many players before one player scores a try. In a debating team, one of the speakers may be more skilled than the others, but the points gained by all speakers contribute to the final tally. In a medical team, the more experienced doctor may perform the most difficult procedures, but the team will work together to produce the best result for the patient.

**FIGURE 9.10** Being in a team provides opportunities to develop individual strengths and abilities.

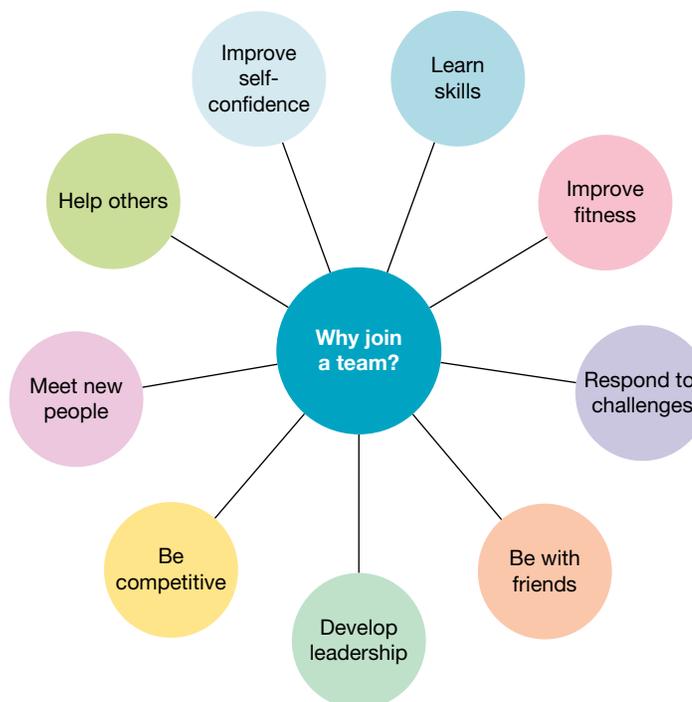


People join teams for many reasons (see figure 9.11). In most sports, teams become involved in competitions. Although these provide a challenge and enjoyment for most people, negative behaviours are sometimes displayed by other players. Common causes of unsportsmanlike conduct include:

- frustration
- anger
- parental pressure
- use of unfair tactics
- unhealthy focus on winning.

To encourage positive behaviours, it's important to accept the rules of the game and always do your best. Being able to encourage teammates and showing respect by shaking hands at the end of the game shows good sportsmanship.

**FIGURE 9.11** There are many reasons why you might join a team.



The activities for this lesson focus on developing teamwork. They will challenge your skill execution, decision-making ability and competitiveness. Hopefully, you will also be able to identify and experience some of the positive results of joining a team.

## DISCUSS

Have you thought about why you play sport? Some reasons young people are involved in sport and physical activity include:

- to be with their friends
- to have fun
- challenge and excitement
- skill development
- a sense of personal achievement
- a feeling of responsibility towards others.

What is the main reason you play sport?

## 9.3 ACTIVITIES

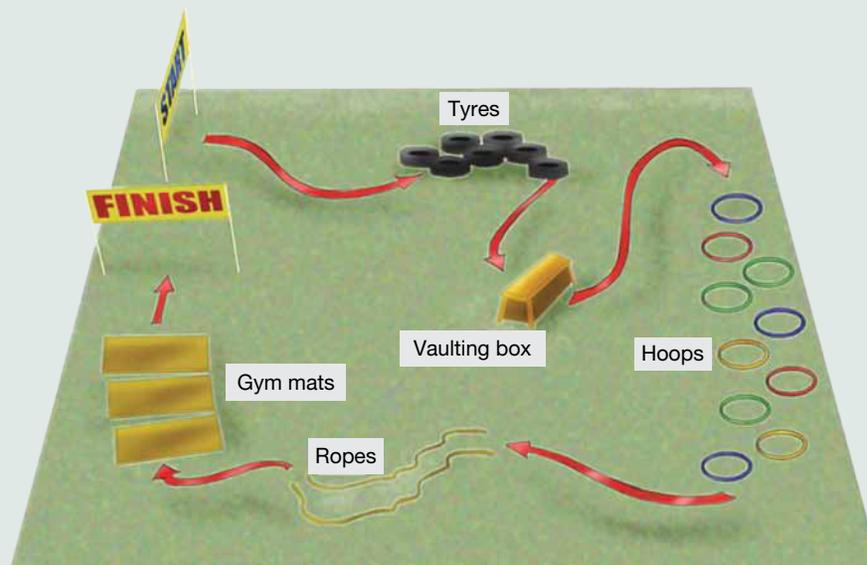
### 1 Teamwork and communication challenge

safety check 

**Equipment:** a selection of safe obstacles (see instructions), blindfolds, ties (for three-legged race), sacks, six basketballs, oval or large space

On a large area such as an oval, set up an obstacle course, as shown in figure 9.12, using safe equipment such as vaulting boxes, hoops, ropes, tyres and gym mats. Divide the class into four teams of about six or seven people. The aim is for each team to move around the obstacle course in the quickest time. However, the team has not finished until the last team member crosses the finish line. The problem will be that each team has a number of members who will require assistance: one must be blindfolded, two will have their legs tied together (as in a three-legged race) and two must remain in sacks (as in a sack race). Additionally, each team must transport six basketballs without using carrying bags. People may change roles during the activity and help one another where possible. Draw the order of teams at random and use a sheet to record each team's times.

FIGURE 9.12 A teamwork challenge course



After finishing the obstacle course, each team should discuss the following questions:

- Identify your team's strengths.
- Identify your team's weaknesses.
- Explain how you used communication to improve your team's performance.
- Explain why communication was particularly important for the teammate who was blindfolded.
- Analyse what actions you or someone else in the team initiated that led to improvement for the team or a successful outcome.

Share your responses as a class.

## 2 Developing teamwork

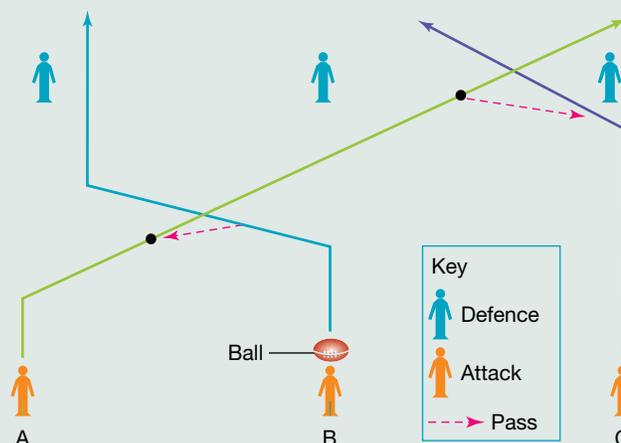
safety check 

**Equipment:** one football per group

- Study figure 9.13. It shows a simple rugby play in which three attacking players pass the ball and move right or left, forcing the defence to adjust.
  - Passes cannot travel in a forward direction (a forward pass).
  - Three players line up across the field; the middle player (B) starts with the ball.
  - As the players run forward, player B switches places with player A, passing the ball in the process (a switch pass).
  - Player A continues and switch passes to player C, who ends up in the centre.
  - Repeat from step 1.
- In groups of three, perform this move and, additionally, plan two other moves that help create space for one of your players.
- Try all three moves against three passive defensive players. As you become more comfortable with your moves, the defence can become an **active defence**, and you can increase the pace.

**active defence** defence that pressures the attack, intercepts the ball and/or frustrates the flow of play

**FIGURE 9.13** Developing special plays helps develop teamwork.



## 3 Touch

safety check 

**Equipment:** one football (any type) for every two teams, markers for goals

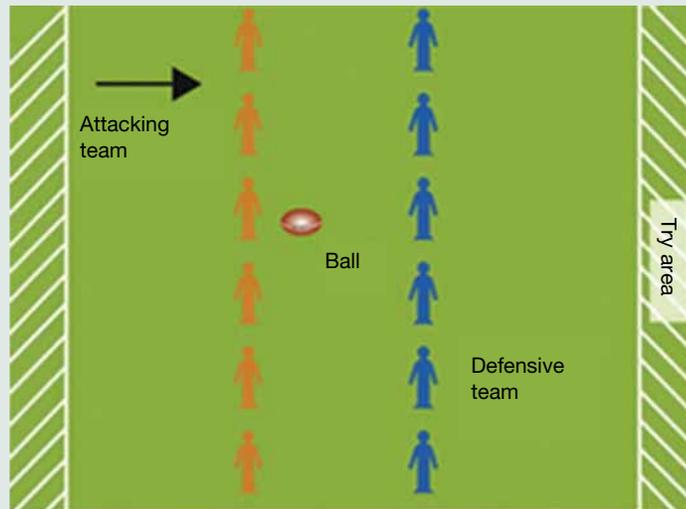
- This activity relates to invasion games and focuses on passing and avoiding being touched when in possession of the ball. Divide the class into teams of six or seven players and allocate them to areas of approximately 60 m × 50 m (see figure 9.14). Provide one team with any type of football. The aim is to cross the opponent's end line and score a try without the person in possession of the ball being touched. The ball cannot be passed forward to a player on the same team, nor can it be dropped. If this occurs, the ball is handed to the opposing team. Each team has six opportunities to score a try. If this does not happen, the ball

is handed over to the opposition. The game should be stopped if players experience difficulty with passing, if the ball is being dropped or if players are not moving forward.

- b. Once you are comfortable with this game, try some of the following variations:
- Experiment with different types of balls.
  - In any phase of play, the attacking team must make three passes before one of their players is touched; otherwise, that team loses the ball. This rule encourages players to make quick passes.
- c. Use the **Touch football** weblink in the Online Resources to find a list of positions played in touch football. Use the list of attributes for each position to identify which one you think would best suit you, and then reflect on why.



**FIGURE 9.14** Teamwork can be developed in simple activities such as avoiding being touched while in possession of the ball.



## 9.3 Exercise

### 9.3 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 4, 5

■ LEVEL 2

2, 3, 7, 8

■ LEVEL 3

6, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Teamwork enables players on the same team to come up with appropriate strategies to improve performance. These strategies are commonly referred to as:
  - tactics.
  - attacking moves.
  - defensive moves.
  - rules.
- MC** 'A champion team will always beat a team of champions' is a common saying in sport. What is the essential ingredient for a 'champion team'?
  - Skills
  - Teamwork
  - Fitness
  - Confidence

3. **MC** Which of the following is an example of a situational cue?
  - A. Giving a hand gesture that you are open
  - B. Calling out to your teammate to pass you the ball
  - C. Clapping your hands to get your teammate's attention
  - D. Going to make a pass to a teammate but seeing that they are heavily marked by the opposition, so looking for another option
4. Players need to work together in a team game to make sure they are all working towards a different, individual goal. True or false?
5. Players often have to use various forms of communication during game situations. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** four characteristics (e.g. trust) that help team members work together effectively. **Explain** how each improves team cohesion.
7. **Describe** how communication can be positive and contribute to successful outcomes for a team.
8. **Describe** how a breakdown in communication can be negative and reduce a team's chances of success.
9. **Analyse** why collaboration among team members is a vital part of the decision-making process.

## LESSON

### 9.4 Leadership

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe the roles of a leader in sport and physical activity.

#### ENGAGE

Team sports and physical activity pose many opportunities for players to become leaders. The skills you learn in relation to leadership on the sporting field are valuable and can be transferred and used in many aspects of your life.

Can you think of some specific non-sport-related examples of when leadership is important in life?

#### 9.4.1 Role of a leader

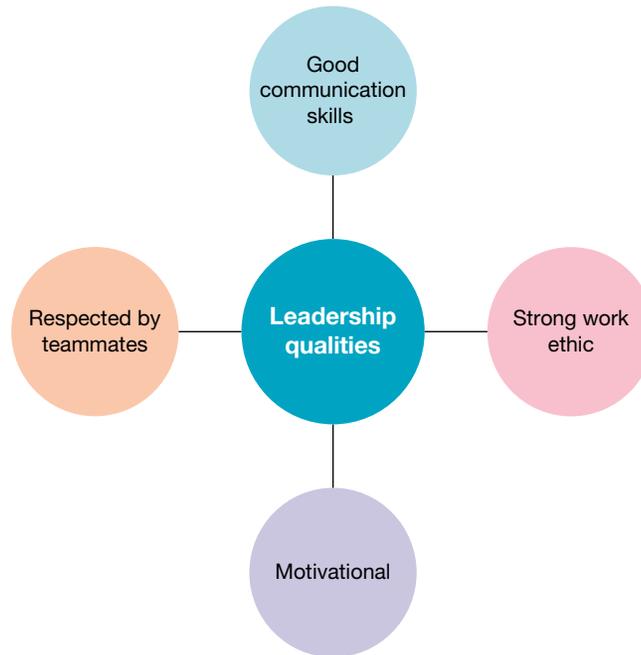
Within teams, there are always clear, defined leaders, such as the coach, captain or vice-captain. However, just because you do not have a clearly appointed leadership position does not mean that you won't have many opportunities to be a leader both on and off the field. Examples of leaders in a team that might not be formally identified can include:

- a player who actively boosts the morale of the team with praise and positive reinforcement.
- a player who always gives 100 per cent effort in training and games and leads by example.
- a player who has a lot of experience and has been playing the sport for many years, and who can share valuable knowledge and expertise with others about **tactics and strategies**.

Whether formally or informally, various roles on a sporting field involve players leading or being led by others.

**tactics and strategies** planned moves used to out-manoeuvre opponents and provide your team with an advantage; used in both attacking and defensive situations

**FIGURE 9.15** Good leaders generally possess certain qualities.



## 9.4.2 Qualities of good leaders

There are many different styles of leadership. A leader must have sufficient experience, knowledge and skills to change their style of leadership depending on the situation and desired outcome. Some of the major leadership styles, along with the strengths and weaknesses of each style, are outlined in table 9.1.

**FIGURE 9.16** Good leadership helps achieve success on the sports field.



### DISCUSS

Think about a leader in sport that you have known. Which of the leadership styles in table 9.1 did they use? Was it effective? Why or why not?

**TABLE 9.1** Leadership styles, strengths and weaknesses

Style of leadership	Strengths	Weaknesses
<i>Democratic.</i> The leader may call for a vote among the group and the majority wins. Alternatively, the leader may ask for everyone's ideas and make a decision based on the majority of views. They may try to get everyone to agree to a decision.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individuals feel important and valued.</li> <li>• The whole group has a chance to give opinions and use their experience.</li> <li>• The group is given responsibility and ownership of the decision.</li> <li>• A wider range of options are identified.</li> <li>• People have the opportunity to learn through experience.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not all group members may have the relevant experience to make a decision.</li> <li>• Creates uncertainty.</li> <li>• Conflict may result from differing opinions.</li> <li>• May take some time to reach a decision.</li> <li>• A clear decision may not be reached.</li> <li>• Can be too slow if a safety issue is involved.</li> </ul>
<i>Laissez-faire.</i> This type of leader is often disorganised, very casual and leaves decisions to chance.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can promote leadership opportunities in the group.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can result in dangerous situations emerging due to lack of leadership.</li> <li>• The group may not pay enough attention to important issues.</li> </ul>
<i>Autocratic.</i> The leader is clearly in charge. They make decisions without asking for anyone's ideas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saves time, which can be important in potentially dangerous situations, such as bad weather.</li> <li>• Responsibility is clearly held by decision maker.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removes control from the group members — they have limited input and involvement.</li> <li>• Participants may have alternatives to the leader's decisions that are not considered.</li> <li>• Levels of dissatisfaction and frustration may cause conflict.</li> </ul>
<i>Strategic non-intervention.</i> The leader observes from a distance and steps in only if the situation is becoming dangerous.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promotes group decision making and teamwork.</li> <li>• Useful in assessment situations where participants are encouraged to display leadership, such as the Duke of Edinburgh Award.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Situation may become dangerous if leader doesn't step in at the right time.</li> </ul>

## 9.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Informal and formal leadership

**Equipment:** a selection of footballs, netballs, volleyballs and basketballs

- As a class, choose a game such as soccer, netball, volleyball or Aussie Rules. Divide the class into teams and play multiple rounds of the game.
- Now appoint a leader or captain of each team. As a group and under the captain's leadership, plan a move or strategy that would help advance the ball and improve the team's opportunity for scoring. Plan your move on paper and practise it within your group. Make sure that all players have a role.
- Have teams play multiple games again and try to implement their move or strategy during the games.
- As a class, discuss the difference between the first round of games and the second. Was there a clear difference in how the team played after a leader was appointed?

### 2 Leadership activities

Complete the three challenges outlined below in groups and then discuss the questions that follow.

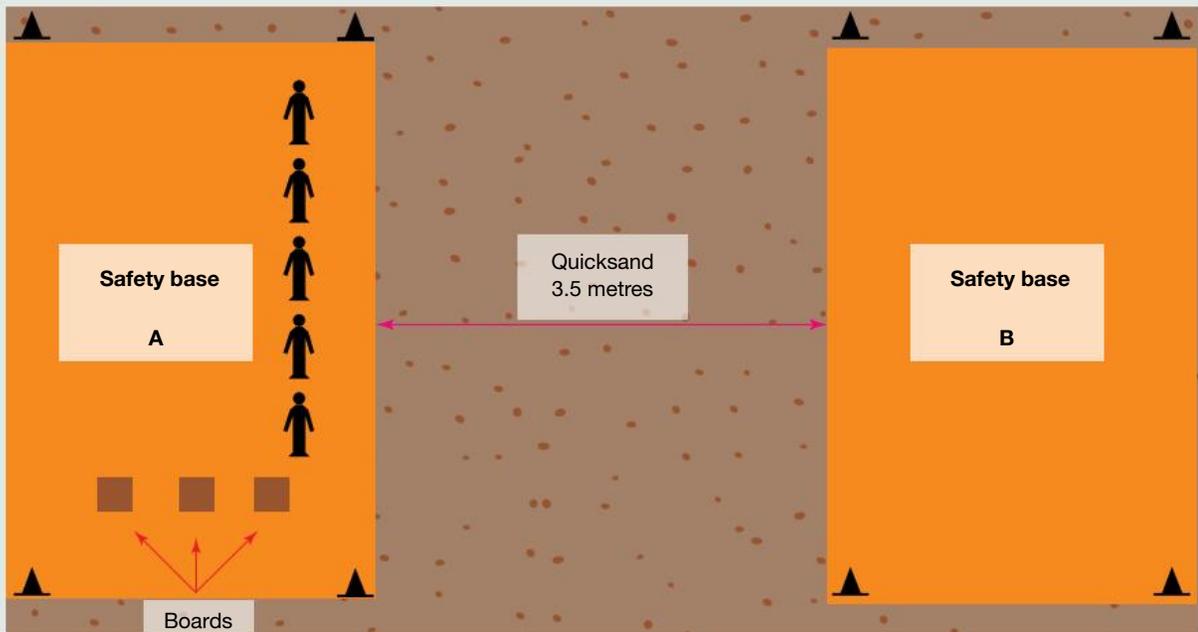
## Quicksand

safety check 

**Equipment:** eight markers, three pieces of board (each about 30 cm<sup>2</sup>)

Use the markers to outline two safety bases (A and B) that are 3.5 metres apart, as illustrated in figure 9.17. The area between the safety bases is quicksand. The aim is to work cooperatively and use the boards to get the class to move from one safety base to the other without falling into the quicksand. Students cannot stand on a board for more than five seconds or it will sink.

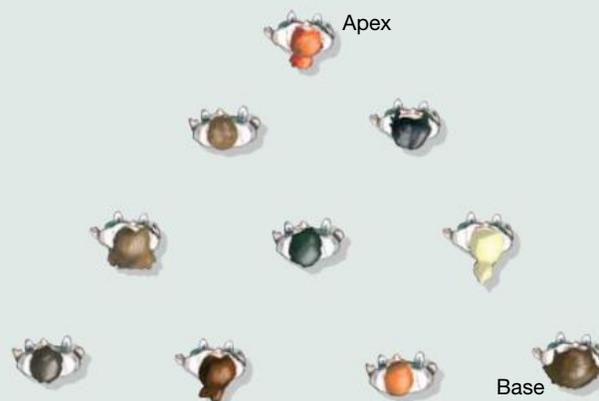
**FIGURE 9.17** Quicksand



## Flip

Divide the class into groups of ten and nominate a team captain for each group. Each group must sit or stand in a triangle, forming a 4–3–2–1 arrangement as illustrated in figure 9.18. The idea is to swap the 'base' with the 'apex' (as indicated in the figure) by moving only three people.

**FIGURE 9.18** Flip

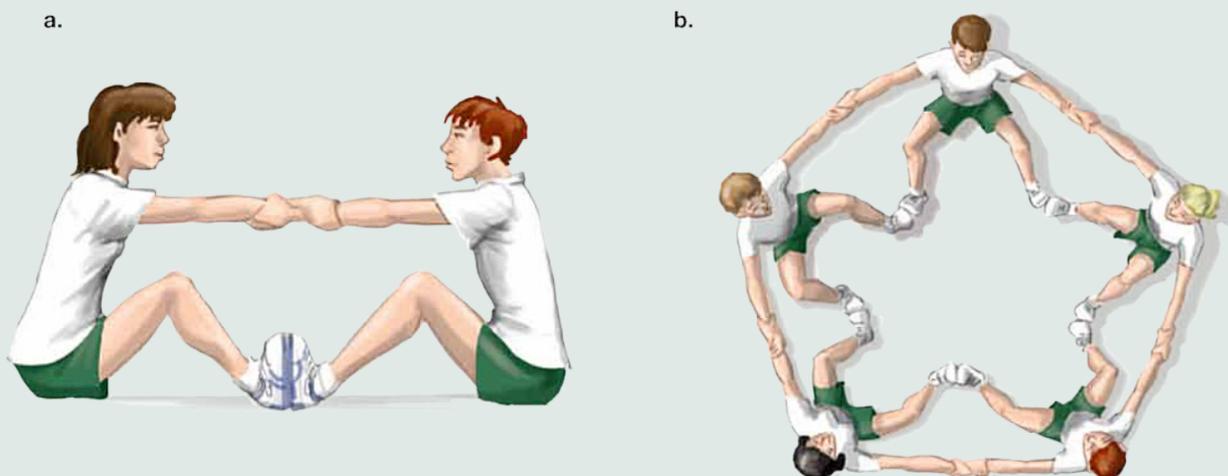


## Rise and grow

safety check 

Form pairs and sit on the ground with your hands joined and the soles of your feet together (see figure 9.19a). The aim is to try to pull each other off the ground to a standing position. When you are able to do this, form threes, fours and even larger groups and perform the same task (see figure 9.19b). See how big your group can become before the task becomes too difficult to do.

**FIGURE 9.19** Rise and grow **a.** in pairs and **b.** in groups



- Identify how your group decided what plan of action to take when completing the challenges.
- Was there a clear leader in each of the activities?
- Describe what style of leadership was implemented during each challenge. Was it effective?
- Evaluate how important it was to communicate and listen to others' ideas when coming up with a plan for each challenge.
- Assess how participation in these games helped develop leadership qualities.

### 3 Applying the right leadership style

In groups of 3–4, discuss the leadership style that would be the most effective in each of the following situations:

- coaching a junior rugby league team that is new to the sport
- confronting a fellow team member who is being rude and aggressive to the officials
- a basketball team captain suggesting a change of defensive strategy after the first quarter
- refereeing a match
- allocating positions to a netball team.

## 9.4 Exercise

### 9.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 5

**LEVEL 2**

3, 4, 6, 9

**LEVEL 3**

7, 8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which of the following is NOT a quality of an effective leader?
  - Cooperative
  - Motivational
  - Indecisive
  - Respected
- MC** An informal team leader is one who:
  - is appointed by the coach.
  - has not been officially appointed to a leadership role.
  - is the captain.
  - is the vice-captain.
- MC** Which style of leader is most likely to call a vote among team members?
  - Democratic
  - Autocratic
  - Laissez-faire
  - Strategic non-intervention
- The most effective leader is a democratic one. True or false?
- You need to be outspoken to be a good leader. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

- Identify** four characteristics that you feel are important for leaders within sport. **Explain** how they help the team achieve success.
- Assess** the impact of having too many players wanting to be a leader in one team.
- Explain** why leadership is important when planning effective team tactics and strategies.
- Describe** what style of leader you think you are.
- Reflect on** the best leader you have had during a sport or physical activity. What style of leader were they? Why do you think they were so effective?

# LESSON

## 9.5 Inclusive participation

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Investigate the modifications that can be made in order to support inclusive participation in sport and physical activity.

### ENGAGE

Everybody has the right to engage in sport or physical activity, regardless of their age, gender or ability. Sometimes, rules, equipment or scoring systems can be modified to allow all participants to be included and enjoy success.

Think about the first sport you played as a child. What modifications were made in the game so that everyone could play?

**FIGURE 9.20** In games such as basketball, younger players use smaller balls.



Certain modifications can be put in place in relation to the rules, equipment or scoring systems of sports and physical activities. This makes it possible for all participants to feel included and enjoy success. The modifications made will be specific to the sport and the participants taking part. Modifications may be needed in the following situations:

- Players are beginners, and the full version of the game is too complex for them to manage.
- Players have a disability and the game needs to be made more inclusive.
- Players have very mixed abilities (e.g. some participants have very strong skills, while others are still developing their basic skills).

Modifications in sport are a common practice. This is important to ensure that all people have access to sport and physical activity and can enjoy the benefits of engaging in lifelong physical activity.

**FIGURE 9.21** Modifications are often made during junior sport to make it more inclusive for all participants.



## 9.5.1 Rule modifications

Some common rule modifications include:

- reducing the number of players per team to increase the chances of all players being involved (e.g. soccer)
- having a greater number of players on a team to reduce the amount of activity required by each player (e.g. beach volleyball)
- grouping participants by ability rather than by age (e.g. rugby league)
- modifying the playing area by having smaller fields, courts or pitches (e.g. AFL)
- modifying the playing surface, such as playing on grass instead of asphalt (e.g. netball)
- shortening the length of time for each quarter, half or game
- creating or reducing zones that players must remain in for each position
- allowing more substitutions than is normally permitted
- reducing or extending the time to perform actions (e.g. shooting in netball)
- allowing the coach to be on the field with the players (e.g. coaching the runner in softball)
- allowing more bounces than are normally permitted (e.g. tennis)
- having underarm pitching or throwing (e.g. cricket, softball or baseball)
- allowing the ball to be hit any number of times (e.g. volleyball)
- modifying distances for defending.

**FIGURE 9.22** Modifying the size of the field is a common modification implemented for young athletes.



## 9.5.2 Equipment modifications

Some common equipment modifications include:

- using lighter bats or racquets and/or shorter handles
- using lighter, bigger and/or slower bouncing balls, or balls with bells inside
- using equipment that contrasts with the playing area (e.g. white markers on grass, fluorescent balls)
- lowering goals or nets so they aren't as high
- shortening the width and height of goals (e.g. soccer goals)
- using equipment such as a tee ball stand in sports such as baseball and softball
- having bumpers on or using a bowling ramp in tenpin bowling
- using an ice skating helper when learning how to ice skate for the first time
- using training wheels on bikes.

**FIGURE 9.23** Training wheels are added to the bikes of beginners to assist their learning to ride a bike.



## 9.5.3 Scoring system modifications

Some common scoring system modifications include:

- not scoring the game at all to reduce competitiveness and shift the focus from winning to participating
- requiring a minimum number of passes before trying to shoot or score a goal

- having multiple scoring options, such as awarding one point for hitting the backboard or ring in basketball and two points if the ball goes in
- having different scores for different players or positions on the field
- changing the scoring system for boxing and martial arts to only include shots to the torso and arms, not the head or legs.

## DISCUSS

What modifications could be made to various sports to ensure that someone who is in a wheelchair can participate?

**FIGURE 9.24** Many modifications can be made to sports to ensure all participants are included.



## 9.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Rule modifications

Pick a sport that the whole class is familiar with, such as soccer, basketball or touch football.

Decide on five additional rules that you will implement in the game that allow everyone to play successfully. Play the game as a class, with the rule modifications.

### 2 Modifications of traditional First Nations Australian games

In small groups, go to the Online Resources and access the weblink **Yulunga Traditional Indigenous Games**. Learn how to play one of the games and then consider what modifications would make it more inclusive.



weblink

### 3 Sitting volleyball

As a class, research 'Sitting Volleyball' and come up with a one-page overview of how to play the game. Play sitting volleyball as a class, and then discuss the following questions:

- Identify the major differences between sitting volleyball and traditional volleyball.
- Describe the challenging aspects of the game.
- Identify who could benefit from playing this modified version of volleyball.
- Did you enjoy this version of volleyball? Explain why or why not.

## 4 Team selection in sport



Team selection is sometimes a controversial issue in sport. Think about some of the issues related to team selection. How do you select teams fairly? What decisions need to be made to include all players? Explore the scenario in the weblink **Play by the rules: Teams** in the Online Resources.

## 5 Girls playing in boys' sports teams



You are a boy, and you play on a football team. Louisa, a girl, wants to play on your football team. Develop a list of issues that need to be considered in this situation.

Explore the scenario in the weblink **Play by the rules: Gender** in the Online Resources.

## 6 Parent involvement in sport

Create a code of conduct for ethical behaviour of parents in junior sport. Include what type of behaviour should be encouraged and what behaviour is not okay.

- What rules should be created for parents' involvement in junior sport?
- What issues should be considered?
- Should parents be involved in the selection of teams that include their children?
- Should parents be involved in coaching teams that include their children?

## 9.5 Exercise

### 9.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

#### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 4, 5

#### LEVEL 2

3, 6, 7

#### LEVEL 3

8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. Match the correct terms with their examples.

Modification	Example
a. Modified rule	A. Lower goals in netball
b. Modified equipment	B. All players must touch the ball before a point will be awarded
c. Modified scoring system	C. Fewer players on the field

2. **MC** Modifications in sport improve access for:  
A. players with a disability.  
B. players who are young.  
C. players who are beginners.  
D. All of the above
3. If you make rule modifications, you do not need to make equipment modifications. True or false?
4. Balls can be modified in games to make them easier to use. For example, they can be made lighter, bigger, fluoro-coloured, or have bells in them. True or false?
5. All children's sport should be scored and have a winner. Without this, there is no point in playing. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

6. **Identify** three modifications that could be applied to any sport.
7. In your own words, **explain** why it is important to have modifications in sport.
8. **Assess** the advantages and disadvantages of parents being involved in junior sports.
9. **Analyse** the importance of implementing modifications to equipment, rules and scoring systems for young players in a sport of your choice.

## LESSON

### 9.6 Assessing movement performance

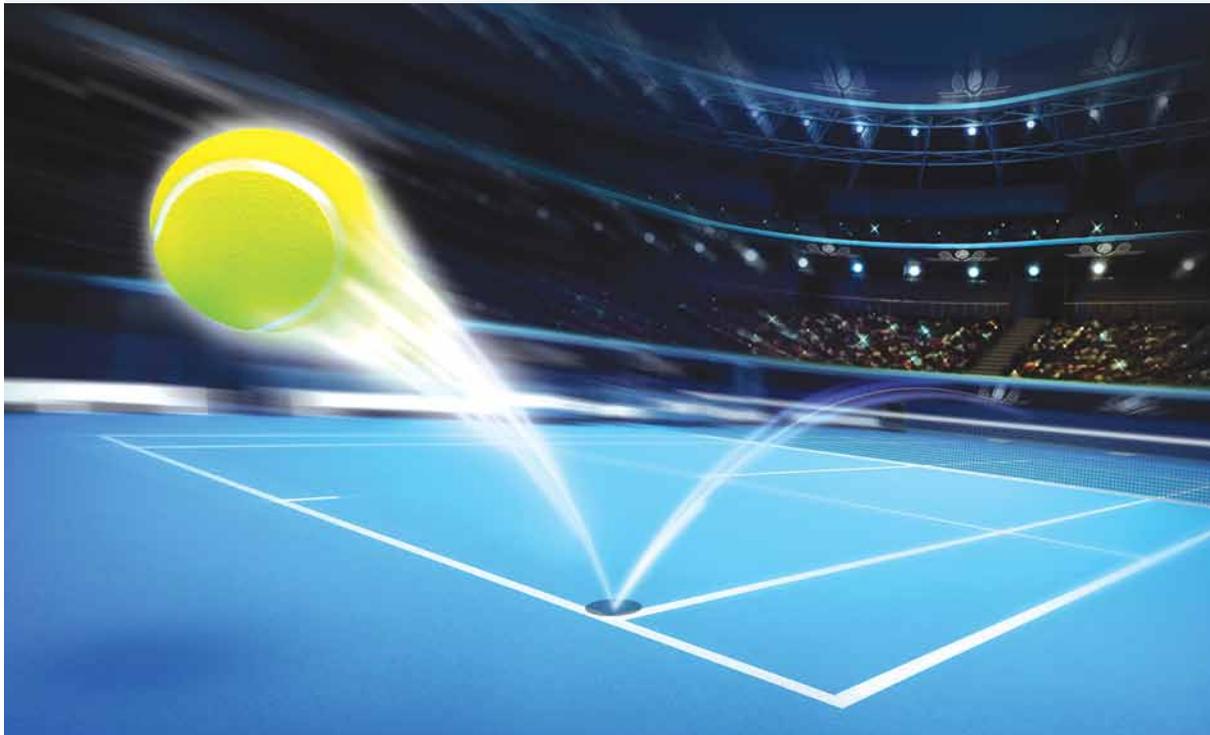
#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Apply scoring systems in activities to assess movement performances fairly.

#### ENGAGE

Many elite sports have introduced specific technologies to increase the accuracy and fairness of decisions made by officials throughout the game. What are some of these technologies?

**FIGURE 9.25** Technology can help increase the accuracy of decisions made by officials, such as whether the ball was in or out in tennis.



## 9.6.1 Objective and subjective performance scoring systems

**Objective performance scoring systems** involve the use of times, distances or guidelines to judge a performance. They include things like stopwatches or distance measures, and provide fair, consistent and accurate information about certain aspects of performance. They are used in sports such as athletics and swimming.

**objective performance scoring systems** scoring systems that use times, distances or guidelines to judge a performance

**FIGURE 9.26** Objective performance scoring systems, such as measurements of height, are used for events like high-jump.



**Subjective performance scoring systems** require a judgement of performance quality based on feelings, impressions or opinions. These are used in sports such as dance, gymnastics and aerial snow sports.

Many sports use a combination of objective and subjective performance assessments (see table 9.2).

**subjective performance scoring systems** scoring systems that require a judgement of performance quality based on feelings, impressions or opinions

**TABLE 9.2** Objective and subjective performance assessments for three sports

Activity	Objective assessment	Subjective assessment
Basketball	The throw for goal went through the basket.	The offence scored as a result of poor positional play by the defence.
100 m sprint	The sprinter completed the 100-metre race in 12.06 seconds	The body positioning looked awkward and could be improved.
Swimming	She completed the 50-metre race in 32.7 seconds.	Her slower time was caused by a faulty breathing technique.

## 9.6.2 Developing scoring systems

When assessing movement performance, it is important to develop scoring systems that help make the assessment fair and consistent. This can be done by using:

- *checklists*: lists that include elements such as style, technical correctness, sequencing and execution of the required skill
- *measurement systems*: instruments that accurately discriminate one set of data from another (e.g. measuring tapes for distance)
- *established criteria*: a set of procedures, rules or guidelines that indicate how an activity is to be assessed
- *rating scales*: a degree-of-difficulty sheet that awards more marks for movements that are difficult to perform.

**FIGURE 9.27** Checklists can be used to assess performance.



In relation to team games, statistical information can be used to assess performance. For example:

- possession skills (e.g. passes received and possessions lost)
- passing skills, including the effectiveness of the pass
- successful and unsuccessful scoring attempts
- movement patterns that indicate the type of movement (e.g. running, side stepping, jogging and shuffling backwards).

## 9.6.3 Officiating the game

**FIGURE 9.28** During less formal games, players often officiate the game.



During game play, it is important to have a person responsible for officiating the game. Officials are often referred to as referees or umpires. Their role includes things like:

- starting and stopping the game
- awarding penalties
- awarding points for successful play
- keeping score, time or distance
- ensuring the safety of participants.

Sometimes, independent officials are responsible for officiating the game, such as during weekend sport, athletics carnivals or representative school sport. During less formal games or activities, players themselves might also act as the official of the game. Both options have benefits and drawbacks, as outlined in table 9.3.

**TABLE 9.3** Benefits and drawbacks of independent versus player officials

	Independent officials	Player officials
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• They have no bias towards particular players or teams.</li> <li>• They have a strong understanding of all the rules.</li> <li>• They can make sure all safety measures are followed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Helps to learn the rules better and see play from a different perspective.</li> <li>• Is a good job for someone who is injured or can't play for another reason, so that they are still included.</li> <li>• Multiple games can be conducted at once, and players can take turns being the official.</li> </ul>
Drawbacks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• They often require payment, which might not be in the budget.</li> <li>• If only one independent official is available, only one game can be conducted at a time.</li> <li>• It makes the competition more serious and competitive, rather than about having fun.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• They might not be experienced in this role and might not know all the rules.</li> <li>• Other players might not respect them as much as an independent official and not listen to their calls.</li> <li>• Play could be dangerous if they do not make sure that safety guidelines are followed.</li> </ul>

## DISCUSS

Have you experienced refereeing? What were the positives and negatives in your experience?

## 9.6 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Tennis evaluation system

**Equipment:** tennis racquets, balls

- Set up an observation plan, using a device to record the skills. You could use the slow-motion feature on a phone or iPad, or an app such as Hudl Technique.
- Perform each of the following ten times:
  - forehand
  - backhand
  - serve and volley.
- Using the replay function on your device, evaluate each skill using the following tennis skills checklist. You can download the **Tennis skills checklist** worksheet in the Online Resources.



doc-14671

<b>Tennis skills checklist</b>	
Performer: _____	Observer: _____

Directions: Watch the performer and identify one successful element and one that needs work.

Picture of skill	Teaching points	
Forehand 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eyes on the ball</li> <li>Stands side on to target</li> <li>Steps forward with opposite foot when hitting</li> <li>Follow through around body</li> </ul>	
	Successful	Needs work
Backhand 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eyes on the ball</li> <li>Dominant hand below non-dominant hand on grip</li> <li>Step forward when hitting</li> <li>Follow through around body</li> </ul>	
	Successful	Needs work
Serve 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Preparation position with foot at service line</li> <li>Ball toss as racquet comes behind body</li> <li>Racquet head up and behind with bent elbow</li> <li>Ball is hit with extended arm so that it travels over the net</li> </ul>	
	Successful	Needs work
Volley 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Feet shoulder width apart</li> <li>Eyes on the ball</li> <li>Short backswing</li> <li>Racquet head above wrist on contact</li> </ul>	
	Successful	Needs work

d. Was this scoring system effective for assessing these movement skills? How could you adapt it to better assess the skills?

## 2 Speed test

**Equipment:** tape measure, stopwatches

Perform the speed test described below.

- Measure a 50-metre straight line on flat ground.
- Form pairs. Choose who will be the first runner and who will be the first timekeeper.
- Have a general warm-up focusing on leg stretches.
- Practise 'on your mark', 'set' and 'go'. Allow about two seconds between 'set' and 'go'.

- e. Practise starting the stopwatch on the 'go' movement; that is, the first movement forward.
- f. The runners should now go to the starting line and the timekeepers should go to the finish line.
- g. Start the runners and time them over the full distance.
- h. Allow three runs and select the best time.
- i. The runners and timekeepers should swap between each run to allow time for recovery.
- j. Take the best time for each person.

Use table 9.4 to evaluate your performance.

**TABLE 9.4** Scoring system for the 50-metre sprint

Time (seconds)		
Classification	Boys	Girls
Excellent	≤ 7.0	≤ 7.5
Good	7.1–7.4	7.6–8.2
Average	7.5–8.3	8.3–8.9
Fair	8.4–8.9	9.0–9.4
Poor	≥ 9.0	≥ 9.5

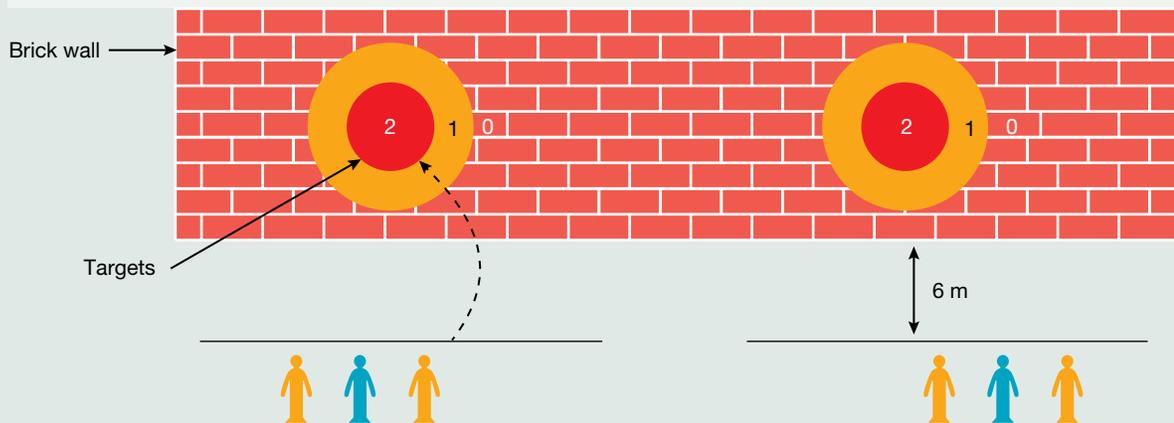
Was this scoring system effective for assessing the 50-metre sprint? How could you adapt it to better assess sprinting?

### 3 Throwing accuracy test

**Equipment:** basketballs/netballs, target

- a. Draw an inner and outer circle and a line six metres back from the target. Allow students 50 throws — 25 with the right hand and 25 with the left hand. Award two points for a hit to the inner circle, one point for a hit in the outer circle and none for completely missing the circles. Record the points gained for the left and right hands separately.

**FIGURE 9.29** How to set up the throwing accuracy test



- b. Was this scoring system effective for assessing throwing ability? How could you adapt it to better assess the skill?

### 4 Design your own

In pairs, design your own scoring system to assess movement performances in a sport of your choice. Be prepared to explain these tests to the rest of the class.

## 5 Officiating a game

As a class, decide on a sport to play. The majority of the class should be familiar with the rules of the sport chosen. As a class, prepare an overview of all the major rules of the sport. Each member then needs to familiarise themselves with the rules. Play a round-robin tournament of the sport. Make sure that each student has a chance to be the official referee or umpire.

Discuss the following questions:

- What were the positives of the experience from both the official's and players' perspectives?
- What were the negatives of the experience from both the official's and players' perspectives?
- Would these games have been different if an independent official was refereeing/umpiring?
- Share some personal reflections in relation to refereeing or umpiring.

## 9.6 Exercise

### 9.6 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

■ LEVEL 2

5, 6, 7

■ LEVEL 3

8, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Which one is NOT an objective measure?
  - Personal opinion on movement efficiency
  - Distance thrown in shotput
  - Time taken to sprint 200 m
  - Height jumped in high jump
- MC** Which of the following sports would not be deemed subjective in nature?
  - Dance
  - Diving
  - 50 m freestyle
  - Synchronised swimming
- Scoring systems such as a criteria or checklist should be implemented to make sure scoring is consistent and fair. True or false?
- Refereeing or umpiring is a great way for young people to learn a game better. True or false?
- The more subjective the scoring is, the fairer it is for all participants. True or false?

### Apply your understanding

- Explain** why it is important to assess movement performances.
- Explain** the role of feedback in improving the way we perform skills.
- What is a checklist? **Describe** how it might be used to measure skill.
- Assess** the benefits of having players referee games, rather than independent officials.

# LESSON

## 9.7 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 9.7.1 What have I learned?

- Roles in sport can include the captain, coach, instructor, referee or administration staff.
- Fitness, friendship and personal growth are important reasons for joining teams.
- Collaboration and decision-making activities improve teamwork, cooperation and spirit.
- Communication is essential to effective teamwork and positive outcomes. This includes the ability to apply and understand various verbal, physical and situational cues.
- Good leaders generally possess good communication skills and a strong work ethic, are motivational and are respected by teammates.
- Modifications can be made to the rules, equipment or scoring systems of sports and physical activities to make sure that all participants are included and can enjoy success.
- Objective performance scoring systems use times, distances or guidelines to judge performance.
- Subjective performance scoring systems require a judgement of performance quality based on feelings, impressions or opinions.
- When assessing movement performance, it is important to develop scoring systems that help make the assessment fair and consistent.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- Why are leadership, collaboration and teamwork so important when participating in physical activity and sport?
- How can you display good leadership, collaboration and teamwork skills when playing games?

Evaluate your initial response to the essential questions now that you have studied the topic.



Resources



Interactivity Crossword (int-8921)

## 9.7.2 Key terms

**active defence** defence that pressures the attack, intercepts the ball and/or frustrates the flow of play

**collaboration** working together to produce something

**communication skills** the ability to convey or share ideas and feelings effectively

**leadership skills** the strengths and abilities individuals demonstrate to help guide and steer teammates to achieve common goals

**objective performance scoring systems** scoring systems that use times, distances or guidelines to judge a performance

**subjective performance scoring systems** scoring systems that require a judgement of performance quality based on feelings, impressions or opinions

**tactics and strategies** planned moves used to out-manoeuvre opponents and provide your team with an advantage; used in both attacking and defensive situations

## 9.7 Exercise

### 9.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

##### ■ LEVEL 2

11, 12, 13, 14, 16

##### ■ LEVEL 3

15, 17, 18, 19, 20

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. A team manager is an example of a role performed in sport.	
2. The role of the coach includes conducting training sessions.	
3. Safety in sport is the sole responsibility of the coach.	
4. A round-robin tournament is a type of competition.	
5. The best player in the team is always the captain.	
6. People generally join a team to win competitions.	
7. Collaboration is an important part of working well as a team.	
8. Scoring systems help make movement assessments consistent and fair.	
9. Teamwork involves dictating strategies to other players.	
10. Communication is important to develop teamwork.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **Explain** some responsibilities and tasks that you could contribute to your team's performance.
12. **Describe** how you might modify the rules in a game to allow everyone to achieve success.
13. **Discuss** why people join teams.
14. **Explain** the importance of activities like 'teamwork challenges' in developing teamwork skills.
15. **Discuss** the importance of leadership in teamwork.
16. **Explain** why teams develop and implement tactics and strategies.
17. Why is collaboration important in games? **Discuss** how it can be improved.
18. **Describe** the role of a coach in a sporting team.
19. **Analyse** why it is important for sports to be inclusive for people of all abilities.
20. **Compare** objective performance scoring systems with subjective performance scoring systems.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign  
unique tests and exams



Access quarantined  
tests and assessments



Track your  
students' results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# 10 Health benefits of physical activity

## LESSON SEQUENCE

10.1 Overview .....	343
10.2 What is physical activity? .....	344
10.3 Physical activity and exercise guidelines for all Australians .....	348
10.4 The benefits of physical activity .....	353
10.5 Influences on physical activity .....	358
10.6 Planning and designing physical activity plans .....	365
10.7 Review .....	372

**FIGURE 10.1** Being physically active is important for people of all ages.



# LESSON

## 10.1 Overview

Hey students! Bring these pages to life online



Watch videos



Engage with interactivities



Answer questions and check results

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



Being physically active is a key component of a healthy life at all ages. There are many benefits to being active, yet many people do not do enough physical activity. To maintain healthy levels of physical activity, it is important to understand the benefits of, and barriers to, being active. Developing healthy habits when young can increase the likelihood of a person remaining active in the long term.

### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

- Why is it important for all individuals to be involved in regular physical activity?
- How can this contribute to health and wellbeing at different life stages?

### STARTER QUESTIONS

1. What types of physical activities do you do daily?
2. On average, how much sleep do you get per night?
3. On average, how much screen time for recreational purposes do you engage in per day?
4. How could you improve your sleep and physical activity levels?
5. Why might you want to improve your sleep and physical activity levels?
6. What influences your sleep and physical activity levels?



Resources



**Video eLesson** Health benefits of physical activity (eles-6027)



There are so many ways to be physically active, so it's hard to believe that the WHO estimates that one in four people globally, and 81 per cent of adolescents, do not do enough physical activity. Some reasons for this lack of physical activity include changing transport patterns, increased use of technology for work and recreation, cultural values and increasing **sedentary behaviour**.

While there is a strong relationship between increased sedentary behaviour and lower physical activity levels, these are not necessarily opposites. For example, it is possible for someone to satisfy the guidelines for physical activity, but to not meet the guidelines for sedentary behaviour. This means that even if someone is active, they might still engage in too much sedentary behaviour.

For maximum health and wellbeing benefits, both the physical activity and sedentary behaviour guidelines need to be met. It is also important to remember that both physical activity and sedentary behaviours are voluntary — they can be changed.

**FIGURE 10.3** Physical activity can take many forms.



## 10.2.2 Getting enough physical activity

Getting enough physical activity is an important part of making sure our lifestyles are balanced. Sometimes, the demands of school and work can make us feel like we do not have time for physical activity. In fact, lack of time is the most common excuse used by people who do not do enough physical activity.

**sedentary behaviour** anything that requires very low energy expenditure with little movement, such as sitting or lying down

**FIGURE 10.4** There are many forms of physical activity that can be built into our lifestyle.



By being aware of opportunities within your day when you could be more active, you can more easily build physical activity into your lifestyle. Opportunities for valuable physical activity include:

- walking part of the way to and from school rather than taking the bus the whole way
- team training
- taking stairs rather than escalators
- walking the dog
- working in the garden
- playing backyard cricket
- strolling along the beach
- going for walks
- joining activity groups, such as a HIIT or Pilates class.

In fact, if we are able to mix physical activity with periods of concentration, we will be a lot more productive in our work and study. A good balance for young people is a minimum of 60 minutes of physical activity each day. Remember that all activity is included, not just **sport**.

**sport** any institutionalised and organised practice, controlled by specific rules

## 10.2 ACTIVITIES

### 1 How do you spend your time?

Complete the table below with the different forms of physical activity, exercise and sedentary behaviour you typically do daily.

Physical activity	Exercise	Sedentary behaviour

### 2 Poster design

Create a poster for a specific audience that outlines and encourages different forms of physical activity. Make sure you include:

- what physical activity is
- the benefits of physical activity
- some activities to try.

Some ideas for audiences to target include:

- primary school children
- secondary school students
- working adults
- families
- elderly people.

## 10.2 Exercise

### 10.2 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

**LEVEL 2**

8, 10

**LEVEL 3**

7, 9

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

- MC** Identify which of the following is least likely to be considered physical activity.
  - Riding an electric scooter
  - Walking the dog
  - Dancing to 'Just Dance'
  - Riding a bike
- Most young people are active enough. True or false?
- MC** Physical activity is best described as
  - movement that needs to be planned and structured.
  - movement that raises heart rate significantly.
  - any form of movement.
  - movement to increase fitness.
- All forms of exercise include physical activity. True or false?
- MC** For maximum health and wellbeing benefits, you should aim to:
  - meet the sedentary behaviour guidelines
  - meet the physical activity guidelines
  - exercise every day
  - Both a and b

### Apply your understanding

- What is physical activity? **List** ten examples.
- Explain** how physical activity differs from exercise and sport.
- Outline** three reasons for decreased physical activity levels in young people.
- Suggest** why being active in a range of ways is likely to result in maximum health and wellbeing benefits.
- Explain** the relationship between sedentary behaviour and physical activity.

# LESSON

## 10.3 Physical activity and exercise guidelines for all Australians

### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe the physical activity and exercise guidelines relevant to children and young people.

### ENGAGE

- What does the image in figure 10.5 tell us?
- In groups, consider the equation in the image. What is it suggesting?
- Each variable (sleep, physical activity and sedentary behaviour) in the equation is a different size. What does that suggest?
- How could you represent this equation in words?
- How could you convey the same message using different images?

FIGURE 10.5 24-hour movement guidelines

Check out the 24-Hour Movement Guidelines for 5–17 year olds



### 10.3.1 Guidelines

The Australian Government’s Department of Health has developed guidelines to help children and young people maintain their health and wellbeing. Overall health and wellbeing includes **physical**, **emotional**, **cognitive** (mental) **social** and **spiritual health and wellbeing**. The guidelines specify how much physical activity, sleep and sedentary behaviour is healthy within a 24-hour period, which reflects that all three activities heavily influence people’s health.

As will be discussed in lesson 10.4, there are many benefits for children and young people (aged 5–17 years) of getting the mix between physical activity, sleep and rest right.

#### physical health and wellbeing

physiological functioning of the body

#### emotional health and wellbeing

being able to express emotions and feelings in a positive and appropriate way; includes resilience

**cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing** related to our emotions, thoughts and behaviours; affects risk of anxiety and depression

**social health and wellbeing** being able to have positive relationships with others, including family, friends, peers and colleagues

**spiritual health and wellbeing** related to our ideas, values and morals; includes a sense of purpose and belonging

TABLE 10.1 Categories of physical activity

Moderate–vigorous physical activity	Light physical activity	Muscle- and bone-strengthening activity
Activities that increase your heart rate significantly	Activities that are not sedentary but only raise your heart rate slightly	Activities that are weight bearing and that strengthen muscles and bone
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scooter riding</li> <li>Bike riding</li> <li>Swimming</li> <li>Dancing</li> <li>Soccer</li> <li>Basketball</li> <li>Football</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Walking to school</li> <li>Walking the dog</li> <li>Going to the playground</li> <li>Helping with chores around the house</li> <li>Playing handball at school</li> <li>Playing a game of street cricket</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Gymnastics</li> <li>Swinging on monkey bars</li> <li>Running</li> <li>Climbing</li> <li>Yoga</li> <li>Pilates</li> <li>Push-ups and sit-ups</li> <li>Lifting appropriate weights*</li> </ul>

Note: \* Lifting weights must be done safely with appropriate supervision, technique and weights. <https://www.health.gov.au/health-topics/physical-activity-and-exercise/physical-activity-and-exercise-guidelines-for-all-australians/for-children-and-young-people-5-to-17-years>

## 10.3.2 How much physical activity?

It is recommended that children and young people do at least 60 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity each day. This is any activity that increases your heart rate significantly and gets you ‘huffing and puffing’ a little (see table 10.1).

The full 60 minutes doesn’t need to be done all at once. It can be, and is most likely to be, completed over multiple shorter sessions throughout the day.

For a younger student, this might look something like this: 15 minutes scootering to school (on a manual scooter, rather than an electric one), 10 minutes playing tag at lunch, 15 minutes scootering back home from school and 20 minutes jumping on the trampoline.

For an older student, playing tag and jumping on the trampoline might be replaced with recreational sport or training, or maybe a morning run.

It is important that, on at least three days per week, part of the 60 minutes of physical activity includes muscle- and bone-strengthening activities. These activities are important for growth and development.

For a younger student, weight-bearing activities, such as running and climbing on playgrounds, can help strengthen their growing bodies.

For an older student, free weights and body weight circuits at a gym can be beneficial. However, before undertaking weight-based activities, it is important to know how to avoid injuries.

While time spent doing light physical activity does not contribute to the recommended 60 minutes per day, all ages are encouraged to do as much additional light physical activity as possible. This builds good habits for life, and any time spent physically active is time that isn’t spent sedentary.

**FIGURE 10.6** Having fun on the trampoline can count towards your daily physical activity.



**FIGURE 10.7** Rock climbing is one example of a weight-bearing activity.



**FIGURE 10.8** Weight training can involve free weights or body-weight activities.



### 10.3.3 Sedentary behaviour

Sedentary behaviour is anything that requires very low energy expenditure with little movement, such as being seated or lying down. As access to technology has increased, so have our levels of sedentary behaviour.

Limiting the time spent sitting or lying down, especially in front of screens, is associated with an increase in physical activity and the development of good habits for life. It is recommended that long periods of sitting are broken up. Children and young people should spend no more than 2 hours on sedentary recreational screen time per day. This includes time spent gaming, scrolling through social media and watching shows. It does not include screen time for schoolwork.

### 10.3.4 How much sleep?

**Sleep** is a natural process for the body — in fact, we spend almost a third of our lives asleep. Most adolescents need about 8–10 hours of sleep per night, with this amount decreasing as we get older. There are three stages of sleep:

- dreaming
- deep sleep
- waking.

Deep sleep is the most important stage because it is the one that best revitalises the body. Relaxation is the key to achieving deep sleep. The most useful way to make sure you get enough deep sleep each night is by being active enough during the day. Physical activity tires the muscles and later slows brain activity. For the best results, we need a balance between thinking tasks and physical activity to make our bodies tired in preparation for sleep.

After sleep, we feel refreshed and revitalised. Often, any problems we have feel less overwhelming after sleep, so they can be solved more easily. Sleep allows the brain to recharge and improves our concentration and ability to focus. Good sleep lays the groundwork for our performance throughout the day.

**FIGURE 10.9** Using active transport (e.g. walking or biking), even for part of a trip, can increase physical activity and decrease sedentary behaviour.



**FIGURE 10.10** Adolescents should be getting 8–10 hours of sleep per night.



**FIGURE 10.11** Sleep is vital for our health and wellbeing.



**sleep** a deep state of unconsciousness. Ideally, it will be uninterrupted and continue for enough time

Poor or insufficient sleep has the opposite effect. When we are tired, our brain is less able to cope with daily tasks, negatively impacting our emotional health and wellbeing. We often appear irritable and our concentration is poor. We have difficulty focusing and recalling and retaining information, which in turn negatively affects our cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing. Poor sleep can also reduce the release of human growth hormone, which is a vital component in the body's growth and repair process thereby negatively impacting our physical health and wellbeing.

The importance of sleep means that adolescents need to develop sensible habits to ensure proper sleeping patterns. Late night study, for example, can cause tension and make sleep difficult. It is important to use effective time management strategies to plan to complete work at a more reasonable time. For example, you might work best in the afternoon, or it might be better to go to sleep earlier so that you can get up and complete the study in the morning. If your mind is fresh, it will absorb much more.

### HEALTH FACT

Teenagers need as much sleep as small children. This is because the body is still growing rapidly and the brain is still developing, especially the part of the brain that is responsible for memory and dealing with emotions. Sleep is important to keep the brain refreshed and able to cope with important things, such as controlling behaviours and emotions.

It is recommended that children aged 5–13 years old get between 9 and 11 hours of uninterrupted sleep every 24 hours. For young people aged 14–17 years, the recommendation is for between 8 and 10 hours of uninterrupted sleep every 24 hours.

You can improve your sleep by putting in place consistent routines and strategies. This is often referred to as your sleep hygiene. These routines and strategies include:

- having a consistent bedtime and wake-up time
- avoiding screen time for one hour before going to sleep
- keeping screens out of the bedroom.

## 10.3 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Evaluating your physical activity and sedentary behaviour

- a. List all the physical activities you typically do in a week using the table below. (Definitions of the activity types are given in the table to help you.)

Moderate–vigorous physical activity	Light physical activity	Muscle- and bone-strengthening activity
Activities that increase your heart rate significantly	Activities that are not sedentary but only raise your heart rate slightly	Activities that are weight bearing and that strengthen muscles and bone

- b. List all the sedentary behaviours you engage in on an average weekday and weekend day. Compare this to the guidelines.
- c. List as many examples of sedentary behaviour as you can.

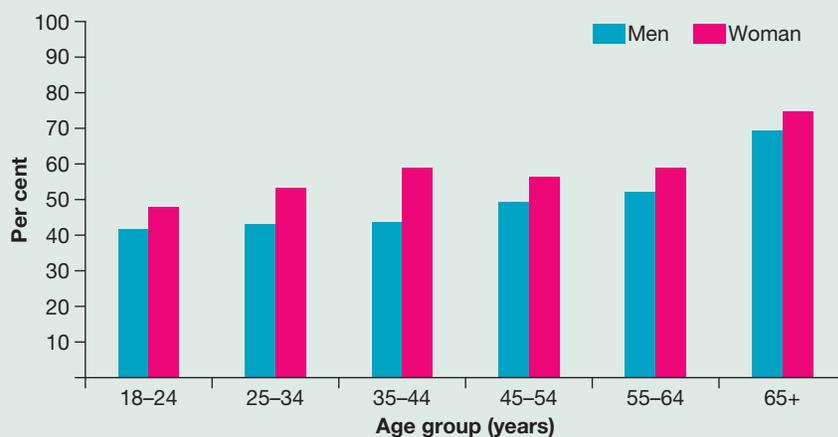
- d. For the sedentary behaviours you listed in 3, think of how these behaviours could be modified to include physical activity.
- e. If you engage in over 2 hours per day of sedentary behaviours, outline how you could swap some of these behaviours for physical activity.

## 2 Promoting good sleep hygiene

Create a poster/social media post that promotes good sleep hygiene. Make sure you include examples of good sleep routines and how to overcome possible barriers to good sleep.

## 3 Investigating data

**FIGURE 10.12** Prevalence of insufficient physical activity among adults, by age and sex, 2017–18



Source: AIHW analysis of ABS 2019

- a. Discuss what the data is suggesting.
- b. What are the implications of the data?
- c. Suggest three ways of making a positive change to the data by swapping some sedentary behaviours for behaviours that include physical activity.

## 10.3 Exercise

### 10.3 Exercise

Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

■ LEVEL 2

4, 9, 10

■ LEVEL 3

8

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. The recommended amount of physical activity for Australian children and young people is one 60-minute effort every 24 hours. True or false?
2. **MC** How many hours of uninterrupted sleep are recommended for adolescents aged 14–17 years for a 24-hour period?
  - A. At least 12 hours
  - B. 9–11 hours
  - C. 8–10 hours
  - D. 6–8 hours

3. **MC** Sedentary behaviour is:
  - A. anything that involves looking at a screen.
  - B. anything that has low energy expenditure.
  - C. any movement that does not raise your heart rate significantly.
  - D. anything that requires a device.
4. **MC** Good sleep hygiene does not include:
  - A. sleeping in on weekends.
  - B. removing devices from your sleeping area.
  - C. having a dark sleeping environment.
  - D. having a consistent bedtime routine.
5. **MC** According to the Australian Government Department of Health guidelines, children and young people should perform some kind of weight-bearing activity:
  - A. every day.
  - B. most days.
  - C. at least 3 days a week.
  - D. rarely, due to increased risk of injury.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Outline** how much and what type of physical activity per day is recommended by the Australian Government for children and young people.
7. **Outline** how much sedentary behaviour per day is recommended by the Australian Government for children and young people.
8. **Discuss** why the government provides these recommendations.
9. **Outline** the relationship between sedentary behaviour and physical activity.
10. **Outline** the relationship between physical activity and sleep.

## LESSON

### 10.4 The benefits of physical activity

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Explain the physical, emotional, cognitive (mental) and social wellbeing benefits of being physically active.

#### ENGAGE

In pairs or small groups, brainstorm the benefits of physical activity for the following aspects of health:

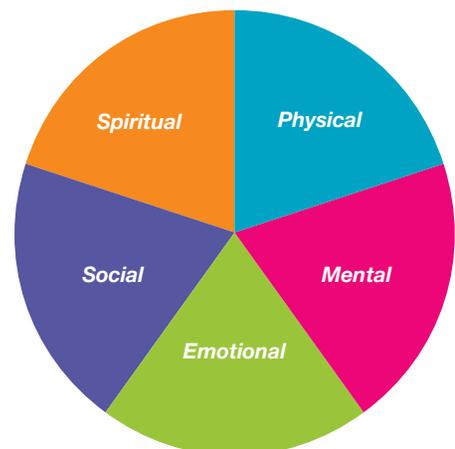
- Social — your connections and relationships with others
- Cognitive/mental — how your brain thinks and copes with everyday stresses
- Emotional — how you manage your feelings
- Physical — how your body functions
- Spiritual — your ideals, values and ambitions.



doc-39418

You may use the **Benefits of physical activity** worksheet in the Online Resources to assist.

**FIGURE 10.13** Being physically active has a wide range of health benefits.



## 10.4.1 The physical benefits of activity

Physical activity improves your physical health and wellbeing, your ability to complete daily tasks comfortably and the efficient functioning of your body systems. Some of the most obvious and significant physical changes occur in the muscular (muscles), skeletal (bones), cardiovascular (heart and blood) and respiratory (lungs) systems.

Regular physical activity strengthens bones and muscles, both of which give shape to the body. Physical activity promotes healthy bone growth, allowing us to support our own weight and perform basic motor skills (e.g. carrying objects). Physical activity strengthens the heart and makes it a more effective pump for supplying the body with oxygen and nutrients. The heart muscle needs to remain strong because it has to pump our blood every day for our entire lives. Physical activity increases the heart's ability to contract forcefully, allowing it to pump more blood into our circulatory system with each beat. Physical activity also improves breathing and the lungs' ability to take in oxygen. The harder we work, the more oxygen we need to deliver via the blood to the working muscles. This is why we breathe quicker during physical activity sessions.

**FIGURE 10.14** Swimming is an excellent physical activity to strengthen muscles, including the heart.



Physical activity has many benefits. Besides the physical benefits of increased aerobic power, strength, endurance and flexibility, regular physical activity provides:

- emotional health and wellbeing benefits, such as increased emotional control and more positive emotions
- cognitive and mental health and wellbeing benefits, such as greater focus and concentration and decreased anxiety
- social health and wellbeing benefits, such as increased connectedness with others and improved social skills
- spiritual health and wellbeing benefits, such as a sense of purpose and feeling of belonging.

## 10.4.2 Emotional health and wellbeing benefits from physical activity

Emotional health and wellbeing is described as ‘the ability to express emotions and feelings in a positive (appropriate) way. It is about the positive management and expression of emotional actions and reactions as well as the ability to display resilience’.

People who are emotionally healthy are able to appropriately control their thoughts, feelings and behaviours. They are able to cope with life's challenges. They can keep problems in perspective and bounce back from setbacks, showing **resilience**.

**resilience** the ability to recover or bounce back from challenges and/or difficulties

When we are physically active, a number of changes occur in the body that affect our physical health and wellbeing. Some of these changes support our emotional health and wellbeing, and thus our ability to appropriately manage our emotions and be resilient.

When we are active, we release more endorphins and serotonin. These hormones are associated with increased positive feelings, such as happiness, feeling good, relaxation and wellbeing. Serotonin is also a mood stabiliser that helps with emotional control.

It is important to be aware that feelings of sadness, anger and frustration can be appropriate emotions at certain times. Being physically active does not take away these feelings or the causes of those feelings. However, the release of the ‘feel good’ hormones (endorphins and serotonin) helps to manage these feelings more appropriately. This might mean that we don't let those feelings linger as long, and that we avoid taking the feelings out on those around us.

Just as physical activity can positively affect our emotional health and wellbeing, our emotional health and wellbeing can impact our willingness to engage in physical activity. For example, increased resilience allows you to persevere (continue) in physical activity efforts even when challenged. Examples include not giving up when riding your bike up a steep hill, or sticking to a game plan even if your team is being beaten by the opposition.

### 10.4.3 Cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing benefits from physical activity

Physical activity can also affect the way our minds function; that is, it can affect our cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing.

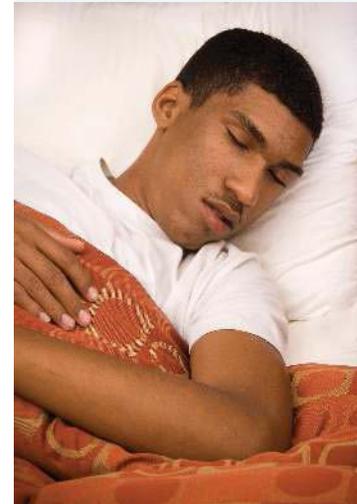
The WHO defines mental health and wellbeing as ‘a state of well-being in which an individual realises his or her own abilities, can cope with the normal stresses of life, can work productively and is able to make a contribution to his or her community’.

Being physically active positively affects our cognitive health and wellbeing by:

- improving our self-esteem and confidence
- improving the quality of our sleep
- improving our memory
- improving our ability to focus and concentrate
- helping to manage and decrease our level of stress
- releasing hormones that decrease the risk of anxiety and depression.

An important cognitive benefit of physical activity comes from getting better sleep. Getting an appropriate quality and quantity of sleep is linked to improved brain functioning, such as the ability to focus and to move learning into long-term memory. Good sleep is essential during adolescence. Research shows that being physically active can help us get to sleep easier and sooner, which increases the quantity and quality of our sleep.

**FIGURE 10.15** A good night's sleep is important.



### 10.4.4 Social health and wellbeing benefits from physical activity

In addition to the physical, emotional and cognitive (mental) benefits of physical activity, there are also a large number of social health and wellbeing benefits. Our social health and wellbeing is our ability to interact and form meaningful relationships with others. It also relates to how comfortably and successfully we can adapt to social situations.

Many physical activities are completed as part of teams, groups and clubs. Being part of a team or group requires a large number of interactions and relationships. Even if these do not always go well, working through relationship challenges and conflicts can help strengthen our social health and wellbeing in the long term.

When people think about physical activities that improve social health and wellbeing, they often think about team sports. However, all physical activities can increase our opportunities to interact and form meaningful relationships. For example, walking the dog with a friend can strengthen your relationship.

### 10.4.5 Spiritual health and wellbeing benefits from physical activity

Being involved in physical activity, especially with others or in the natural environment, can also improve your spiritual health and wellbeing.

Spiritual health and wellbeing includes our ideals, values, morals and ambitions. It gives us a sense of purpose and belonging. It is characterised by feeling connected to something bigger than ourselves. This could be a

sporting team, club, gym or the natural environment. For example, going for a bushwalk or rock climbing can give you a sense of connection to our land and natural environment.

Spiritual health and wellbeing also includes having a reason and a purpose in different situations, such as playing a role in a sporting team. Having a sense of purpose in a team or club can make it more likely you will participate and be physically active. For example, if it is your turn to create the route for the bushwalk, you will be more likely to attend. If you know your role in a team, you are more likely to train and play.

### Interview — benefits of parkrun

Below is an interview with a 24-year-old female who has been diagnosed with anxiety. In her interview, she talks about the benefits of participating in parkrun. But first, what is parkrun?

- Parkruns are free, weekly, community events. They are held all around the world.
- Parkruns are held on Saturday mornings, in parks or open spaces. The course is 5 kilometres. Junior parkruns are held on Sundays and have a distance of 2 kilometres.
- Parkruns are open to everyone. It doesn't matter how fast or slow you are, or whether you walk, jog, run or spectate.

What is it about parkrun that attracts you to it?

*While running is an individual activity generally, knowing I can join a parkrun once a week allows me to have a sense of belonging to a community and gives me some good goals to work towards.*

What are the benefits of being part of something like parkrun?

*I love seeing the regulars there every week and sharing in their progress. I love seeing the families, the groups of young people and the amazing older people. People with prams and dogs. I have met people from all different walks of life. I like that it is done in a number of places and that people all over Australia are doing what I am doing at the same time. It makes you feel like you are part of something bigger. It helps me set goals and keeps me accountable to them, rain, hail or shine.*

How has being part of parkrun helped you manage your anxiety?

*Being active is a vital part of managing my anxiety. It decreases my levels of anxiety and improves my sleep, which is a risk factor for my anxiety. It is free and easy enough to join.*

**FIGURE 10.16** Parkruns are good for physical and mental health and wellbeing and have been 'prescribed' by GPs to improve patients health and wellbeing.



## 10.4 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Recording the impact of physical activity on your emotional health and wellbeing

Many tracking apps not only record the physical components of your efforts, such as heart rate and distance, but they also allow you to indicate how you felt.

- a. Before you complete the following exercise, rank your feelings using these emojis.



- b. Complete one of the following exercises:
  - 4 x 250 m efforts with 1 minute recovery between
  - a 1 km effort.
- c. Rank your feelings immediately after completing the activity.
- d. Rank your feelings 2 or more hours after the activity.
- e. What did you notice about the impact the physical activity had on your feelings?
- f. Complete the same activity, but complete it as part of a team (4 people = 250 m each; pairs = 2 x 500 m each). Compare the effect on your feelings of completing the activity as a team compared to by yourself.

## 2 Impact of different physical activities

- a. Complete a range of different activities, such as:
  - dancing, such as by playing Just Dance
  - running, such as doing two laps of the oval
  - walking in pairs around the school grounds
  - a team sport, such as ultimate frisbee.
- b. Explain how the activities you participated in could improve your:
  - i. physical health and wellbeing
  - ii. emotional health and wellbeing
  - iii. cognitive health and wellbeing
  - iv. social health and wellbeing
  - v. spiritual health and wellbeing.

## 3 Team sport and social health and wellbeing

- a. Participate in one of the following games:
  - 1 v 1 keepings off (soccer or basketball)
  - 2 v 2 keepings off (soccer or basketball)
  - 3 v 3 basketball or 5 v 5 soccer
  - a full game of basketball or soccer.
- b. Complete 5 minutes of game time, followed by a 2-minute half-time break for team strategising. Then, play a second half.
- c. Discuss how the number of people you were playing with and against changed the social interactions.

## 10.4 Exercise

### 10.4 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

■ LEVEL 1  
1, 2, 3, 5

■ LEVEL 2  
4, 6, 7, 8, 9

■ LEVEL 3  
10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** What hormones are released as a result of physical activity?
  - A. Endorphins
  - B. Melatonin
  - C. Serotonin
  - D. Both A and C
2. **MC** Improved concentration is an example of physical activity having a positive impact on your:
  - A. physical health and wellbeing.
  - B. cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing.
  - C. social health and wellbeing.
  - D. emotional health and wellbeing.

3. **MC** Increasing your number of meaningful relationships is an example of physical activity having a positive impact on your:
  - A. physical health and wellbeing.
  - B. cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing.
  - C. social health and wellbeing.
  - D. emotional health and wellbeing.
4. **MC** Decreased levels of anxiety and a lower risk of depression are examples of physical activity having a positive impact on your:
  - A. physical health and wellbeing.
  - B. cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing.
  - C. social health and wellbeing.
  - D. emotional health and wellbeing.
5. **MC** Physical activity increases the functioning of the heart by:
  - A. increasing its size.
  - B. decreasing its size.
  - C. increasing the amount of blood in the body.
  - D. increasing the ability of the heart to contract forcefully and therefore pump blood around the body.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Explain** two benefits for your emotional health and wellbeing of being physically active.
7. **Explain** two benefits for your cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing of being physically active.
8. **Explain** two benefits for your social health and wellbeing of being physically active.
9. **Identify** how increasing your physical activity can improve your physical, social, cognitive (mental) and emotional health and wellbeing.
10. **Outline** how physical activity increases the functioning of the respiratory system (heart and lungs).

## LESSON

### 10.5 Influences on physical activity

#### LEARNING INTENTION

- Describe the influences on physical activity levels for a variety of different population groups. Include the impact of the sociocultural and natural environments.

#### ENGAGE

- List three physical activities you regularly engage in.
- Why have you chosen these?
- What influences these choices now? Will this change in the future?
- Compare your responses to those of others in the class. What is similar? What are the differences and why?

#### 10.5.1 Cultural influences on physical activity

The **cultural influences** within a community strongly influence the amount and types of physical activity that is done within that community. These cultural influences are external factors that help shape the attitudes and behaviours of an individual or group. They may include geographical location (where you live), influences of family and friends, language and religion.

**cultural influences** the external factors that help shape the attitudes and behaviours of an individual or group

**FIGURE 10.17** Australian Rules football and Rugby League vary in popularity in different parts of Australia.



Over time, cultural influences often shape the behaviours expected within a community as well as the importance placed on things such as art, religion, family and sport. In Australia, sport plays a significant part in our national culture. However, different cultural influences affect the typical sports and activities undertaken by different communities throughout Australia. For example, Rugby League is a culturally significant part of community life in states such as New South Wales and Queensland, while AFL is more popular in other states and territories such as Victoria.

In Australia, water sports are very popular because four-in-five Australians live in coastal areas. For most of the year, our climate allows access to sports such as surfing, water-skiing and boating activities. Many of Australia's top ranking physical activities are completed outdoors. Compare this to some parts of Europe, where due to their climate, skiing and European handball are more popular.

Australia's increasing diversity continues to positively influence the number of ways in which people can enjoy being active. More diverse communities provide greater variety and opportunities to enjoy different activities.

Australia also has an ageing population, which means that a large number of people are living to an older age. Therefore, it is not surprising that the physical activities with the highest participation levels in Australia are those that can be done safely throughout life, such as walking, swimming, going to the gym and cycling.

## 10.5.2 Natural and physical environmental influences on physical activity

Australia is fortunate to have a unique natural environment, and local, state and federal government policies help to ensure that it is cared for. The natural environment provides spaces (e.g. bushland or natural waterways) for people to connect with nature, even if they live in a built environment. This connection has been associated with positive mental health and wellbeing. The investment in taking care of our natural environment adds to our connectedness to nature and sense of wellbeing. It also represents an indirect investment in our health and wellbeing because maintaining sufficient green spaces improves air quality.

**FIGURE 10.18** Green spaces have a positive impact on health and wellbeing.



### 10.5.3 Benefits of being outdoors

Spending time outdoors is good for us, but Australians spend as much as 90 per cent of their time indoors. Using devices and watching screens reduces our opportunities to be active. Research conducted at the University of Rochester in New York found that individuals consistently felt more energetic when they spent time in natural settings. There are beneficial effects of being outdoors for mental and physical health and wellbeing. Being outside in nature for just 20 minutes a day is enough to boost energy levels significantly. Why does being in touch with the natural environment have this impact on our health and wellbeing? Some explanations include:

- Our internal body clock, called the circadian rhythm, is affected by exposure to sunlight. This is how our body stays in tune with night and day. When the optic nerve in the eye is exposed to sunlight, it sends a message to the brain to release the ‘feel good’ chemicals (endorphins and serotonin). People in regions that experience little sunlight for long periods (e.g. Alaska in winter) have reported negative mood states associated with lack of exposure to sunlight.
- Exposure to ultraviolet rays from sunshine provides the body with the ability to produce vitamin D. Vitamin D is required for the optimal functioning of the immune system. Vitamin D deficiency has also been associated with low mood and depression.
- Being a part of nature and the outdoors provides exposure to fresh air and open spaces, and allows us to use different senses. It decreases feelings of exhaustion and increases feelings of alertness and wellbeing, thereby increasing cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing.
- Being outdoors in green spaces produces positive feelings, leading to improved emotional health and wellbeing.
- Being in natural settings provides opportunities to participate in physical activity, which results in the release of the ‘feel good’ chemicals, increasing emotional health and wellbeing.
- The outdoors provides spaces for interacting in social groups. This connection with family, friends and community provides support and improves social health and wellbeing.
- A connection to the land and natural environment also improves spiritual health and wellbeing. An example is connection to Country for First Nations Australians.
- The outdoors is one of the few places where our eyes can ‘exercise’ over long distances. In indoor settings, we tend to use our eyes for relatively short-distance work, such as reading screens, where focal lengths are relatively short. Myopia, or short-sightedness, is a condition characterised by poor long-distance vision. Research from the University of Cambridge found that not enough time outdoors for young children could be linked to myopia.

**FIGURE 10.19** Providing facilities such as outdoor chess sets encourages people of all ages to make connections outdoors.



### 10.5.4 Health benefits of well-designed built environments

Research has shown that people living in highly walkable neighbourhoods spent almost twice as much time weekly (137 minutes) walking to complete local errands compared with those living in low walkable neighbourhoods, and about half as many residents were overweight. This suggests that well-designed neighbourhoods that have safe, open spaces might deliver important social, physical and emotional health benefits.

Many governments invest significant amounts of money in the creation of spaces that encourage physical activity, such as skate parks, bike tracks and equipment. They also invest in maintaining these and ensuring they are safe, due to the community health benefits. Important safety features include appropriate lighting and maintenance around walking tracks, fences around playgrounds and signs about how to use the equipment.

## Social health and wellbeing benefits

Natural spaces promote social contact by bringing people together, and create a more connected and cohesive community. There are many opportunities for social interaction in a natural environment. Examples include family camping trips, kicking a ball in the park with friends, going bike riding and walking to the shops. Having a strong social network, such as friends, family and peers, can promote mental health and wellbeing and reduce stress.

## Physical health and wellbeing benefits

Being in open spaces provides an opportunity to be active. A recent study conducted by the University of Western Sydney found that green neighbourhoods encourage walking, as well as more intense forms of exercise, such as jogging and team sports. It showed that access to green spaces gave more people the opportunity to do regular physical activity — more than once per week.

**FIGURE 10.20** Tai chi, a Chinese martial art, is practiced outdoors to take advantage of the energy of nature. It is used as a form of exercise to reduce stress.



## Emotional health and wellbeing benefits

Just being part of the natural environment has positive mind–body benefits. Connecting with nature has a ‘de-stressing’ effect on the mind. As a result, your physical body experiences a reduction in muscle tension and heart rate. Natural settings provide spiritual inspiration and time for reflection. Nature can bring calmness to the body as we fill our lungs with fresh air and stretch our limbs.

## Spiritual health and wellbeing benefits

The connection with the environment is especially evident in First Nations Australians’ cultures, in which the environment provides food, culture, spirit and identity. The land is considered sacred to First Nations Peoples and their connection with the land is the most important identity-shaping relationship. Their belief is that if the land is treated well, it will provide well for you and your family. This is reflected in the saying ‘if you look after Country, Country will look after you’. This connectedness and respect for the land is part of the way First Nations Australians ‘care for Country’. This oneness with Country is shown by the link between the wellbeing of an individual and the wellbeing of the land.

## 10.5 ACTIVITIES

### 1 Investigating Marngrook

Watch the **Marngrook** video in the Online Resources and read about its history in the article **Indigenous influence on AFL creation**. Then, answer the following questions:

- Identify how Marngrook influenced physical activity.
- Explain how including Marngrook in schools could positively impact the physical activity levels of Australian children.
- Identify the influences that act as barriers or enablers for the game of Marngrook.

### 2 Comparing physical activity levels

**TABLE 10.2** Top 10 physical activities

Children (0–14)	Boys	Girls	Australians
Swimming	Swimming	Swimming	Walking (recreational)
Football/soccer	Football/soccer	Dancing (recreational)	Fitness/gym
Gymnastics	Australian football	Gymnastics	Swimming
Dancing (recreational)	Basketball	Netball	Running/athletics
Australian football	Cricket	Football/soccer	Cycling
Basketball	Tennis	Basketball	Football/soccer
Netball	Running/athletics	Running/athletics	Bush walking
Tennis	Rugby league	Tennis	Tennis
Running/athletics	Gymnastics	DanceSport	Yoga
Cricket	Karate	Australian football	Basketball

Consider the top 10 physical activities for Australian children and Australians in table 10.2.

Why do you think this is the case? Identify what influences participation in these forms of physical activity.

### 3 Group presentation

In groups of three, research and play a culturally significant sport from the following list. Select a presentation tool that you are unfamiliar with, such as **Prezi**, to build your ICT skills.

- Seprak takraw from South-East Asia
- Lacrosse from North America
- Gaelic Football from Ireland

**FIGURE 10.21** Seprak takraw participants going head to head.



weblink



weblink

Your report should contain the following:

- a. the name of the sport or activity
- b. the country or culture of origin
- c. how the game has evolved over the years
- d. the basic rules and regulations of the activity
- e. why you think this activity is popular in this culture
- f. how culture has shaped the importance of this game or activity; this may include the religion of the people, the environment, historical events, and so on
- g. an explanation of how the game can be modified to enable the class to play safely.

Now, you are ready to play!

#### 4 Research and play

Identify an activity that is unique to a First Nations Australian community that can be played by your class. Present the activity to the class and explain the rules. As a class, participate in this culturally significant activity. (Note: You may modify the activity so it can be safely played in your school.) Use the **Indigenous games and activities** weblink in the Online Resources to research and choose your game.



weblink

#### 5 Improvised game

Your task is to create your own game. In groups of four or five, design a game that can be played by your class at school.

- a. Decide on the playing venue.
- b. Based on the playing venue, select the appropriate number of players per team.
- c. What is the aim of the game? How do teams score?
- d. In your group, decide on the rules of the game. Consider ways to make the game fast, safe and fun.
- e. Does the game enable maximum participation among the players?

Now that you've designed your game, it is time for the class to try it. After setting up the playing area, explain the rules and scoring to the class. Start playing the game or activity. You will need to stop the game immediately if it appears that the rules you created are inappropriate for ensuring the safety of the class. After a certain period (determined by the teacher), call the teams in and get some feedback. This could include suggestions about improving enjoyment levels, safety, pace and the rules of the game. Try to implement some of the feedback. Then, play the game again.

- f. After class, write down your reflections on the game.
  - Identify the strengths and weaknesses of the game.
  - Suggest how it could be improved further.
  - Did the class enjoy the game?
  - Were some participants not engaged? Why?
  - Was your game influenced by cultural factors, such as the games that you play and enjoy?
  - Was the game limited by the environment, such as the weather (forcing an inside game) or lack of facilities?

#### 6 Fresh air gym

Use the **Fresh air gym** weblink in the Online Resources. Read the article, and then answer the following questions.

- a. Identify the health benefits of an outdoor gym.
- b. Describe the positive and negative aspects of an outdoor gym.
- c. Explain why an outdoor gym is considered 'better' than an indoor gym.
- d. List the environmental factors that need to be considered before installing an outdoor gym.
- e. Propose alternatives for an outdoor gym without expensive equipment.
- f. Analyse the wider community benefits of this facility.



weblink

## 10.5 Exercise

### 10.5 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4

##### LEVEL 2

5, 6, 7, 9

##### LEVEL 3

8, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** Cultural influences are not likely to include:
  - A. how much money you can spend on physical activity.
  - B. family.
  - C. friends.
  - D. geographic location.
2. The climate of Australia influences the type of physical activity we do. True or false?
3. Exercising outdoors can have a positive influence on a person's eyesight. True or false?
4. **MC** Having access to safe, natural green spaces is most likely to:
  - A. negatively impact physical activity levels.
  - B. positively impact physical activity levels.
  - C. have no impact on physical activity levels.
  - D. increase sedentary behaviours.
5. **MC** Select all options that apply. Exercising outdoors can positively impact sleep as it:
  - A. makes you tired.
  - B. boosts energy levels.
  - C. helps regulate your body clock.
  - D. increases exposure to Vitamin D.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Outline** how the built environment can enable physical activity levels and therefore positively impact health and wellbeing.
7. **Outline** how the natural environment can enable physical activity levels and therefore positively impact health and wellbeing.
8. Being active in any way has many benefits. **Discuss** how being active outdoors can have added benefits compared to being active indoors.
9. Using a physical activity of your choice, **describe** how cultural influences could impact participation in that activity.
10. Walking tracks can be costly to create and maintain, yet many governments easily justify this cost. **Propose** why.

# LESSON

## 10.6 Planning and designing physical activity plans

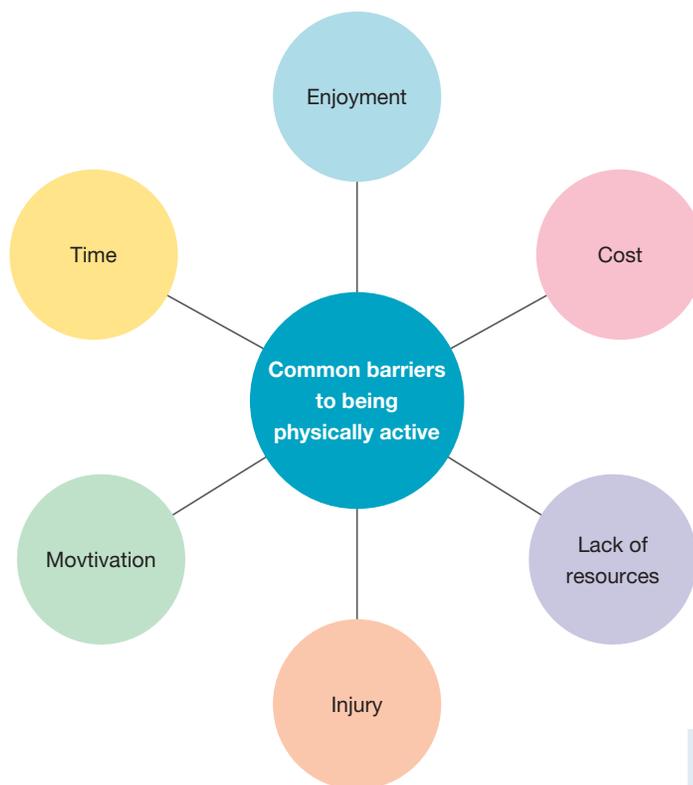
### LEARNING INTENTIONS

- Evaluate physical activity levels against the physical activity and exercise guidelines.
- Identify barriers and enablers to modify, and plan for increased adherence to the guidelines.

### ENGAGE

Consider figure 10.22. On your own, list the **barriers** and excuses you have faced when trying to improve your physical activity. Compare your list to a partner. As a class, discuss the most common barriers. Do these barriers differ by gender? Would these barriers be the same for 7-year-olds, 18-year-olds or the elderly? Why or why not?

**FIGURE 10.22** There are many barriers to engaging in physical activity.



**barriers** things that prevent a desired behaviour from occurring

To know how to improve your habits, it is important to evaluate your current behaviours against the recommendations. This gives us greater control over the choices we make about our health and wellbeing. It can help us identify areas for improvement and set realistic goals for positive behaviour change.

### 10.6.1 Evaluating your physical activity, sedentary behaviour and sleep

Step 1 — Record your current levels of physical activity, sleep and sedentary behaviour, ideally for at least a week. Many apps can help with this, but a diary generally allows for the most detail. New apps are developed regularly, but widely used tracking apps include Strava, Garmin connect, Apple health and Samsung health.

Step 2 — Find your daily average amount of moderate–vigorous physical activity, sedentary behaviour and hours of uninterrupted sleep. (Note that muscle- and bone-strengthening activities should be included at least 3 times a week.)

Step 3 — Identify areas in which you are currently not meeting the guidelines and/or could improve.

Step 4 — Identify your barriers and **enablers** to meeting or not meeting the guidelines, and then outline ways to overcome these barriers or include more enablers.

**enablers** things that encourage a desired behaviour to occur

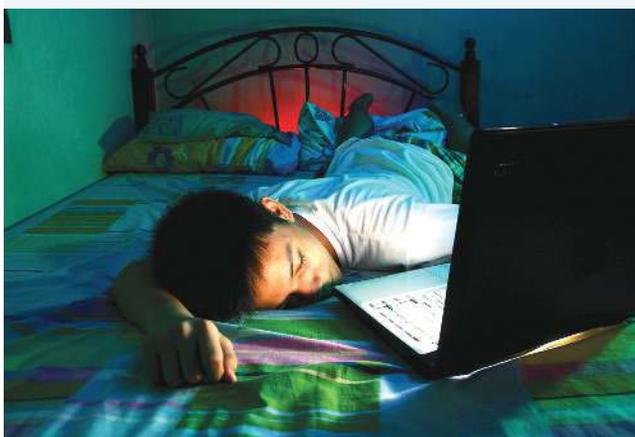
## 10.6.2 Barriers to participation in physical activity

While it may be challenging to remove all barriers, it can be helpful to identify those that have the greatest negative impact on your ability to follow the guidelines. You can then look at ways to overcome them.

For example, if your barrier is that you do not have enough time to be more active, you may be able to identify three opportunities throughout the day to be active for 15 minutes, such as walking to school, having an ‘active break’ between homework and catching up with a friend (e.g. walking or riding together). As another example, if you cannot justify the cost of joining a gym or fitness class, you may be able to access free workouts online.

Often, the biggest barrier is our own minds and how we think of physical activity and its importance in our daily routines. If we can make physical activity a priority and find multiple ways to be active, we are more likely to meet the recommended activity levels.

**FIGURE 10.23** Not getting enough sleep can be a barrier to physical activity.



## 10.6.3 Enablers of participation in physical activity

The more enablers we have in our daily lives, the more likely we are to be active. Enablers include both our physical environment and our social environment. Having friends and family who enjoy being physically active and owning a dog are two significant enablers of physical activity. Another significant enabler is the sense of enjoyment we get from being active. Making physical activity interesting and fun also has a positive influence on the duration and frequency of participation.

Some enablers include:

- Play field games/activities such as beach volleyball and frisbee whenever you can.
- Do aerobic exercises such as power walking, jogging and cycling with a friend so that you can socialise at the same time. This takes your mind off what you are doing and often encourages you to exercise for a longer period than you might by yourself.
- Plan enjoyable outdoor activities such as hikes, cycling, walks and backyard games.
- Enter fun runs and community adventure activities whenever you get the chance.
- Look for new activities that challenge you mentally as well as physically, such as dancing, water sports, badminton, golf, karate, rope climbing or skating.

**FIGURE 10.24** Making physical activity fun means you are more likely to stay motivated to do it.



- Develop cross-training programs that include a range of exercises such as running, stretching, strength work, skipping, jumping and so on. Challenge yourself by creating new activities to keep you interested. Look for areas to improve your programs, and monitor your progress to stay motivated.
- Make choices that favour activity over inactivity. Walk to the shops if you can and choose stairs rather than escalators.
- Join a gym or centre where you can learn something new and different, such as Pilates, yoga or aquarobics.
- Work with friends who are also keen to be active and maintain their health and fitness to achieve common goals.
- Reward yourself when you complete your work or achieve your fitness goals.

Can you think of others?

## 10.6.4 Setting SMART goals

Setting short- and long-term goals can be an effective way of overcoming some common barriers. When setting goals, it is suggested that you follow the SMART rule. This rule states that each goal should be:

- **S**pecific
- **M**easurable
- **A**chievable
- **R**ealistic
- **T**imely.

A **SMART goal** avoids the pitfalls of vague goals such as ‘I want to be more active’, or ‘I want to be a better tennis player’. Such vague goals are not motivating and you have no way to track your progress, so there is a good chance you will not achieve your goal. In contrast, a SMART goal is broken down into small achievable parts that you can measure against specific times and dates. For example, instead of hoping to ‘run faster’ you set the goal of ‘I want to run 5 kilometres in 30 minutes by 30 June’. This is more motivating because you can easily track your progress and work out exactly what you need to do to achieve success.

**SMART goals** goals that are specific, measurable, achievable, realistic and timely



doc-39420

Complete the **SMART goals** worksheet and interactivity in the Online Resources to practise identifying and setting SMART goals.

**TABLE 10.3** Example of SMART goal setting

	Benefit	Example
Specific	Being specific means the actions and behaviours required to achieve the goal are easy to identify.	I will run 5 km in 30 min.
Measurable	Making goals measurable allows careful tracking of goals for motivation.	I will run 5 km in 30 min by 30 June.
Achievable	If a goal is achievable, this will help with motivation.	The local walking track is 5-km long.
Realistic	All goals require a number of steps to achieve them. If a goal is realistic, these steps are easier to take.	I can run 1 km without stopping at the moment, so 5 km is realistic for me to achieve.
Timely	Having a time frame helps with motivation, and provides an opportunity to review, reflect on and modify your goal.	I will achieve my goal by 30 June, which gives me time to practice and improve.

Some of your goals to increase physical activity may also decrease sedentary behaviours. For example, getting dropped off two blocks away from school can increase the time spent walking and decrease the time spent sedentary in a car. Walking around the oval talking to friends at lunch instead of sitting and talking also increases your time spent on physical activity and decreases your sedentary behaviour of sitting.

## 10.6.5 Using the FITT principle

While SMART goals can help increase physical activity and decrease sedentary behaviour, the FITT principle is used to help increase fitness. While improving your physical activity levels can lead to increased fitness, fitness means many different things. It is therefore developed differently. To improve your fitness, you should set SMART goals but also use the FITT principle.

### How FITT works

FITT stands for frequency, intensity, time and type. It is an acronym for an exercise prescription designed to improve the way we plan and carry out our fitness program.

#### Frequency

Frequency relates to how often we engage in the program. To improve cardiovascular and respiratory fitness, three or four days per week is the minimum, with five or more being preferable. To improve muscular strength, three days per week is the minimum.

#### Intensity

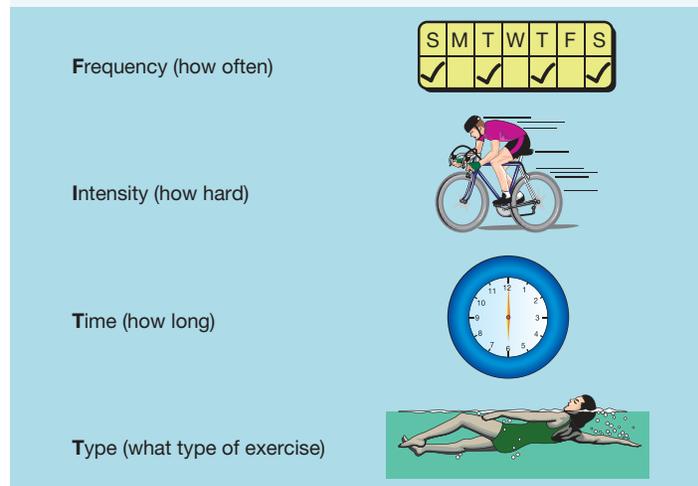
**Intensity** is a measure of how hard we are working. The level of intensity is indicated by our heart rate. When we are at rest, our heart rate is relatively slow (around 70 beats per minute). This is because the muscles require less oxygen, as they are not working very hard. When we move (work), our heart rate increases. There is a limit to how fast the heart can beat during physical activity. This is called the **maximal heart rate (MHR)** and is roughly calculated by subtracting your age from 220.

To improve our aerobic fitness, we need to exercise at a pace that makes the heart work at 70–85 per cent of its maximum rate. Somewhere between these two values lies our **target heart rate**. When we begin an exercise program, we should aim for a target heart rate that is around 70 per cent of our maximal heart rate (or 70 per cent MHR). As our aerobic fitness improves, we should lift our target heart rate to 75 per cent MHR, and higher again with continued improvement.

How then do we estimate our target heart rate? The easiest method is to subtract your age from 220 and multiply by the level you are aiming for (written as a decimal), in this case, 70 per cent MHR, or 0.70. For a 14 year old, for example, this would be  $(220 - 14) \times 0.70 = 144$  beats per minute (to the nearest whole number). The 14-year-old person should then aim to keep their heart rate around the target heart rate for a sustained period of time. This general area is called the **target heart rate zone**. Once comfortable with this level of intensity, the target heart rate could be lifted to 75 per cent MHR, or 154 beats per minute.

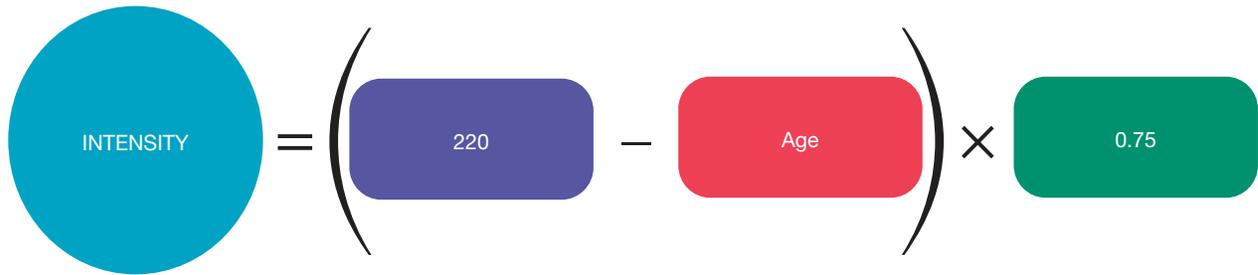
Another indicator of intensity is **respiratory rate (RR)**. As we increase the intensity of our activity, our respiratory rate will increase to supply more oxygen to our muscles. The harder you work, the more oxygen your muscles will require, raising your respiratory rate.

**FIGURE 10.25** The FITT principles help to plan and complete a fitness program.



**intensity** how hard we work  
**maximal heart rate (MHR)** the assumed maximum at which the heart can beat; calculated by subtracting your age from 220  
**target heart rate** the number of beats per minute that you want the heart to work at during exercise  
**target heart rate zone** the general range around the target heart rate  
**respiratory rate (RR)** the number of breaths taken per minute

**FIGURE 10.26** Calculating intensity



The higher your respiratory rate, the harder it can be to talk. It is very difficult to talk when you are working at maximal intensities. The talk test is a simple method of indicating intensity, although it is not as accurate at measuring heart rate.

**TABLE 10.4** Measuring intensity using the talk test

Low-moderate intensity	You can hold a conversation with ease, maybe even sing.
Moderate intensity	You can talk, with pauses between sentences; you cannot sing.
Vigorous intensity	You cannot say more than one or two words without pausing to take a breath.

### DID YOU KNOW?

A normal breathing rate for an adult at rest is 8–16 breaths per minute. For an infant, the normal rate is up to 44 breaths per minute.

### Time

Time refers to the length of a session or program. For aerobic power (also known as aerobic capacity or aerobic fitness), time refers to the minimum amount of time that we should spend with our heart rate in the target heart rate zone. Twenty minutes is the minimum, with 30 minutes or longer being ideal.

### Type

Type refers to the best kind of physical activity that is appropriate for our fitness needs. To develop aerobic power, aerobic type exercises such as cycling, jogging and swimming are best.

To develop power, the best exercises are plyometrics. To improve muscular strength, weight-bearing exercises such as free weights should be performed.

## 10.6.6 The FITT principles and fitness

The FITT principles should be used to develop fitness. Fitness is a general term that describes the ability to perform skills and behaviours required for sporting performance.

There are a number of different fitness components. Some of the most common to train are shown in table 10.5.

**Table 10.5** Common fitness components and how to train them

Fitness component	Description	Examples from sport	Example of training
Aerobic power	The maximum rate of energy produced by the aerobic energy system; refers to the body's ability to maintain continuous physical activity over an extended period at low to medium intensity	Running a 10 km fun run	Going for a 20 min run at 75% MHR Bike riding for 24 km at 80% MHR
Muscular endurance	The ability of a muscle or muscle group to sustain or repeat a force over a long period	Kayaking for 2 km	20 × squats
Muscular strength	The ability of the muscles to exert a single maximal force to overcome resistance	Holding a tackle in footy	6 × squats with heavy weights
Flexibility	The range of movement about a joint	Lunging in hockey	Yoga/Pilates
Muscular power	The combination of strength and speed	Jumping for a spike in volleyball	8 × box jumps 8 × bench jumps
Speed	Can refer to whole-body speed, where the aim is to move from point A to point B as quickly as possible	Sprinting for a ball	5 × 50 m sprints
Agility	The ability to start, stop and change body positions quickly without losing balance	Dodging an opponent	3 × shuttle runs (up and back sprinting)

## 10.6 ACTIVITIES

### 1 SMART goals

Complete the **SMART goal setting template** in the Online Resources. Your aim is to increase or maintain your daily physical activity levels, reduce sedentary behaviours and improve sleep.

	Increase physical activity	Decrease sedentary behaviour	Improve sleep
Specific			
Measurable			
Achievable			
Realistic			
Timely			

### 2 Physical activity levels

Record your (or someone else's) average weekly physical activity levels, sedentary behaviour and sleep. Use one of the apps mentioned in 10.6.1 to collect the data (or another method, depending on access). Then, using the steps outlined in 10.6.1, evaluate whether you are meeting the recommended guidelines.

### 3 Physical activity levels survey

- a. Create a survey to determine the most common barriers and enablers for different population groups (age, gender, location) for meeting the physical activity, sedentary behaviour and sleep guidelines.
- b. Collect and analyse the results. Then, answer the following questions.
  - What are the most common barriers?
  - What are the common enablers?
  - Outline three suggestions to help overcome each of the most common barriers.
- c. Create a way to inform the population groups about your suggestions (e.g. a social media campaign, poster, PowerPoint presentation).

## 10.6 Exercise

### 10.6 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

**LEVEL 1**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**LEVEL 2**

6, 7, 8

**LEVEL 3**

9, 10

These questions are even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS

### Check your understanding

1. **MC** The 'S' in SMART goal setting stands for:
  - A. sensitive.
  - B. smart.
  - C. specific.
  - D. special.
2. The FITT principle is used to improve fitness. True or false?
3. **MC** To improve fitness, the minimum amount of time per session for aerobic fitness is:
  - A. 10 minutes.
  - B. 15 minutes.
  - C. 20 minutes.
  - D. 60 minutes.
4. **MC** Heart rate is calculated as:
  - A. the number of breaths per minute.
  - B. the number of beats of the heart per minute.
  - C. the amount of blood pumped out of the heart per minute.
  - D. 220 minus your age (220 – age).
5. **MC** The 'R' in SMART goal setting refers to:
  - A. having a deadline for achieving the goal.
  - B. making the goal exciting.
  - C. making sure the goal can be tracked and measured.
  - D. ensuring the goal is outside, but not too far from, your comfort zone.

### Apply your understanding

6. **Outline** what is meant by SMART goal setting, using examples.
7. **Identify** what the FITT principles are, using examples.
8. **Outline** how a secondary school student could overcome the barrier of 'not enough time' when trying to increase their physical activity levels.
9. **Describe** how a secondary school student could use the SMART goal setting principles to ensure better quality sleep.
10. **Propose** why the 'talk test' may be a more useful measure of intensity compared to target heart rate zones.

# LESSON

## 10.7 Review

Hey students! Now that it's time to revise this topic, go online to:



Review your results



Watch teacher-led videos



Practise questions with immediate feedback

Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



### 10.7.1 What have I learned?

- Physical activity is any kind of movement. There are many ways to be active, and any kind of movement is better than none.
- Many people do not engage in enough physical activity.
- It is recommended that Australian children and young people get at least 60 minutes each day of moderate to vigorous physical activity.
- At least 3 days per week, Australian children and young people should engage in activities that strengthen muscle and bone during their 60 minutes of moderate–vigorous exercise.
- It is recommended that children and young people get no more than 2 hours of sedentary recreational screen time per day.
- Children aged 5–13 years should get 9–11 hours of uninterrupted sleep.
- Young people aged 14–17 years should get 8–10 hours of uninterrupted sleep.
- There are many physical benefits to being sufficiently active, such as increased bone and muscle strength and maintaining a healthy weight.
- There are many emotional wellbeing benefits of physical activity, such as improved emotional control and more positive emotions.
- There are many cognitive and mental wellbeing benefits of physical activity, such as greater focus and concentration, and decreased anxiety.
- There are many social wellbeing benefits of physical activity, such as increased connectedness with others and improved social skills.
- There are many spiritual health and wellbeing benefits of physical activity such as a feeling of belonging and sense of purpose.
- Many things influence our engagement in physical activity, including our culture (e.g. traditional games and activities) and natural environments (e.g. outdoor settings and resources such as safe walking tracks and green spaces).
- Setting SMART goals makes positive behaviour change more likely.
- Using the FITT training principles can increase fitness gains.

#### ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS REVIEWED

- Why is it important for all individuals to be involved in regular physical activity?
- How can this contribute to wellbeing at different life stages?

Evaluate your initial response to the essential questions now that you have studied the topic.

## 10.7.2 Key terms

**barriers** things that prevent a desired behaviour from occurring

**cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing** related to our emotions, thoughts and behaviours; affects risk of anxiety and depression

**cultural influences** the external factors that help shape the attitudes and behaviours of an individual or group

**emotional health and wellbeing** being able to express emotions and feelings in a positive and appropriate way; includes resilience

**enablers** things that encourage a desired behaviour to occur

**exercise** planned, structured, repetitive and intentional movement to increase fitness

**fitness** a general term that describes the ability to perform the skills and behaviours required for sporting performance

**intensity** how hard we work

**maximal heart rate (MHR)** the assumed maximum at which the heart can beat; calculated by subtracting your age from 220

**physical activity** any form of movement carried out by the muscles that requires energy

**physical health and wellbeing** physiological functioning of the body

**resilience** the ability to recover or bounce back from challenges and/or difficulties

**respiratory rate (RR)** the number of breaths taken per minute

**sedentary behaviour** anything that requires very low energy expenditure with little movement, such as sitting or lying down

**sleep** a deep state of unconsciousness. Ideally, it will be uninterrupted and continue for enough time

**SMART goals** goals that are specific, measurable, achievable, realistic and timely

**social health and wellbeing** being able to have positive relationships with others, including family, friends, peers and colleagues

**spiritual health and wellbeing** related to our ideas, values and morals; includes a sense of purpose and belonging

**sport** any institutionalised and organised practice, controlled by specific rules

**target heart rate** the number of beats per minute that you want the heart to work at during exercise

**target heart rate zone** the general range around the target heart rate



### Resources



**Interactivity** Crossword (int-8922)

## 10.7 Exercise

### 10.7 Exercise

#### Select your pathway

##### ■ LEVEL 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,  
8, 9, 10

##### ■ LEVEL 2

11, 14, 15, 16, 19

##### ■ LEVEL 3

12, 13, 17, 18, 20

These questions are  
even better in jacPLUS!

- Receive immediate feedback
- Access sample responses
- Track results and progress



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS 

### Check your understanding

Identify whether the following statements are true or false.

Statement	True or false
1. Physical activity, exercise and fitness all mean the same thing.	
2. Most young Australians could increase their physical activity levels and decrease their sedentary behaviour levels.	
3. Being physically active is just about having a healthy body.	
4. Australian children and young people should incorporate activities that strengthen muscle and bone into their 60 minutes of daily physical activity at least 3 times a week.	
5. Children and young people should get no more than 2 hours of sedentary recreational screen time per day.	
6. It is recommended that children aged 14–17 years get 7–8 hours of uninterrupted sleep.	
7. Being physically active can release 'feel good' hormones.	
8. Being physically active outside benefits the individual's wellbeing but also has benefits for the wider community.	
9. Including a variety of physical activities, including those that embrace one's culture and natural environment, is more likely to lead to increased physical activity levels.	
10. Behaviour change, such as decreasing sedentary behaviour, is more likely to be successful when using SMART goals.	

## Apply your understanding

11. **List** ten different ways to be physically active.
12. **Outline** the Australian Government's physical activity and exercise guidelines for all Australians, and suggest why these have been put in place.
13. **Describe** the physical, emotional, cognitive and social benefits of being physically active.
14. **Identify** three barriers to physical activity and suggest ways to overcome them.
15. **Identify** three enablers of physical activity and suggest ways to include these in everyday life.
16. **Identify** three barriers to reducing sedentary behaviour and suggest ways to overcome them.
17. **Outline** three enablers for improving your sleep and suggest ways to include these in everyday life.
18. **Describe** how including traditional activities and sports in daily life can benefit health and wellbeing.
19. **Suggest** four ways to be active in the natural environment.
20. **Explain** what is meant by SMART goal setting and why you would use this model.

### Hey teachers! Create custom assignments for this topic



Create and assign unique tests and exams



Access quarantined tests and assessments



Track your students' results



Find all this and MORE in jacPLUS



# GLOSSARY

---

- active defence** defence that pressures the attack, intercepts the ball and/or frustrates the flow of play
- active listening** the ability to engage completely with the speaker, understand their message, comprehend the information, respond thoughtfully and recall specific details
- Adam's apple** caused by the enlargement of the larynx (voice box)
- adolescence** the time during which we mature from a child to an adult
- aerobic activities** activities that generally involve a large number of muscles/muscle groups working at a moderate intensity
- aggressive** expressing your viewpoint in ways that deny another person's right to be treated with respect
- angle of release** the angle at which a projectile is released into the air
- anticipation** the ability to expect or predict a particular action
- anxiety** feeling uneasy or worried
- assertive** expressing your viewpoint in a way that is respectful and non-threatening
- assumption** something that is accepted as true before one gathers any proof that it is so
- auditory feedback** information we receive through hearing our coach or teammate responding to our performance
- balance** in a sporting context, balance refers to an object, either stationary or moving, that is in control
- barriers** things that prevent a desired behaviour from occurring
- beliefs** attitude that something is true or accepted
- belonging** a sense of knowing where you fit and having meaningful relationships
- binge drinking** drinking large amounts of alcohol in a short period of time or drinking constantly for a number of days
- biomechanics** the study of the human body in motion and the forces (both internal and external) that influence movement
- blogger** a person who regularly writes material for a blog
- body awareness** the ability to recognise your body's movements
- body confidence** how a person feels about the way they look
- body image** what we and other people think of our physical appearance; how we feel about our body
- bulk-billing** when a health service accepts your Medicare card as payment for the appointment, meaning that the fee will be paid in full by the government
- cannabinoids** types of chemicals that act on particular receptors in the brain
- cardiovascular disease** any disease that affects the heart or blood vessels, including stroke and high blood pressure
- centre of gravity** the central point of an object, about which all of its weight is evenly distributed and balanced
- cognitive (mental) health and wellbeing** related to our emotions, thoughts and behaviours; affects risk of anxiety and depression
- collaboration** working together to produce something
- communication skills** the ability to convey or share ideas and feelings effectively
- compassion** a feeling of empathy or sympathy towards someone who is going through a difficult time
- conception** the union of a female's egg and a male's sperm
- connected** having a feeling or sense of belonging to someone, a group of people or a place
- consent** occurs when everyone agrees or gives permission for something to happen
- contraception** any method or device that prevents conception and, therefore, a pregnancy
- cortisol** the body's main stress hormone
- cultural influences** the external factors that help shape the attitudes and behaviours of an individual or group
- culture** the ethos, values, beliefs and/or philosophies of a group of people
- dependence** reliance on or needing the drug to function; many of your thoughts, emotions and actions focus on the drug

**depressants** drugs that slow the activity of your nervous system

**depression** a mental illness often characterised by feelings of hopelessness, sadness, isolation and worry

**digital footprint** information about you that exists on the internet as a result of your online activity

**discrimination** treating a person or group of people less favourably because they are different

**diverse** varied or different

**diversity** the broad range of differences that exist between people and communities, including in terms of gender, ethnicity, culture, socio-economic status, age, religion, ability and sexuality

**Dreaming** in First Nations spirituality, the (non-linear) time when the Earth took on its present form and cycles of life and nature began; explains creation and the nature of the world, the place that every person has in that world and the importance of ritual and tradition; Dreaming stories pass on important knowledge, laws and beliefs; also known as Dreamtime

**drug** a substance that has a physiological effect on the body; can be legal or illegal

**effort awareness** the ability to recognise your body's movements when performing physical activities

**effort** force applied by the body's muscles to generate movement

**ejaculation** the release of semen from the penis

**emotional health and wellbeing** being able to express emotions and feelings in a positive and appropriate way; includes resilience

**emotional intelligence** the awareness of and ability to control and express our emotions with empathy towards others

**emotional regulation** understanding which emotion you are feeling and when, and expressing it in an appropriate way for the situation

**emotional wellbeing** the ability to understand and accept your feelings and manage emotional challenges for your own happiness and self-esteem

**emotional** refers to our feelings

**emotions** strong feelings

**empathy** the ability to identify, appreciate and understand another's situation or feelings

**enablers** things that encourage a desired behaviour to occur

**endometrium** the lining of the uterus. It is made of hormones, mucus and blood. When pregnant, it nourishes the foetus.

**erection** when blood fills the spongy tissue in the penis. The penis enlarges and stiffens.

**exercise** planned, structured, repetitive and intentional movement to increase fitness

**feedback** information received about a skill or movement; can be internal or external

**First Nations Australians** the traditional custodians of the land; at the time of European colonisation, they had already been inhabiting Australia for at least 65 000 years

**fitness** a general term that describes the ability to perform the skills and behaviours required for sporting performance

**game sense** the ability to 'read' the game; helps us use known fundamental and specific movements, skills and understandings to make the learning of related activities easier

**gaslighting** a form of manipulation in abusive relationships in which a person creates a false narrative and makes the target of their gaslighting question their judgements and reality

**gender** our beliefs about what it means to be a male or a female

**gendered expectations** how we are expected to act, speak, dress and conduct ourselves based upon our assigned sex

**general advice** information that is meant as a general guideline or suggestion. It is not specific to an individual's unique needs or circumstances.

**genes** the biological units through which we inherit traits from our biological parents

**grooming** building a relationship with a child in order to sexually abuse them

**growth hormone** a chemical released by the pituitary gland that causes a rapid growth spurt

**hallucinogens** drugs that work on the brain to cause hallucinations

**harassment** a kind of bullying; any form of behaviour that is not wanted, or is offensive, humiliating or intimidating

**health consumers** people who buy health products or use health services

**health information** knowledge about a health product or service you may need, want, buy or receive

**health literacy** understanding information about health and health care, and how to apply that information to our lives and use it to make health decisions

**health organisation** a group that assists in matters relating to health by providing services, products and information

**health product** a produced or manufactured item that is designed to improve a person's health, such as toothpaste, sunscreen or vitamins

**health service** something that helps people maintain or improve their health, such as ambulance services, internet advice or healthcare hotlines

**height of release** the height a projectile is released into the air in relation to its landing point

**heterosexual** emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the opposite sex

**homophobia** an irrational fear, aversion to or discrimination against people who are homosexual or same-sex attracted. It can also refer to stigma arising from social ideologies about homosexuality.

**homophobic bullying** discriminating against people who are, or who are thought to be, same-sex attracted

**hormone** a chemical that is made by specialist cells and released into the bloodstream to send a message to another part of the body. It affects how our bodies work and grow.

**identity** sense of self in terms of characteristics and beliefs

**image-based abuse** when a nude or sexual image of a person is taken or shared without that person's permission

**inclusive** language and behaviour that doesn't isolate others or make them feel inferior

**inequities** injustice; unfairness

**influencer** a person with the ability to influence potential buyers of a product or service by promoting or recommending the item, usually on social media

**integrity** being honest, fair and trustworthy, and standing up for what you believe in, even if it is not popular or easy

**intensity** how hard we work

**kilojoules** energy value of food

**leadership skills** the strengths and abilities individuals demonstrate to help guide and steer teammates to achieve common goals

**legumes** vegetables such as beans, peas and lentils

**LGBTIQA+** a term that stands for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Intersex, Queer, Asexual. The plus sign represents all the other identities that are not explicitly mentioned.

**marketing campaign** an organised course of action to promote or sell a product or service

**maximal heart rate (MHR)** the assumed maximum at which the heart can beat; calculated by subtracting your age from 220

**media literacy** the ability to access, analyse, evaluate and communicate information in a variety of forms

**media** a broad term that can include many areas such as social media, television, print media and radio

**Medicare** the government scheme that gives Australian residents access to healthcare

**menstruation** also known as a period. It is the shedding of the uterus lining.

**mental health** relates to the state of a person's mind or brain and the ability to think and process information

**movement concepts** includes body awareness, spatial awareness, effort awareness and relationship

**movement sequences** a series of skills linked together

**movement strategies** a variety of approaches that help a player or team achieve a movement outcome or goal

**need** something that is required

**nocturnal emission (wet dream)** an ejaculation of semen when a male is asleep

**non-assertive** avoiding expressing your viewpoint because of a lack of self-confidence and a belief that someone else's viewpoint is more important than yours

**nutrients** chemical substances in food that nourish the body in specific ways, for example carbohydrates provide energy

**nutritional value** the nutrient content of a food; varies from food to food

**obesity** a state of being substantially overweight

**objective performance scoring systems** scoring systems that use times, distances or guidelines to judge a performance

**oestrogen** female reproductive hormone. It is produced in the ovaries.

**ovaries** there are two ovaries that make up a female's reproductive system. They produce oestrogen and release ova.

**ovulation** the process of the ovary releasing an ovum (egg)

**ovum** the egg produced by the ovaries. The plural of ovum is ova.

**passive smoking** breathing in second-hand cigarette smoke

**peer** someone who is of a similar age or shares similar interests

**personal boundaries** the limits you set for yourself and your interactions with others to help you know what you are comfortable with

**physical abuse** using power to be physically violent towards another less powerful person

**physical activity** any form of movement carried out by the muscles that requires energy

**physical health and wellbeing** physiological functioning of the body

**physical** refers to our body; in particular, its movements, systems (such as the muscular system) and structures (such as our bones and joints)

**pituitary gland** a gland located in the brain. It controls the release of a number of different hormones.

**power** the ability to do something or make something happen in a relationship

**prejudices** unfavourable opinions or feelings formed without reason, knowledge or thought

**primary sex characteristics** the characteristics directly necessary for reproduction; the ovaries and the testes

**projectile** an object moving through the air

**protected sex** using a condom during sexual intercourse to prevent pregnancy and the spread of sexually transmitted infections (STIs)

**puberty** a time of physical, social and emotional change, characterised by the maturation of sexual and reproductive organs

**relationship** the ability to recognise how your body moves in relation to the environment, other people and equipment

**reliable source** a source of information that provides a thorough, well-reasoned theory, argument or discussion based on strong evidence

**resilience** the ability to recover or bounce back from challenges and/or difficulties

**respect** recognising and appreciating the differences between people and treating them fairly

**respiratory rate (RR)** the number of breaths taken per minute

**responsibilities** your obligations; for example, you have a responsibility not to harm other people

**rights** something that everyone should have; for example, everyone has the right to feel safe

**rip** a stretch of turbulent and dangerous water in the sea or in a river

**risk** uncertainty about the effects or implications of an activity; can be positive or negative

**rites of passage** a process that transforms you from one stage of life to the next

**same-sex attracted** people who are emotionally and sexually attracted to people of the same sex. They often identify themselves as being gay or lesbian.

**secondary sex characteristics** traits arising from changes at puberty. They are not directly related to reproduction and are not present at birth.

**sedentary behaviour** anything that requires very low energy expenditure with little movement, such as sitting or lying down

**sedentary** any behaviour that results in low energy expenditure

**self-talk** the internal statements we use relating to and describing our selves

**semen** a whitish fluid released by the prostate gland

**sexting** sending or receiving sexually explicit or sexually suggestive texts or images via phone or the internet

**sexual abuse** using power to involve another person in sexual activity for which they have not given consent or were not able to give consent

**sexualised** to make something sexual or attributed to sex

**sexually transmitted infection (STI)** an infection that is transmitted through sexual activity

**sleep** a deep state of unconsciousness. Ideally, it will be uninterrupted and continue for enough time

**SMART goals** goals that are specific, measurable, achievable, realistic and timely

**social health and wellbeing** being able to have positive relationships with others, including family, friends, peers and colleagues

**social network** the social relationships an individual has developed

**social rejection** occurs when an individual is deliberately excluded from a relationship or group interaction

**social** refers to our interactions with other people

**spatial awareness** the ability to recognise the space around you and how your body moves in that space

**sperm** the male reproductive sex cell. It is produced in the testes.

**spiritual health and wellbeing** related to our ideas, values and morals; includes a sense of purpose and belonging

**sport** any institutionalised and organised practice, controlled by specific rules

**stereotype** a set of characteristics typically used to categorise a group of people

**stereotyping** where a set of characteristics is typically used to categorise a group of people

**stimulants** drugs that stimulate or speed up your brain and nervous system

**subjective performance scoring systems** scoring systems that require a judgement of performance quality based on feelings, impressions or opinions

**tactics and strategies** planned moves used to out-manoeuvre opponents and provide your team with an advantage; used in both attacking and defensive situations

**target heart rate zone** the general range around the target heart rate

**target heart rate** the number of beats per minute that you want the heart to work at during exercise

**technique** the method used for performing a skill

**testes** there are two testes that make up a male's reproductive system. They produce testosterone and sperm.

**testosterone** male reproductive hormone. It is produced in the testes.

**the magic ratio of 5:1** for every one negative interaction or feeling between people, there must be five positive interactions or feelings for the relationship to be positive and in balance

**timing** the way the parts of a movement flow together

**tolerance** the higher the tolerance, the more of the drug is needed for the same effect

**transphobic bullying** discriminating against individuals who are transgender; that is, individuals whose gender is not the same as, or who do not identify with, the sex they were assigned at birth

**unique** one of a kind

**values** beliefs about what is important; guide our attitudes and behaviour

**vigorous intensity** exercise that causes you to 'huff and puff' as your heart rate and respiratory rate increase significantly

**visual feedback** information we receive as we see our own performance

**vulva** the external female genitalia

# INDEX

## A

accessing health information  
  be informed 201  
  family and friends 201–2  
  family doctor 203–4  
  health organisations 202  
  media 203  
  on the internet 202–3  
  school 202

active defence 320, 340

active listening skills 53

active listening 53, 89

Adam's apple 103, 141

adolescence 7, 38, 93  
  accessing health information and services 127–34  
  physical changes 94–106  
  social and emotional changes 106–15

aerobic activities 220, 250

aggressive 77, 89

anger iceberg 46–9

angle of release 263–4, 278

anticipation 304, 308

anxiety 147, 151, 188

assertive communication 77–8

assertive 77, 89, 151, 188

assessing movement performance  
  objective and subjective  
    performance scoring systems 333  
  officiating the game 334–8  
  scoring systems 334

assumption 42, 89

auditory feedback 286, 308

Australians' physical activity  
  daily physical activity 349–50  
  guidelines 348–9  
  health and wellbeing benefits 354–6  
  sedentary behaviour 350  
  sleep 350–2

Ayurvedic medicine 239–240

## B

balance 258, 278

balancing power 172

barriers 365, 373

beliefs 6, 38

belonging 42, 89

binge drinking 164, 188

biomechanics 256–7, 278

bloggers 203, 215

body awareness 290, 308

body confidence 16, 38

body image 16, 38, 151–3  
  and self worth 151–3

body position 258–60

bulk-billing 128, 141

bush medicine 232–5

## C

cannabinoids 169, 188

cannabis 168–71  
  and mental health 170–1  
  consequences of 169–70  
  immediate effects of 169

cardiovascular disease 223, 250

centre of gravity 258, 278

cisgender 16

cognitive (mental) wellbeing 348, 355, 373

collaboration 311, 340

communication 149, 172, 317–18  
  active listening skills 53  
  assertive 77–8  
  effective 50–2  
  emotions in relationships 50–7  
  words match body language 52–3

communication skills 314, 340  
  practising 113–14  
  to support others 149–50

compassion 150, 188

conception 120, 141

concepts v. strategies 290–5

conflict resolution 173–4

connected 15, 38

consent 42, 89, 117–18, 173, 188  
  and being empowered 76  
  circle of 81  
  enthusiastic 118  
  freely given 117  
  giving and gaining 80  
  informed 79, 117, 173  
  reversible 117  
  specific 118

contraception  
  methods 120–3  
  unplanned pregnancy 119–20

cortisol 112, 141

cultural identity 13–15

cultural influences 358–9, 373

cultural stereotypes 14

culture and traditions 13–14

culture 8, 38

cyberbullying 82–83

## D

Dadirri meditative practice 238

decision-making  
  effective strategy 300–1  
  game sense 301–6  
  informed 205–9

dependence 159, 188

depressants 162, 188  
  affect your health 162  
  alcohol 163–4  
  consequences of alcohol 165  
  effects of 162–3

depression 147, 188

digital footprint 81, 89

discrimination 20, 38

diverse 8, 38

diversity 5, 31, 32, 38, 61, 89  
  affirming 31  
  challenging inequities and discrimination 20–2  
  enriching society through 20  
  for health and wellbeing 22  
  learning from 30–1  
  valuing and appreciating 20–5

Dreaming 198, 215

drug 154  
  affect your health 155–6  
  dependence 159, 188  
  depressants 162–7  
  hallucinogens 167–71  
  stimulants 158–61  
  tolerance 159, 188

## E

effective teamwork 311

effort awareness 290, 308

effort 256, 278

ejaculation 103, 141

emotional 7, 38  
  bank account 66–7  
  health and wellbeing 348, 354–5, 361, 372  
  intelligence 43, 89, 113–14  
  maturity 111  
  needs 42–3  
  regulation 45, 89  
  wellbeing 42–3, 89, 348, 354–5, 373

- emotions 42, 89
  - changing 111
  - communicating 50–7
  - expressing 50–1
  - managing 111–14
  - recognising 45–9
  - relationships and 42–50
  - to resolve conflicts 52
- empathy 25, 38, 149, 150, 188
  - developing 25–30
- enablers 366, 373
- endometrium 98
- endorphins 112
- engage 256
- equality
  - in relationships 66–76
- equipment modifications 329
- erection 103, 141
- exercise 344, 373
  - brain benefits of 148
- F**
- feedback 282, 308
  - chest mark 285–9
  - drop punt 284–9
  - importance of 282
  - reasons for 283–4
  - sources of 282–3
- females
  - puberty and 98–100
  - strategies for managing physical changes 100–3
- First Nations Australians 14–15, 198, 215
  - anti-smoking campaign 199
  - Dadirri meditative practice 238
  - deadly choices 198–9
  - diet 230–5
  - health campaigns 197–9
  - Ngangkari healers 237–8
- fitness 344, 373
- FITT principle 268–9
- follicular phase 99
- foods 225–6
  - First Nations Australians 230–5
  - food labels 228
  - food sustainability 229–30
  - good food choices 226–30
  - healthy food habits 226
  - nutritious foods 228
- G**
- game sense 301–6, 308
- gaslighting 70, 89
- gender 15–16, 38
- gendered expectations 70, 89
- general advice 203, 215
- genes 8, 38
- good food choices 226–30
- grooming 70, 89
- growth hormone 95
- H**
- hallucinogens 168, 188
  - cannabis 168–71
  - health effects 167–8
- harassment 73, 89
- Harmony Week 35–6
- headspace 129–30
- health and wellbeing
  - effects of physical activity on 354
  - diversity for 22
  - during adolescence 107
  - effect of sleep on 350–2
  - influences on 190
  - First Nations ceremonies 137
  - fitness and 222–4
  - Guidelines 348–9
  - mind-body-spirit connections 22, 238–40
- health consumers 201, 215
- health information and services
  - accessing healthcare 128–9
  - dealing with puberty 127–8
  - evaluating 131–3
  - headspace 129–30
  - Kids Helpline 130–1
  - ReachOut 130
- health information 201, 215
- health literacy 191, 205–6, 213
- health organisations 202, 215
- health products 201, 215
- health services 201, 215
- healthcare
  - accessing 128–9
- healthy behaviours 236–42
  - First Nations Australians 237–8
  - mind-body-spirit connection 238–41
- healthy decisions 191–2
  - nutrition 225–35
  - physical activity 220–4
  - preventing harm and promoting health 242–9
- healthy relationships
  - balancing power 172
  - communicating effectively 52–3
  - dealing with conflict 52
  - emotions and seeking help 174–5
  - relationship skills 172–4
  - respect 58–9
- height of release 264–5, 278
- help-seeking 181–4
  - dealing with risky situations 182–4
  - keeping safe 182
  - scenarios and strategies 184
  - skills to reduce risks 182
- heterosexual 33, 38
- homophobia 73, 89
- homophobic bullying 73, 89
- hormone 95, 141
  - and puberty 95–6
- human lifespan stages 94
- I**
- identity 6, 38
  - and wellbeing 6–7
  - factors influencing 12–19
  - positive 6–8
- image-based abuse 42, 89
- inclusive 26, 38
  - being 26–7, 38, 61–5
  - promoting inclusion 34–5, 38
- inclusive participation
  - equipment modifications 329
  - rule modifications 329
  - scoring system modifications 329–31
- inequities 20, 38
- influencer 203, 215
- informed decisions
  - health information 206
  - health literacy 205–6
  - skills 206–8
- integrity 150, 188
- intensity 368–9
- intimate and sexual activity
  - forms of 118
- intimate relationships 111, 115–27
  - considering entering into 115–16
  - rights and responsibilities in 118–19
  - setting boundaries in 116–18
  - sexual feelings 116
- K**
- Kids Helpline 79, 130–1
- kilojoules 225, 250
- kinship systems 22–3
- L**
- landing 260–2
- leadership
  - good leaders 323–7
  - role of 322–3

leadership skills 313, 340  
legumes 228, 250  
LGBTIQ+ 33, 38  
luteal phase 99

## M

males  
  puberty and 103–4  
  strategies for managing physical changes 104–5  
manipulating movement  
  concepts v. strategies 290–5  
  skill development 289–90  
marketing campaign 210, 215  
maximal heart rate (MHR)  
  368, 373  
media 17, 193, 203, 215  
  food choices 209–10  
  laws on advertising 210  
  literacy skills 206–8  
  reading food labels 211–13  
  sexual relationships in 194–5  
media literacy 210, 215  
Medicare 146, 149, 188  
menstrual cycle 98  
  stages of 99–100  
menstrual phase 99  
menstruation 98, 141  
  managing strategies 101–2  
  products for managing 100–1  
mental health 146, 188  
  cannabis 170–1  
  health agencies 148–9  
  important 146–8  
  self-worth and body image 151–3  
  supporting others 149–51  
mental wellbeing 355  
mind–body–spirit connection  
  Ayurvedic medicine 239–40  
  meditation 240  
  Native Americans 238  
  traditional Chinese medicine 238–9  
  reiki 239  
  yoga 240  
movement concepts 288–90, 308  
  body awareness 290, 308  
  effort awareness 290, 308  
  movement strategies 290, 308  
  relationship 290, 308  
  spatial awareness 290, 291, 308  
movement sequences 267, 278  
  appraisals of 270  
  creating and performing 268–70  
  flow 268  
  purpose of 267–8

use of space 269  
variations 268

## N

Native Americans 238  
natural environmental influences  
  359–60  
need 42, 89  
Ngangkari healers 237–8  
nocturnal emission (wet dream) 103  
non-assertive 77, 89  
  communication 77  
nutrients 225, 250  
nutrition  
  diet and First Nations Australians 230–5  
  good food choices and health 226–30  
  healthy foods 225–6  
nutritional value 210, 215

## O

obesity 210, 215  
objective appraisals 270  
objective performance scoring systems  
  333, 340  
oestrogen 96, 141  
officiating a game 334–5  
online and social protocols 81–2  
online identity 176–7  
online safety  
  being safe and respectful 81–2  
  connecting online 176  
  cyberbullying 82–3  
  digital identity 176–7  
  grooming 83–4  
  image-based abuse 84  
  online identity 176–7  
  resources 178–80  
  strategies for 177–8  
ovaries 96, 141

## P

passive smoking 156, 188  
peer 7, 38  
  group 13  
  changing relationships 107–11  
performance techniques  
  biomechanics 256–7  
  body position 258–60  
  impact of effort 256  
  landing 260–2  
  take-off 257–8  
period 98, 99  
  keeping track 102  
  pack preparation 102

personal boundaries 108–9  
physical abuse 71, 89  
physical activity 220–1, 344, 373  
  Australian guidelines 348–53  
  barriers to participation 366  
  being outdoors 360  
  benefits of fitness 222–4  
  categories of 348  
  cultural influences on 358–9  
  enablers of participation 366–7  
  FITT principle 368–9  
  getting enough 345–7  
  importance 344–5  
  influences on 358–9  
  natural and physical environmental influences on 359–60  
  opportunities 222  
  sedentary behaviour 221–2, 365–6  
  sleep 365–6  
  SMART goals 367–8  
  well-designed built environments 360–4  
physical changes, in adolescence  
  primary and secondary sex characteristics 97  
  puberty 94–100  
physical development 17  
physical wellbeing 348, 373  
physical 7, 38  
pituitary gland 95  
positive identity 8  
  developing 11–20  
positive self-talk 113  
positive sexual choices 119–23  
power 60–1, 89  
prejudices 31, 38  
primary sex characteristics 96, 141  
problem-solving approach 281  
problem solving for support 151  
projectile motion  
  angle of release 263–6  
  application of force 263  
  height of release 264  
projectile 263, 278  
protected sex 123, 141  
puberty 94, 141  
  and females 98–100  
  and males 103–4  
  dealing with 127–8  
  hormones and 95–6  
  physical changes 95–7

## R

R.E.A.L. strategy 131  
reaching out 110–11

- ReachOut 130
- relationship skills  
 communication 172  
 conflict resolution 173  
 informed consent 173
- relationships 290, 308  
 abusive 69–73  
 and emotions 42–50  
 assertiveness in 54  
 belonging 43–4  
 changing 111  
 communicating emotions in  
 50–7  
 equality in 66–76  
 recognising problems 66–8  
 respectful 41, 57–65
- reliable source 203, 215
- reproductive system  
 female 98–100  
 male 103
- resilience 51, 89, 354, 373  
 effective communication and  
 51–2
- respect 58, 89, 149, 188  
 building respectful relationships  
 58–9
- respiratory rate (RR) 368, 373
- responsibilities 59–60, 89
- rights 59–60, 89
- rips 246, 250
- risk 145, 188
- rites of passage 134–138, 141
- road safety 243–4
- rule modifications 329
- S**
- same-sex attracted 73, 89
- sanitary products 100–1  
 disposing of 101  
 preparing period pack 102
- school 15
- scoring systems 334  
 modifications 329–31  
 objective performance 333, 340  
 subjective performance  
 333, 340
- secondary sex characteristics 96–7
- sedentary behaviour 221, 345, 350,  
 373
- sedentary 221, 250
- seeking additional support 151
- self-talk 113, 141
- semen 103, 141
- sexting 80, 90
- sexual abuse 71, 90
- sexualised 194, 215
- sexuality and gender diversity 16
- sexually transmitted infections  
 123–6, 141
- sleep 350–2, 373
- SMART goals 367–8, 373
- smoking cigarettes 159–60
- social 7, 38
- sexual relationships 115  
 consent in 117–18  
 rights and responsibilities  
 118–19  
 setting boundaries 116–18  
 social expectations 116
- social health and wellbeing 348,  
 355, 361, 373
- social media 17, 176, 206
- social network 44, 90
- social rejection 67, 90
- social-emotional support 150–1
- solving movement challenges  
 decision-making 300–6  
 manipulating movement  
 289–96  
 problem-solving approach 281  
 transferring movement strategies  
 296–300  
 using feedback 282–9
- spatial awareness 290, 308
- sperm 99, 141
- spiritual health and wellbeing 348,  
 355–7, 361–363, 373
- sport 346, 373  
 promoting inclusion through  
 34–5  
 roles in 348–9
- stereotypes 15, 38, 66, 90, 215
- stereotyping 61, 90
- stigma 215
- stimulants 158–61, 188
- strategic awareness  
 direction 275  
 space 273–4  
 time 275
- stress  
 reducing 112
- subjective appraisals 270
- subjective performance scoring  
 systems 333, 340
- sun safety 244–5
- T**
- tactics and strategies 322, 340
- take-off 257–8
- target heart rate zone 368, 373
- teamwork 318–21  
 challenge course 319  
 communication 317–18  
 effective teamwork 311  
 roles and responsibilities 312–17
- technique 256, 278, 286, 308
- testes 96, 141
- testosterone 96, 141
- timing 292, 308
- tolerance 159, 188
- tolerance drug 159
- traditional Chinese medicine 238–9
- traditions 14
- transfer of skill 296–7
- transferring movement strategies  
 transfer of skill 296–7  
 transferring skills and strategies  
 297–300
- transphobic bullying 73, 90
- U**
- unhealthy relationship  
 warning signs 66
- unique 6, 38
- V**
- values 7, 38
- vaping 159–61
- vigorous intensity 220, 250
- visual feedback 286, 308
- vulva 98, 141
- W**
- water safety skills 245–8
- well-designed built environments  
 360  
 health benefits of 361
- wellbeing  
 identity and 6–7
- Y**
- yoga 240